

N.B. The other Copy is of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Ed.  
but it corresponds page by page  
with this Copy.

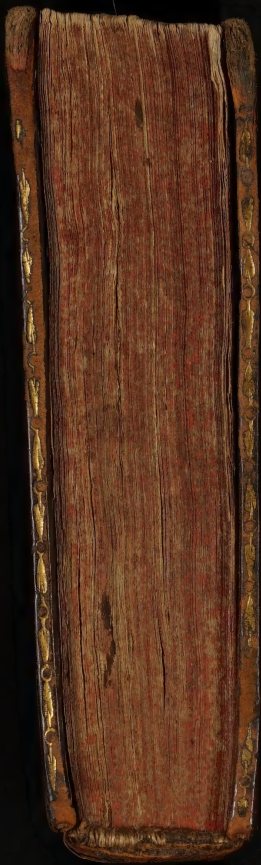
The Hidden Treasures of the  
Art of Physick. 3<sup>rd</sup> Ed. 1671.  
By John Sauer.

The Academ Treasures of w<sup>or</sup>th  
of Physick. B. 1. in 2 parts  
3<sup>d</sup> Ed. 1644.











50647/B

E. XIV

17/  
t

37 Old Medical Work—The Hidden Treasures  
of the Art of Physick fully Discovered by John  
Tanner Student in Physic and ASTROLOGY, 8vo,  
calf, 1672

2600 (4) 20055

Joseph Chubb  
his Book Oct 16<sup>th</sup>

1710 ~ ~ ~ ~

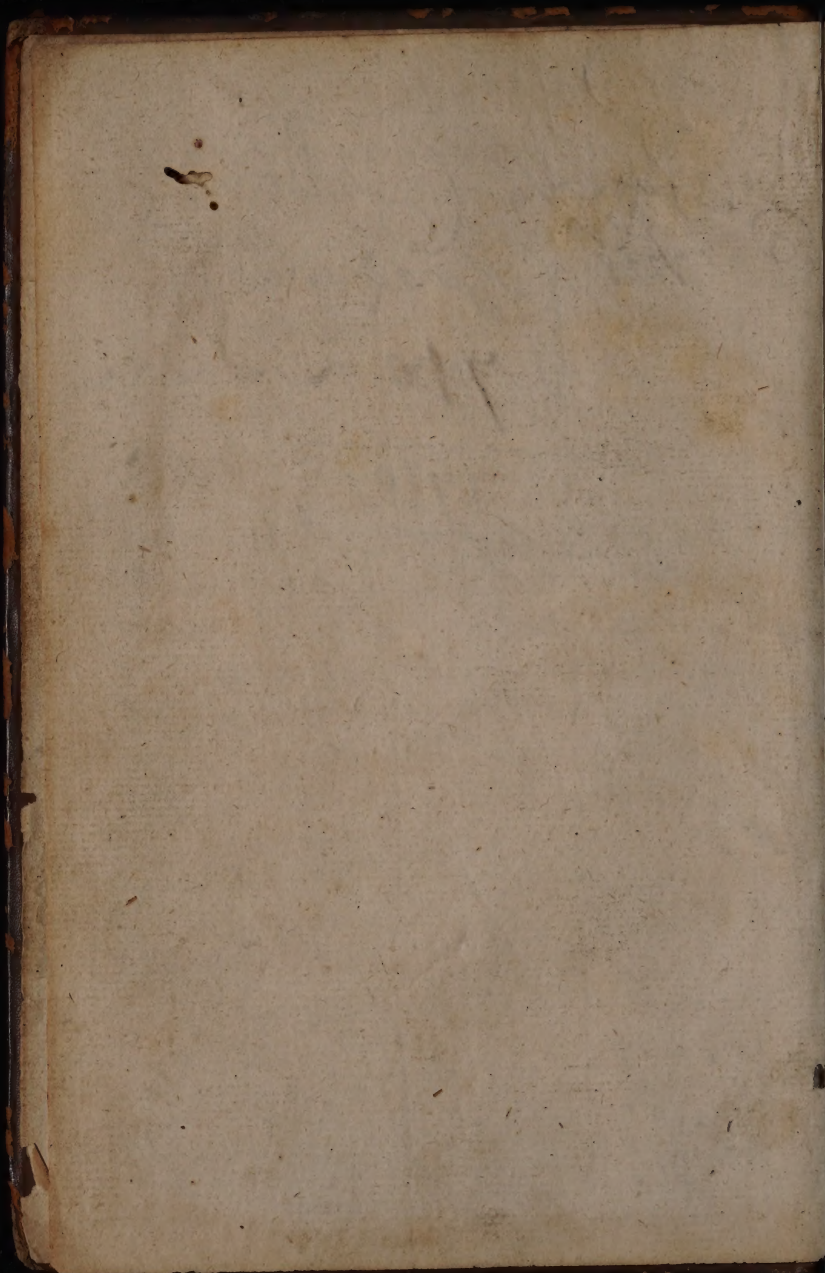
---

1710.

---

S. 20/2/08  
175





1	
2	
3	
4	
1	
2	
AV	
Long	



THE HIDDEN  
TREASURES  
OF THE  
Art of Physick ;  
Fully Discovered.

IN FOUR BOOKS.

CONTAINING

1. *A Physical Description of M A N.*
2. *The Causes, Signs and Cures of all Diseases incident to the Body.*
3. *The general Cure of Wounds, Tumors and Ulcers.*
4. *A general Rule, for making all kind of Medicines ; with the Use and Nature of Distilled Waters, Juices, Decoctions, Con-serves, Powders, Electuaries, Plaisters, &c.*

To which is added Three necessary Tables.

1. *Sheweth the Contents of the Four Books.*
2. *Explaineth all the Terms of Art which are used in Physick and Chyrurgery.*

*Explaining the Nature and Use of Simples what they are,  
and where they grow.*

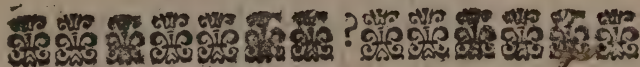
A Work whereby the diligent Reader may, without  
the help of other Authors, attain to the Knowledge  
of the Art above-named.

The Third Edition, with Additions.

By John Tanner, Student in Physick and Astrology.

London, Printed by John Streater, and are to be sold by George  
Sawbridge, at the Bible on Ludgate Hill. 1672.





T O

My truly Honoured, and  
Worthily respected Friend Mr. *William Beal*,  
of *Little Missenden* in the  
County of *Buckingham*;

¶ *T.* Wisbeth all Health,  
Happines and Prosperity in this Life,  
and Eternal Glory in the Life to come.

Honoured Sir,

**T**Hat which ( for the most part ) em-  
boldeneth Men to dedicate their La-  
bours unto any Parsonage, is the  
affinity between the matter of the Work  
which they present, and the Mind of him to  
whom it is presented. I have here swer-  
wed from this custome, being altogether too  
weak to present you with a Work sutable to  
your far more excellent parts: Yet when I  
considered my Design, viz. to serve my  
A 3 Country,



## The Epistle Dedicatory.

Countrey, and to instruct the unlearned in this so excellent and necessary a Science; I thought none so fit to patronize and encourage a piece of this Nature, than one who heartily desires the Publique Good; which publique Spirit and charitable Principle, I have (in a more than ordinary manner) observed in you, and your poor Neighbours (to their comfort) are daily sensible of. Sir I need not tell you how useful a Subject of this Nature may prove to the Commonalty, whose ignorance of their own condition whilest they are Sick, and want of strength of body or purse to confer with a Physitian, proves fatal to many a poor Christian in this Nation. I shall leave this to the consideration of the Reader, and humbly crave your favourable acceptance of these my weak endeavors, and First-Fruits of my few years hard Study: Which if I obtain, my Book, though a stripling, and very impotent of it self; yet under your favourable protection, I am confident, will manfully obvert and defend it self against the venomous Bitings of Slanderous

rous

## The Epistle Dedicatory.

rous Tongues, from which it must expect not a little opposition. I hope, nay confidently believe, that this poor Infant, though but meanly clad, will find your encouragement being an honest man's Child, no Vagrant. I beseech you, Sir, excuse my confidence, who dare thus rush into your presence; and demand, without any merit of my own, your favourable protection.

But it is your good Nature, of which I am an Admirer, that hath so far emboldened me. Had Nature been more liberal to me in Expressions, or had tipt my Tongue with Eloquence; yet I durst not make use of it to you, for I know you delight not in it; nor is my self therewith affected: Therefore, in all Humility, Sincerity, and plain Language, I subscribe my self.

Your most affectionate

SERVANT,

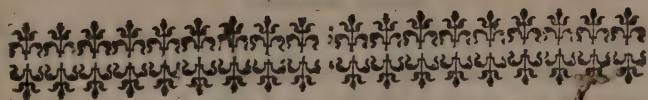
John Tanner.



R

It is  
An  
up  
of  
dond  
happi  
of Na  
that C  
self, b  
of man  
that in  
dersta  
Tong  
ther,  
of Po  
man a  
which  
into t  
in Na  
ker, t





TO THE  
READER.

---

**I**t is not Vain-Glory, ( Courteous Reader )  
Arrogancy or Presumption, that hath put me  
upon this Design, *viz.* publishing this Tractate  
of Physick: But for some years ( having abandoned the hunting after all glistening shews of happiness ) I have applyed my Mind to the study of Nature; and finding nothing in the World that God, the Great Creator, hath kept to himself, but made subject to the industrious Capacity of man's soaring Brain. And that the same God that infused into man a conceiveable Mind to understand the Mysteries of Nature, also gave a Tongue able to express his Conceptions to another, and a Hand to write it for the benefit of Posterity. As there is nothing can make a man approach nearer to the perfection of Nature which he lost in his Fall, then painful searching into the Secrets of Nature: so there is nothing in Nature can make a man more glorifie his Maker, then communicating what he hath found by  
Search

To the Reader.

Search and Industry to Posterity These Considerations put me upon the Enterprife, not forgetting the saying of Plato, and the Stoicks, *Non nobis solum nati sumus, ortusq; nostri partem patriæ vendicat, partem parentes, partem amici. Quæ in terris gignuntur, ad usum hominum omnia creant, homines autem hominum causa esse generatos, ut ipsi inter se aliis alii prodesse possent.* We are not born for our selves alone, but partly for our Country, partly for our Parents, and partly for our Friends: What ever the Earth hath produced, was created for the use of Man; Man also was created for Man's sake, that they might among themselves profit one by another These considerations (I say) moved me to pursue this Design, which (though it will not satisfie every detracting Critick, and self-conceited Practitioner) I hope will find acceptance among those for whom I principally intended it.

Courteous Reader, I have collected out of the Works of most of the Antient and Modern Physicians now extant among us, this Compendium or Abridgment of Physick, much of which I have sealed and confirmed by the *Probatum est* of my own Experience, as Providence hath given me occasion. I have not put this to view in competition with the Works of so grave and Learned Rabbies, but for the good of those that want such helps, and are unacquainted with the Latine Tongue; but more particularly for these reasons:

First,

*To the Reader.*

First, because many industrious Students have not a Purse to purchase so many Authors.

Secondly, others have not a Brain to peruse such large Volumes, but are at first better able to apprehend much lying in a little compass, the use of which ( as an Introduction ) will give them light to pass thorough larger Volumes with more ease. Thirdly, that people void of Learning, and of mean Capacities, may be better able to judge of a Disease by the Symptomes, and give a better Information to an absent Physitian, than to set him to juggle in the Piss-pot. Fourthly, Ladies and Gentlewomen who are wont to help their poor sick Neighbours, may be the better enabled, and be forewarned by dangerous Symptomes, to haste to the Learned Physitian. Lastly, that all Women may the better understand the Physitians Directions, and with more Prudence govern the Sick.

The first Book was the Fruits of my wandering Meditations, which I once intended not for publick View. Much of the second was my daily Collections, which my Practice did lead me to.

In the Theory, I interlaced the Judgements of Authors, making choice of that which seemed most consentaneous to Reason, and my own Experience. In the Practique Part, I have quoted Medicines from several Authors, as left by them: Some I have somewhat altered, and that for two Reasons.

First,



*To the Reader.*

First, some I have altered to make them more strong and efficacious.

Secondly, others I altered, when I was enforced to use ( for want of one ingredient ) another of the same Nature. This Book swelled to such a bigness, that I was forced to contract my self in the two last, and to be somewhat briefer than I intended.

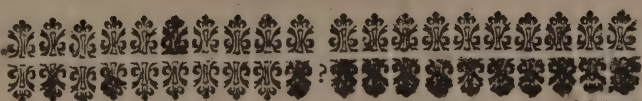
Thus, courteous Reader, I have, for thy sake, exposed my self to the dangerous and sharp Teeth of envious Detractors, which is a great hazard, especially in this polished Age, among so many fine & curious Wits, who scarcely can approve of any thing, though never so judiciously composed. Yet if it find acceptance with thee, I have my end, and shall receive sufficient encouragement to undertake somewhat more for thy benefit ; which I shall suddainly do, if I find this give content. If any fault committed by my Pen, or the Press, pass uncorrected, excuse it. Accept it with a chearful heart, and as I freely impart, so do thou, whatever profit or knowledge thou gainest thereby, freely for the good of thy Neighbour, to the honour of God, and praise of this Laudable Science, and for the further encouragement of him, who now is, farther to be,

*Thine in all Offices of Love,*

September 2.  
1667.

J. TANNER.





# A general TABLE of all the Principal Contents of this BOOK.

---

## The Contents of the first Book.

Chap. 1. <i>A physical Description of Man.</i>	page 1
Chap. 2. <i>A more particular Description of Man.</i>	3
Chap. 3. <i>A Description of the Head.</i>	4
Chap. 4. <i>Of the parts belonging to the Head.</i>	7
Chap. 5. <i>Of the Stomach, and its Faculties.</i>	12
Chap. 6. <i>Of the Heart.</i>	14
Chap. 7. <i>Of the Lungs, Liver, &amp;c.</i>	16
Chap. 8. <i>Of the Reins and Kidneys.</i>	19
Chap. 9. <i>Of the Generative parts.</i>	21
Chap. 10. <i>The Conclusion.</i>	24

---

## The Contents of the Second Book.

Chap. 1. <i>Of the nature of Physick, and office of a physician,</i>	pag. 16
Chap. 2. <i>Of diseases of the Head: Cephalæa and Megrim.</i>	28
Chap. 3. <i>Of the Frensie.</i>	33
Chap. 4. <i>Of Madness.</i>	35
Chap. 5. <i>Of the Apoplexy, Lethargy, and sleepy disease.</i>	38
Chap. 6. <i>Of the Vertigo.</i>	42
Chap. 7. <i>Of the Palsie.</i>	45
Chap. 8. <i>Of the Convulsion.</i>	47
Chap. 9. <i>Of a Catarrh or Defluxion.</i>	50
Chap. 10. <i>Of diseases of the Eyes, proceeding from obstruction of the optic Nerves.</i>	55
Chap. 11. <i>Of a Cataract.</i>	58
Chap. 12. <i>Of the enlarging or straitning of the Pupilla.</i>	61
Chap. 13.	61

# The first Table.

Chap. 13.	Of the Pia and Web.	page 63
Chap. 14.	Of the inflammation of the Eyes.	64
Chap. 15.	Of the Cancer, and Rupture of the Cornea.	69
Chap. 16.	Of Diseases of the corners of the Eyes and Eye-lids.	70
Chap. 17.	Of Diseases of the Ears.	74
Chap. 18.	Of Diseases of the Nostrils.	79
Chap. 19.	Of bleeding at the Nose.	83
Chap. 20.	Of the Diseases of the Tongue.	86
Chap. 21.	Of the Diseases of the Teeth.	88
Chap. 22.	Of the Diseases of the Gums.	90
Chap. 23.	Of ulcers of the Mouth.	91
Chap. 24.	Of a loose and inflamed Columella, and Diseases of the Tentils.	92
Chap. 25.	Of the Quinzie.	93
Chap. 26.	Of the Asthma.	96
Chap. 27.	Of the Pleurisie and inflammation of the Lungs.	98
Chap. 28.	Of Empyema.	101
Chap. 29.	Of spitting of blood.	102
Chap. 31.	Of the Consumption or Ptiſick.	104
Chap. 32.	Of the palpitation of the Heart.	108
Chap. 33.	Of swooning or Syncope.	110
Chap. 34.	Of want of Appetite.	112
Chap. 35.	Of a depraved Appetite.	114
Chap. 36.	Of the Thirsty disease.	116
Chap. 37.	Of evil Digestion.	117
Chap. 38.	Of the Hiccough.	119
Chap. 39.	Of Vomiting.	120
Chap. 40.	Of Cholera.	122
Chap. 41.	Of pain in the stomach.	124
Chap. 42.	Of the inflammation, ulcers, and imposthume of the sto- mach.	126
Chap. 43.	Of the Chollick.	128
Chap. 44.	Of the Illiac passion.	130
Chap. 45.	Of the Lientery and Caliac passion.	132
Chap. 46.	Of the Flux Diarrhea.	134
Chap. 47.	Of the Dysentery or bloody-flux.	136
Chap. 48.	Of the Tenasimus.	139
Chap. 49.	Of the Flux of the Liver.	140
Chap. 50.	Of the Worms.	142
Chap. 51.	Of the immoderate Flux of the Hemorrhoids.	144
Chap. 52.	Of the pain of the Hemorrhoids.	146
Chap. 53.	Of a hot distemper of the Liver.	147
Chap. 54.	Of the inflammation of the Liver.	149
	Chap. 55.	

# The first Table.

Chap. 55.	Of the obstruction of the Liver.	152
Chap. 56.	Of the Schirrus of the Liver.	154
Chap. 57.	Of the Jaundice.	155
Chap. 58.	Of the Dropsie.	157
Chap. 59.	Of the obstruction, inflammation, and tumor of the Spleen.	162
Chap. 60.	Of Hypochondriack melancholy.	163
Chap. 61.	Of the Scurvy.	165
Chap. 62.	Of the stone in the Kidneys.	167
Chap. 63.	Of the stone in the Bladder.	171
Chap. 64.	Of the inflammation of the Reins and Bladder.	173
Chap. 65.	Of the ulcer of the Reins and Bladder.	174
Chap. 66.	Of extraordinary pissing.	176
Chap. 67.	Of involuntary pissing.	178
Chap. 68.	Of the stoppage of the urine and strangury.	179
Chap. 69.	Of the scalding of the urine.	181
Chap. 70.	Of pissing of blood.	182
Chap. 71.	Of the Green-sickness.	184
Chap. 72.	Of the stoppage of the Terms.	186
Chap. 73.	Of the immoderate Menstrual-flux.	188
Chap. 74.	Of the whites.	190
Chap. 75.	Of the Mother.	192
Chap. 76.	Of the inflammation, ulcer, and hard swelling of the womb.	196
Chap. 77.	Of the swelling of the womb by wind or water.	199
Chap. 78.	Of the falling down of the womb.	201
Chap. 79.	Of Barrenness.	203
Chap. 80.	Of Miscarriage.	206
Chap. 81.	Of hard Travel in Child-birth.	208
Chap. 82.	Of the Gout and Sciatica.	211
Chap. 83.	Of the one day Fever.	216
Chap. 84.	Of the Fever Synochus non putridus.	217
Chap. 85.	Of continual putrid Fevers.	218
Chap. 86.	Of the Hectick Fever.	223
Chap. 87.	Of the Tertian Ague.	225
Chap. 88.	Of the Quotidian Ague.	257
Chap. 89.	Of the Quartane Ague.	ibid.
Chap. 90.	Of the Pestilence.	230
Chap. 91.	Of the small-pox and Measles.	235



## The first Table.

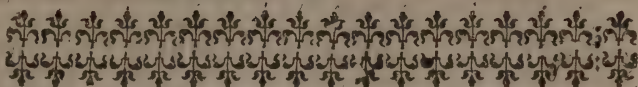
### The Contents of the Third Book.

C	Hap. 1. Of a green wound.	page 238
C	Hap. 2. Of a contused wound and a Bruise	242
Chap. 3.	Of wounds by biting or stinging of any Creature, venomous or not.	244
Chap. 4.	Of a wound in the Nerves, Tendons, Ligaments, Veins and Arteries.	245
Chap. 5.	Of Luxations and Fractures.	247
Chap. 6.	Of Accidents, happening to wounded persons.	250
Chap. 7.	Of sanguine Tumors.	253
Chap. 8.	Of Choleric Tumors.	257
Chap. 9.	Of pblegmatick Tumors.	258
Chap. 10.	Of Melancholy Tumors.	262
Chap. 11.	Of ulcers.	265
Chap. 12.	Rules for Vomiting and purging.	268

### The Contents of the Fourth Book.

C	Hap. 1. Of Distilled waters.	page 270
C	Hap. 2. Of Syrups.	275
Chap. 3.	Of Decoction and Juices.	288
Chap. 4.	Of Lincths.	289
Chap. 5.	Of preserves, Conserues Sugars and Lozenges.	291
Chap. 6.	Of Troches.	293
Chap. 7.	Of pill.	298
Chap. 8.	Of powders.	303
Chap. 9.	Of Electuaries.	309
Chap. 10.	Of oyls	316
Chap. 11.	Of ointments.	319
Chap. 12.	Of plasters.	321

CHAP.



## CHAP. I.

### *A Physical Description of MAN.*

**T**He Omnipotent and wise Creator, having Created all things out of nothing, and out of a rude and undigested lump or mass ( according to his Will, and by his Word ) brought all things into a decent Frame and comely Structure : out of a confused Nothing wrought the Heaven and the Earth, out of that which was dark and void he created Light, he separated the Waters from the Earth, and gave bounds to the unruly Waves ; and indued the dry and barren Earth with a Prolifical virtue, richly adorning it with Grass, Herbs, and Fruit-trees ; he made the Sun, Moon, and Stars, to divide the Light from the Darknes, to enlighten and rule both Day and Night, to be for Signs, to distinguish Seasons, Days, and Years ; by his Word he created every living thing that moveth in the Sea and in the Earth. Having thus far, I say, proceeded in his so excellent and admirable Workmanship of Creation, he made MAN a Summary of the Worlds Fabrick, a small Draught of the Divine Nature : he was made after other Creatures, not only as the most perfect, but as the Super-intendent and Master of all things created, *Quod dominetur in pisces maris, & in volucres cæli, & in pecudes, & in universam terram, atque in omnia reptalia reptantia super terram,* To rule over the Fish of the Sea, and over the Fowls of the Air, and over the Cattel, and over the Earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the Earth.

In Man he closed up, and ended his Work ; on Man he stamped his Seal and sign of his Power, on him he hath imprinted his Image and Supercription, his Arms and his Portraiture. *Dixit Deus, Faciamus hominem ad imaginem nostram, secundum similitudinem nostram,* God said, Let us make Man in our Image, after our likeness : In the Creation of Man, God seemeth to deliberate and take counsel with himself, how to Epitomize and gather together all his Works in so small a Compass, to contract his ( so large ) Book of Creation, into so small a Volume.

He is called the *Microcosm*, or little World, the recapitulation of all things, the ligament of Angels and Beasts, heavenly and earthly, spiritual and corporal things, the perfection of the whole Work, the honour and miracle of Nature. He created him naked, being a pure, neat and delicate Creature, made up of thin, subtil, well tempered and seasoned humors, innocent, and far more beautiful than the rest. He was created upright, but little touching the Earth, quite opposite to the Vegetable Plant, whose Root is therein fixed; far different also from the Beast, who is a mean between a Plant and himself, and goeth downward; his two Extrems tending to the bounds of the Horizon: This upright gate belongeth only unto man, as the holiest & most divine Creature, his hand tending to the Heavens, on which he looks, and there beholds himself as in a Glass, according to that of *Ovid*:

*Os homini sublime dedit, caelumque videre  
Jussit, & erectos ad sidera tollere vultus:*

Which I English thus:

*He gave man lofty looks and upright gate,  
To view the Heav'ns and thereon contemplate.*

His Body being thus formed of pure subtil Earth, as a house and habitation for the Soul, God breathed in him the breath of Life, and he became a living Creature. So in the ordinary Generation and Formation, which is made of the seed in the Womb, Nature observeth the self-same order; the Body is first formed as well by the Elementary force which is in the Seed, and the heat of the Matrix, as by the Celestial influence of the Sun; according to the Adagy, *Sol & homo generant hominem*, the Sun and Man do engender Man; which is done (according to the Opinion of most) in such order, that the first seven days, the seed of the man and woman mingle and curdle like Cream, which is the beginning of Conception; the second seven days, the seed is changed into a formless bloody substance, and concocted into a thick and indigested mass of flesh, the proper matter of the Child: the next seven days, out of this lump is produced and fashioned a gross body, with the three most noble parts, *viz.* The Liver, Heart and Brain: the fourth seven days, or near thirty, the whole body is ended, perfected, joynted, and organized, and becometh a Body fit to entertain the Soul, which invests it self into the Body (as some think) about the seven and thirtieth or fortieth day: at the third Month, or thereabouts, the Infant hath motion and sense;



## Chap. 2. *A Physical Description of Man.*

3

at the ninth Moneth is brought forth. These times cannot be so exactly prefixed, but that by the strength or debility of the Seed or Matrix, it may be either hastned or prolonged. But I shall forbear further discourse of the Soul, it not being my task to act the part of a Divine; and come to a more particular description of Man, yet not so, as to act the part of an Anatomist.

### CHAP. II.

#### *A more particular Description of the Body of Man.*

**T**HE Body of Man consists of above two hundred Bones, and as many Cartilages, which are as the basis and upholding Pillars of the whole Building; the Joynts are compacted with many Ligaments, and cloathed with innumerable Membranes, the Members are supplied with above thirty pair of sensitive Nerves, as with little Cords; and all besprinkled with as many Arteries, like Water-pipes, conveying vital spirits to all parts: The empty places are filled up with almost four hundred Muscles and flesh of divers sorts, as with Flocks, all covered over with skin. In him are the temperament of all Creatures; some there are who have the stomach of an Ostrich, others the heart of a Lion, too too many have the heart of a Dog, not a few conditioned like a Sow, and many by nature very like to the Ass.

Man for whom all things was made, is nourished by the Balsamick Spirits of Vegetables, Animals and Minerals, and therefore doth consist of all these Faculties, that spring up as a token of health or sickness: Balm, Violets and Germander produce fruit in Man, *viz.* The Spirits of the Heart, Brain and Liver: Likewise the Nettle, *Aron and Crowfoot*, as Scabs, Soars and Pusches; Mineral separations also may appear in Man, of Vitriol, Allum, Salt and Tartar, &c. as the Leprosie, Elephantiasis, Morpew and Cancer: Nor is Man free from Mineral Generations, as Gold, Silver, Tin, Copper, Iron, Lead; the Heart, the Brain, Liver, Reins, Gall and Spleen: In the body of Man is likewise to be found Quarries of Stone, *viz.* in the Bladder and Kidneys, which serve not to build, but to destroy the Fabrick.

The Celestial Planets have a Dukedom in this little World; the moistning power of the Moon is represented by the Marrow which flows from the Brain; in the Genital part is *Venus* seated, Eloquence and Comeliness is the effects of nimble-witted *Mercury*, the Sun hath a near affinity to the Heart; benevolent *Jupiter* hath his

seat in the Liver ; the Fountain of nutritive Blood ; the fiery fury of *Mars* is lodged in the Gall ; the spongy and hollow Milt, the seat and receptacle of melancholick humors, is a perfect representation of the cold Planet *Saturn*. Indeed the Spirits of the Body do manifest and hold forth the quintessence of all things, the four humors in Man answer to the four Elements ; Choler which is hot and dry, representeth the Fire ; hot and moist blood, the Air ; Flegm cold and moist, the water ; cold and dry melancholy the Earth.

I may yet proceed further in declaring the harmony between the great and little World : The Belly of man may fitly represent the Land or main Continent ; the *Vena Cava* the Meditterreanean Sea ; the Bladder, the Western Sea, into which the Rivers of the Body do all run and discharge themselves ; his Mouth answereth to the East quarter of the World, his Fundament to the West, his Navel to the South, and his Back to the North. The Body of Man you see, is an admirable Creature, the measure of all things, the pattern of the Universe and Epitome of the World ; the Horizon of corporal and incorporeal things. I shall conclude with the saying of *Zoroastres*, O Man ! the workmanship of most powerful Nature, for it is the most artificial Master-piece of Gods hand.

### CHAP. III.

#### A Description of the Head.

**T**He Head of a Man seemeth to offer it self, as the first thing to be considered ; it doth possess the highest place in the Body, and represents the uppermost and Angelical Region ; it is the Fort of mans Minde, the Seat of Reason, the Habitation of Wisdom, the Shop of Memory, Judgment and Cogitations : It containeth the Brain, cold and spongy by nature, inclosed with two skins, the one more hard and thick, joyning it self to the Brain-pan, called *Dura Mater* ; the other more thin and easie, wherein lieth the Brain inclosed, called *Pia Mater*, it is soft and tender to the Brain, and nourisheth it, as a loving Mother doth her young and tender Babe ; from *Pia Mater* doth issue the Sinews and Marrow that descendeth and falleth down into the Reins of the Back : In the Brain, is the seat and throne of the rational Soule, in which are a very great number of Veins and Arteries planted, ramifying (or branching) themselves through all the substance thereof, administering to the Brain, both Spirit and Life, vital and nutrimental nourishment, which is brought by the aforesaid small Veins and Arteries from the Heart and Liver ; and con-

ected

cocted and reconcocted, elaborated and made very subtil, passing through those woven and interlaced, turning and winding passages, in which labyrinth the vital Spirit often passing and re-passing, is perfected and refined, and becomes animal.

It is not lost labour, if we consider, how the *Pia Mater* divideth the substance of the Brain, and lappeth it into certain Cells or Divisions, viz. the substance of the Brain is divided into three Ventricles, of which the foremost containeth the most, the middlemost less, the hindermost the least. In the foremost part of the Brain Imagination is seated, in the middlemost Judgment, in the hindermost Memory: Imagination is hot and dry in quality, quick and active, from whence it cometh that frantic men, and such as are sick of hot and burning Maladies, are excellent in that which belongs to Imaginations; many upon such a distemper have been excellent in Poetry and Divination, it never sleepeth, but is always working, whether the man be sleeping or waking; and by the Vapors that come from the Heart, from variety of Cogitations, which, wanting the regulation of Judgment, (when man sleepeth) becomes a Dream.

Hence it appeareth, that Subtilty, Promptitude, and that which they commonly call Wit, belongeth to a hot Imagination: It is active, stirring, undertaketh all, and setteth all the rest to work, it gathereth the kinds and figures of things, both present, by the service of the five Senses, and absent by the common Sense.

Judgment is seated in the midst of the Brain, there to bear rule over the other Faculties, it is the Judge of the little World, the seat of the rational Soul, and the Judge of mens Actions. If you would know the means whereby it knoweth and judgeth of things, *Aristotle* and many others have thought that the Spirit knoweth by the help of the Senses, and that the Understanding without the Senses is but as white paper. *Nil est in intellectu, quod non fuerit prius in sensu*. There is nothing in the Understanding which was not first in the Sense.

This opinion is false, because the seeds of Science and Vertue are insinuated into our Spirits, else is the state of the reasonable Soul worse than the vegetative or sensitive, which of themselves are able to exercise their Functions: It were absurd to think that so Noble and divine a Faculty should beg assistance of so vile and corruptible as the Senses, which apprehend only the simple accidents, not the natures nor essence of things. Again, were it so, it must follow, that they that have their Senses most perfect, should be most witty; whereas we many times see the contrary.

Yet let no man think, that the Spirit hath no service from the Senses, for in the beginning, discovery and invention of things, the Senses do much service to the Spirit, but the Spirit dependeth not upon the Senses.



Some are of opinion that it is hot and moist in quality, others say, that a dry temperature is proper to the Understanding, whereby it comes to pass, that aged persons excel those in Understanding that are young, because as years increase, moisture doth decrease in the Brain; hence it comes to pass, that melancholick persons that are afflicted with want, and fast much, are wise and ingenious, for heaviness and fasting are great driers: *Splendor siccus, animus sapientissimus*: *vexatio dat intellectum*, heat and drought refineth the wit; affliction giveth understanding, and that is the reason that great persons that feed highly, and take little care, and seldome lie under vexation or affliction, for the most part are none of the wisest: Beasts that are of a dry temperature, as Ants, Bees, Elephants, &c. are wise and ingenious: On the contrary, they that are of a moist Constitution, are stupid and without spirit, as are Swine. Memory is seated in the hinder Cell of the Brain, as the grand Accountant or Register of the little World, whose office is to record things past, present, or to come; Some say its temperature is cold and dry, and that is the reason that melancholick people have good memories; others, that it is moist, because Children have better memories than old Men; men are more apt for Memory in the Morning by reason of the moisture gained by sleep in the Night: the common people do more esteem of memory, and delight more in it than of the other two; it maketh a great shew in the world, and they judge those who have a good memory to be very wise, esteeming more of Science than of Wisdom, but of the three it is the least, and that which fools do many times enjoy, for seldom is an excellent memory joyned with understanding and wisdom, for their temperatures are contrary; hence comes that ill course in the instructing of youth, viz. to make them have by heart all they learn, and so stuff and gorge memory with other mens good, and starve the understanding. We see those that have all *Aristotle* and *Cicero* in their heads, yet are the veriest fools in the world.

Many have been very excellent in this Faculty, *Seneca* repeated two thousand Names as they were first spoken; he also hearing two hundred Verses, rehearsed them, and began at the last. *Cyrus* and *Scipio* knew every Souldiers Name in their Armies. *Mithridates* learned the language of two and twenty Nations: *Esdra*s the Priest had the whole Jewish Doctrine by heart; *Julius Cesar* would dictate to four at the same time; and that which is more strange, *Pliny* would dictate to one, hear another, and read at the same instant. As these were so excellent and acute in memory, others were as dull: *Atticus* could never learn the Letters of the Alphabet by heart: others could not count above four: it is said, that *Theodore Beza* two years before he died, as he languished, his Mind grew so feeble that

## Chap. 4. *Of the Parts belonging to the Head.* 7

that he forgot things present, yet held those things, which were printed in his mind before time, when his understanding and memory was good. What shall we say of *Messala Corvinus*, who forgot his own name? Or *Franciscus Barbarus* of *Athens*, a very learned man in the Greek tongue, having received a blow on his head with a stone, forgot his learning, which he had spent the greatest part of his time upon, yet remembered all things else? These things are brought to pass (without doubt) either by the strength or debility of mens genitures, and from directions, and accidents thence proceeding. Wit and understanding, and all the faculties of the soul depends on a certain temperament: and hence it comes to pass (and oftentimes) that those that are acute, and wise in some things, are stupid and dull in othersome. But I have too far digressed, I must return to my rode again.

### CHAP. IV.

#### *Of the parts belonging to the Head.*

**H**AVING given you a brief and general description of the Head, and of the intellectuall faculty of man; it is meet now to treat of the sensitive part, which will lead me to describe the particular parts of the head.

The sensitive faculty hath its residence in the *Pia Mater*, it is that which gives vertue to all the particular senses, and keeps a harmony among them: they are five in number, *viz.* Seeing, Hearing, Smelling, Tasting, Feeling: Although these are all united in one in the brain, yet operatively they are distinguished in their several seats, and places of residence.

The sight resides in the eyes, and particularly in the Crystalline humor, they are two in number, and collateral, planted in the highest stage as *Centinels*, they are the luminaries of the *Microcosm*; *Galen* saith, the brain and the head were made for the eye, that they might be in the highest as a beholder in a Tower, they are next in nature unto the Soul; for in the eye is seen and known the disturbances and griefs, gladness and joys of the Soul, as Love, Wrath, and other Passions; they be compounded and made of seven Tunicles or Coats, and three humors, they proceed out of the substance of the brain, and come through the *Pia Mater*, of whose substance they take a panicle, to defend it from annoyance. They meet and are united into one sinew, about half an inch in length, before they enter the skull, and after divided into two, each goeth into one eye, they are called *Nervi Optici*, the Optick Nerves, and through these, are brought the visible

Spirits to the eye. These are the most noble outward parts of the body, in beauty, utility, mobility and activity. They are to the visage, that which the visage is to the body, they are the face of the face; and because they are tender delicate and pretious, they are fenced and rampar'd on all sides, with skins, lids, brows, and hair. The object of the eye or sight is colour (according to the common opinion) which is the adherent quality in bodies, whereof there are six simples as white, yellow, red, purple, green, and blew: the compounds are infinite; to speak more fully, the true object is light; which is never without colour. and without which the colours are invisible.

The sense of Seeing excelleth all the rest in many things; it apprehendeth farther off, and extendeth it self even to the Stars. It is certainly reported, that *Strabo* had such acute eyes, that from *Lily-beum*, he could discern ships, going forth of the *Carthaginian* Haven, and could number them, the distance was 135. miles. It hath more variety of objects, for to all things, and generally in all, there is light and colour the objects of the eyes, as I hinted before. It is most exquisite; for it is most exact, in the least and finest thing that presents it self. It is more prompt and sudden, for it apprehendeth even in a moment and without motion, when the other senses require motion and time. It enjoyeth a liberty incomparable to others: the eye seeth, or seeth not, and therefore hath lids to open or shut: it is active, all the rest purely passive. But that which is most noble in this sense is, that the privation of the object thereof, which is darkness, brings fear, and that naturally, because then a man findeth himself robbed of so excellent a guide: the sight in the light, is instead of company, wherein man much delighteth.

It would fill a large volume, to describe the Eye in every particular, but that which I have said thereof, is sufficient, it being not my task to write an Anatomy. Hearing is the next sense to be considered, whose residence is in the cares, it is in quality cold and dry, under the dominion of *Saturn*. They are placed on the outside of the head, in the self-same height as the eyes are, as the Scours of the body. Porters of the Spirit, the Receivers and Judgers of the sounds, which alwayes ascend. They have their entrance oblique and crooked, that so the sound may not enter all at once, whereby the sense of hearing might be hindered, and not well able to judge: and again that the sounds being fugitive, might there lurk, and abide under his shadow, till the instruments of hearing have gotten possession thereof. The Sinews that are the organs of hearing, spring each from the Brain, and when they come to the hole of the Eare, they are writhed together, the end is like a worm or little teat, into which is received the sound, and from thence carried to the common wits to distinguish. The object of the ear or hearing is a sound, or noise proceeding from the encoun-



## Chap.4. *Of the Parts belonging to the Head.* 9

ter of two bodies: A pleasant and melodious sound sweetneth and appeaseth the Spirit, consequently the body too, and drives maladies from them both; the sharp and penetrant, doth trouble and wound the Spirit. This sense hath many singularities; for the service of the body, the sight is most necessary, but for the Spirit, hearing hath the superiority. It is Spiritual, the agent of understanding; many that have been blind, have been great and wise Philosophers, but never any that were deaf. In brief, science, truth, and virtue, hath no other entrance into the Soul, but by the Ear. Christianity teaches that faith cometh by hearing, which the sight doth rather hurt than help. Faith is the belief of those things, which are not seen; which belief is acquired by hearing. For all these reasons and many more that might be inserted, the wisest have so much commended Hearing, the pure guardian from all corruption; the health of the inward man.

Smelling is seated in the Nose, governed by *Mars*, and is hot and dry in quality; and therefore Martial Creatures, or such as are hot and dry of constitution, excel in this faculty, as Doggs, &c. From the brain cometh two Sinews to the holes of the brain pan, where beginneth the concavity of the Nose, and these two are the proper Organs or Instruments of smelling, they have heads like paps, into which is received the virtue of smelling, and presenting it to the common sense. Over these two Organs, is placed *Colatorium*, or the nostrils, which concavity or ditch was made for two causes; first, that the air, that bringeth the spirit of smelling, might rest therein, till it were received by its proper Organs. Secondly, that the excrements of the Brain might be hidden under it, till it be fit to be ejected. From this concavity goeth two holes into the mouth, of which we may take notice of three conveniences: First, that when a mans mouth is closed, either by eating or sleeping, that then air might come through them to the Lungs: else a man must be forced to hold his mouth open always. Secondly, they are helpful to a mans speech, for when one or both of those passages are stopped a man speaketh in the Nose, as we commonly say. Thirdly, they are useful in the cleansing of the concavities of the nose, either by snuffing, or drawing it through the mouth. The object of smell is an odour, or scent, which is a fume rising from an odoriferous object, ascending to the nose, to the ventricles of the brain: the strong and violent hurteth the brain, the temperate and good, doth rejoyce, delight and comfort. This sense is oftentimes very useful, in discovering meats or drinks of an evil odour, which otherwise would much prejudice the stomach, and work evil effects in the body of man.

Much more might be said, touching the shape and form, matter and composition of the Nose, but my design is to distinguish the parts in a general way. The

The Taſt is hot and moiſt, and under the influence of *Jupiter*; this Senſe hath its reſidence in the palate of the mouth, and tongue. Its office is to diſcern what food is congruous to the ſtomach, and what not. The ſkin of the palate of the mouth is the ſame, with the inward part of the ſtomach; and the ſame with the way of the meat into the ſtomach; and hence it cometh to paſs, that when a man is touch'd upon the Palate of the mouth, it tickleth the ſtomach, and ſo much the nearer to the throat, ſo much more the ſtomach abhorreth. The object of Taſting is a ſavour or ſmack, whereof there are ſix ſimple kinds; as Sweet, Sour, Sharp, Tart, Salt, Bitter; the compounds are many. And being led to the mouth, it is not amiſs, if I ſpeak a few words to the compoſition thereof. In the mouth, are five parts to be conſidered; the Lips, the Teeth, the Tongue, the Uvula, the Palate of the mouth; of the which I have already ſpoken: A word or two of the reſt: The lips are made of a muſculous fleſh, their office is, firſt, as the door to the houſe to keep the mouth cloſe, till the meat be chewed, Secondly they help to pronounce the ſpeech. The Teeth the hardeſt members, faſtned into the mandible; their office is firſt to grind the meat before it goeth into the ſtomach, that ſo it may the better digeſt; Secondly, that it might be a help to the ſpeech, for they that want any of their Teeth are defective therein. The number is uncertain, ſome have more, ſome have leſs; they who have their full number have thirty and two. The tongue is a carnous member, compound and made of many Nerves, Ligaments, Veins and Arteries, ordained principally for three cauſes: Firſt, that when a man eateth, the tongue might turn the meat in the mouth, till it be chewed. Secondly by the tongue, and the palate of the mouth near the root of the tongue, is received the taſt of Sweet or ſower, and thence preſented to the common ſenſes to paſs Judgment thereof. Thirdly and principally the tongue is ordained for the pronounciation of ſpeech, of which faculty I muſt crave leave to inſiſt on, and that as briefly as may be. Speech is an excellent preſent, and very neceſſary; given only unto man, *animi index & ſpeculum*: it is the interpreter and image of the ſoul; the hearts meſſenger; the gate, through which doth paſs all that lyeth within the dark and hidden corners of man; by this the Spirit becometh viſible. Of all the external and viſible parts of the body, that which cometh neareſt to the heart is the root thereof; and that which cometh neareſt the thoughts is ſpeech. Out of the abundance of the Heart the mouth ſpeaketh; It is a powerful Maſter, an Imperious Commander; it ſtirreth up, animateth, exaſperateth, appeaſeth, maketh ſad, merry, it imprinteth whatever paſſion it handleth; feedeth the ſoul of the bearer; it maketh him bluſh, wax pale, laugh,

cry,

# Chap. 4. Of the Parts belonging to the Head. 11

cry, tremble, mad with choler, leap for joy, what not? It is the great huckster, and intermedler, by it we traffick, peace is handled, affairs are managed, it is the band of humane society: hearing and speech answer, and are accommodated the one to the other: by these two the souls are poured the one into the other: so that if these two gates be shut, (as it is in those that are deaf and dumb) the Spirit remaineth solitary and miserable. Hearing is the gate to enter; by it the Spirit receiveth all things from without: speech is the gate to go out, through it the Spirit sendeth forth that which was within. From the communication of these two, as from the stroke of two flints, there cometh forth the fire of truth, & so by the polishing & rubbing of these two, knowledge cometh to perfection. But Hearing is the first and principal, for there can nothing come forth, which not first entered; and therefore he that is deaf altogether by nature, is also dumb.

I might much more enlarge my self in the description of the head: but my purpose being to declare nothing, but what may be pertinent in the manifestation of the humane faculties and virtues; I shall conclude this Chapter with a word or two of the sense of feeling which is of no particular quality, but of all, hot, cold, dry, and moist, it is deputed to no particular Organ, but is spread abroad over the whole body: it is the Index of all tangible things: its Object then must be heat or cold, drouth or moisture; things present and polite, sharp and smarting, motion, rest, tickling. It is well known that man, and other Creatures live without some particular sense; It is the opinion of most, that a man cannot live without this sense of Feeling, being only necessary unto life: yet *Augustine* proveth the contrary, in the 14 Book *de Civitate Dei*; by example of a Presbyter, that lay as though he were dead, and did not feel those that pulled him, nor would he stir, though they burned him with fire, yet confessed that he could then hear men speak, (if they spake aloud) as though they were far from him; by which it appears, that this he did, not by resisting, but for want of the sense of feeling which afterward was restored to him again: I shall pass by what the English History relates of one *Elizabeth Barton*, a maid of *Carterbury*, who oftentimes was deprived of her senses, by reason of a disease she had.

I shall also wave Disputes concerning the number of the senses, some supposing there are no more in nature than are apparent in us. There may very well be more, yet greatly to be doubted that there are; it is impossible for us to know them, to affirm them, or to deny them, because a man shall never know the want of that sense, which he never had, one sense cannot discover another; and if a man want one by nature, yet he knows not which way to affirm it. A man that is born blind, and hath not heard what sight is; cannot conceive that



he seeth not, nor desireth to see. So man, being not able to imagine more than the five that he hath, cannot know how to judge, whether there be more in nature, who knoweth whether the difficulties that we find in many of the Works of Nature, and the effects of many Creatures, which we cannot understand, do proceed from the want of some sense that we have not? There are hidden properties, which we see in many things; and a man may say that there are sensible faculties in nature, proper to judge and apprehend them, yet must conclude, we have them not: who knoweth whether it be some particular sense, that discovereth the hour of midnight to the Cock, and moves him to crow; or how Beasts are taught to choose certain herbs for their cure, and many such like wonders? None can affirm or deny, saying, This it is; or, That it is.

## CHAP. V.

### Of the Stomach and its Faculties.

**T**He Stomach is a member, Compound and Spermatick, fleshy and sensible, wherein is made the perfect first digestion of *Chyle*; It is a necessary member to the body, for if it fail in its operation, the whole Fabrick is corrupted. It is in the little world, the same as the terrestrial Globe is in the great world: In it, is expressed the sub-lunary part of the world; in it are contained the parts that serve for nutrition, concoction, and procreation. And this leads me to discourse of the administering virtues in man, which are here seated; and to wind up all with a touch of the office of the *Microcosmical Stars*, with as much brevity as may be. The Stomach is framed of two pannicles, the outer is *Carneous*, the inner *Nervous*, from which is stretched to the mouth *Isifagus*, or the way of the meat, by which the stomach draweth to its self meat and drink, as with hands. By the virtue of the subtil will which is in this *Musculus Longitudinal*, is made the attractive virtue, which is hot and dry, by a quality active, or principal, which appears by the Sun, the Fountain of all heat, which is of an attractive quality, which is evident by his extracting and exhaling the humidity from this inferiour Globe, into the airy Region, as into the neck or higher part of an *Alimbeck*; and being resolved into water, (by reason of their weight) fall down again upon the earth, which is the vessel receiving: So through continued distillations, by sublimation of the water, by cohobation, by drawing of the liquor, (being often poured on) and fortified by the influence of the Celestial, the Central Sun, the body becomes indued with a concoctive, nutritive,

## Chap. 5. *Of the Stomach and its Faculties.* 13

rive, and procreative vertue. So in the Stomach, by the active quality of the *Microcosmical Sun*, his benevolent rayes, and friendly heat, meat and drink is desired, and attracted into the stomach, for the nourishment of the whole body.

We can do no less than give *Mars* a share in the dominion of the attractive faculty, being hot and dry by nature, this is the reason: Experience telleth us, That Martial men, or men of a Cholerick constitution, are none of the worst Trencher-men; and at the Pot incomparable.

In the stomach is a *Transverse Muscle*, to withhold or make retention: by this retentive vertue, those things that are brought into the stomach are kept and withholden, until Nature hath wrought his kind, and every faculty hath executed his office. It is in quality cold and dry; Cold, because the nature of cold is to compress, or hold together, as you may see in Ice: Dry, because it is the nature of driness to keep and hold what is compressed. It is under the influence of *Saturn*, and that is the reason, why, for the most part, men that are cold and dry of temperature, or, as Astrologers say, *Saturnine* people, are covetous and tenacious: and that is the reason that old men are naturally covetous, because *Saturn* ruleth old age; and by the decay of nature, the temperature becomes cold and dry.

It hath the Spleen, the representative of *Saturn*, lying toward the left side, and furnisheth the stomach with humours necessary to fortifie the retentive vertue.

The digestive faculty (which is the chief and most principal,) the other, like hand-Maids attending it) is hot and moist; Nature's Cook, and principal Workman, the *Archæus*, and central fire, which in this Philosophical Vessel, viz. the Stomach digesteth the victuals into a *Chaos*, or confused Mass, that so a natural separation may be made. It is under the influence of *Jupiter*, who furnisheth it with friendly heat and moisture, by the Liver, (the *Microcosmical Jupiter*) chafing and beating the right side of the stomach.

The stomach hath also a *Latitudinal Muscle* or will, which makes the expulsive faculty: It is naturally cold and moist; cold to compress the superfluous, moist, to make the matter slippery and fit for ejection, also to work a sutable disposition in the body. It is a necessary operation, by it, after the separation of the pure from the Impure, the Elements from the *Caput Mortuum*, or rather *feces*, is removed, and carried away all that's needless or prejudicial to Nature. It is under the dominion of the Moon (with whom you may joyn *Venus*, being of the same nature) whose *Epitome*, or *Microcosmical Substitute*, viz. the Brain sendeth a branch of Nerves to the stomach, and thereby furnisheth it with humours cold and moist, fit for expulsion.

I shall now hasten, to give you a short description of the Heart, Liver, Spleen, and Kidneys, &c.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of the Heart.

**I**NOW come to speak briefly of the Heart, who is the principal of all other members, and the beginning of life, he is set in the midst of the Breast, by himself as Lord and King of all the Members. And, as Lord or King ought to be served of his Subjects that have their living of him; so are all the Members of the body, subjects of the Heart: they receive their living from him, and in many ways they do him service. He is the same in the little world, as the Sun that glorious Lamp of Heaven is in the great world. It is called *Sol Corporis*, as the Sun is called *Cor Cæli*, because their operations are so like. The vital Spirit hath its residence here; why then should antiquity with *Ignominy* be brought to the Bar, and condemned, for saying the Heart lives first, and dyes last: he being the Fountain and beginning of life, it must needs follow, that it is the first thing in man that lives, and the last that dyes.

Here is to be noted, That the Heart hath blood in his substance, whereas all other members have it in their Veins and Arteries. It is bound to the back part of the Breast by certain Ligaments, which Ligaments though they touch not the substance of the Heart; yet in the over part they spring forth of him; By which he appears to be King of the members, and Center of the *Microcosmical* Planetary Hierarchy.

Moreover, the Heart hath two Ventricks or Concavities, and the left is higher than the right; the cause of its hollowness, is to keep the blood for his nourishing; and the Air to abate and temper the great heat which is included, and shut up in the Concavities.

As he is *Sol Corporis*, and Center of the rest of the Members, and ruler of the Family, he communicates to them Life and Motion: yet by his heat he attracts what is needfull for himself, from the other members as a subsidy or tax imposed upon his Subjects. And therefore to the right Ventricle of the Heart, cometh a Vein from the great Vein called *Venæcava*, which receiveth all the substance of the blood from the Liver; this Vein, I say, passeth from *Venæcava* to the right ventricle of the Heart, and bringeth a great portion of the thickest and purest blood to nourish the Heart. The residue that is left of this, is made more subtil through the vertue and heat of the Heart,

and



and then sent into a concavity or pit in the midst of the Heart, between the two Ventracles : therein it is made more hot, and pure, and from thence it passeth to the best Ventricle, and there is engendered in it a Spirit, that is clearer, brighter and subtiler, than any Corporeal or bodily thing, which is engendered of the four Elements; for it is a mean between the Body and the Soul . Wherefore of the Philosophers it is likened more to heavenly than earthly things.

And here I shall take leave to digress, and tell you of some things wonderful, touching the Heart ; If we credit *Avicenna* : Some have wanted a Heart : and to this purpose I could recite other mens opinions ; but I shall not trouble the Readers head with such things, which seem to my self impossible. *Valerius Maximus* speaketh of one *Aristomanes Messenius*, (who killed 300 Lacedemonians) who had a hairy Heart. *Beneventus* reports the same of a certain Thief. *Columbus* observed a young man that wanted the *Pericardium*, (which is a thin skin involving the Heart as in a Purse) and he was much troubled with swooning Fits. It hath been the Opinion, That a man cannot live a moment scarcely, who hath received a wound in the Heart : And good reason too, seeing the life depends upon the safety of the Spirits, the Heart being the shop and making thereof ; when the Heart is wounded, it is necessary that the generation of the Spirits cease. Yet *Nicol. Malerius* relates a History of one *Andreas Hassenwanger*, who was one of the Life-guard of Count *William of Nassau* Governor of *Frisia*, &c. who received a wound in the Breast by his fellow-Souldier, Anno 1607. on the 22. of *August*, in the evening, he died on the 8th of *September* following, one hour after Sun-rising, his body being opened to search for the wound, by the aforementioned *Nicol. Malerius*, and two other Chirurgions, in the presence of several Souldiers of Note ; they found that the wound had entred the right cavity of the Heart, and that part of the Heart was almost consumed ; the left part remaining entire, which is the chief habitation of the vital spirits. By this means he lived 16 days, which had been impossible, if the left ventricle had been wounded.

But to proceed ; From the left Ventricle of the Heart, springeth two Arteries, the one having but one Coat, and therefore is called *Arteria Venalis*, which carrieth blood from the Heart to the Lungs, which blood is vaporous, and fit for its nourishment ; and carrieth back air from the Lungs to refresh the Heart.

See here the Harmony and friendly Agreement between the *Microscopical Sun* and *Mercury* ; the first affordeth of his own nutriment to nourish the other, whilst the other rewards him with air to refresh him.

The

The other Artery hath two Coats; it is called *Vena Arterialis*, or the great Artery, of which springeth all the other Arteries, that spread to every member of the body; which carrieth the Spirits, which are the Treasures of the Souls vertue. Thus it passeth till it come to the Brain, and be made an animal Spirit, as you have heard before in the Third Chapter; at the Liver it is made nutrimental and at the Testicles generative. Thus by the Heart is made a Spirit of every kind, and (like the Sun in the Heavens) by his royal presence, he doth confer life and liberty to his suppliants.

I might here tell you, why these Arteries have two Coats, namely, because one is not sufficient to withhold the vital Spirits carried in them; their motion being so violent. Again, the thing carried about being so precious a treasure, it had need of better keeping. This Artery is called the pulsative Vein. I might here frame a large discourse of the pellicles of the Heart, which open and shut to receive the blood: Also the two little ears by whom cometh in and passeth out the air: I might say much of the pannicles, which as some think have their original from *Dura Mater*, as namely, *Pericardium*, called of some, *Capsula Cordis*, which springeth of the upper pannicle of the Midriff, and covereth the Heart: of the which springeth another called *Mediastinum*, which parteth the Breast in the mid'st, and keepeth that the Lungs fall not over the Heart, (such a rule hath the Architect Spirit given to each part, as Stars to move in their several Orbs:) there is another pannicle that covereth the Ribs, of whom the Midriff taketh its beginning. But this being beyond my intended scope, I will put an end to this Chapter of the Heart.

## CHAP. VII.

### Of the Lungs, Liver, &c.

THE Lungs is made of a substance very soft and spongy; supple; to draw and to inforce from, like a pair of bellows: it is an instrument of respiration, whereby the Heart is refreshed, drawing unto it the blood, the Spirits and the air, and disburthening it self of those fumes and excrements which oppress it. It is naturally cold and dry, accidentally cold and moist: naturally cold and dry waving about the Heart, abating his heat, by its refreshing blast; it is accidentally moist, by reason of *Catarrhs* and *Rheums*, which it receiveth from the Brain.

There are three principal parts in the Lungs considerable, one is a Vein

Veins coming from the Liver, which bringeth with it the crude and undigested part of the Chyle to feed the Lungs. Another in *Arteria Venialis*, coming from the Heart, bringing the Spirit of life to nourish the Lungs. The third is *Trachea Arteria*, that bringeth air to the Lungs, and it passeth through all the left part of them to do its office.

The Lungs is divided into the five portions or pellicles, three on the right side, and two on the left side; if in case any impediment or hurt should happen in any one part, the other should be ready to supply the office.

But I forbear any further description of the Lungs, and come to the Liver, which is a principal member in the little world, representing the Planet *Jupiter*, *Quasi juvenis pater*, hot and moist, inclining towards the right side, under the short ribs. The form of the Liver is *Gibbous* or *Bunchy* on the back side; on the other side hollow like the inside of an hand: that it might be pliable to the stomach, (as a mans hand is to an apple or any thing that is round) to further its digestions for his heat is to the Stomach, as the heat of a fire is to the pot which hangeth over it. It is the Store-house of the Blood, the Fountain of the Veins, the seat of the natural nourishing faculty, or vegetative Soul, ingendred of the Blood of that Chyle which it draweth from the Meseraique Veins, and receiveth by the *Vena Porta* which entreth into the concavities thereof, and afterwards is sent and distributed through the whole body by the help of *Vena Cava*, which riseth from the bunch or branches thereof, which are in great numbers as the Rivers from the Ocean.

The natural and nutrimental faculty hath its residence in the Liver, and is dispersed through the whole body, with the Veins, from which are bred four particular humours, viz. Blood, Choler, Flegm, and Melancholy.

It is so excellent and necessary a member, that I dare not give credit to their opinions, who say it may be wanting in a man; as some say, it was in one *Matbias Ortellius* a Merchant in *Antwerp*.

Blood is made of meat perfectly concocted, in quality hot and moist *Jupiter's* darling, the most perfect and necessary humour, (the other three being superfluities, yet necessary too.) The blood thus concocted, is drawn out by the *Vena Cava*, whose branches ramifying upwards and downwards, carrieth and conveigheth it to all other Members of the body for their nourishment, where, by a third digestion, it is transmuted into the flesh.

Choler is made of meat more than perfectly concocted, it is the spume or froth of blood: it clarifieth all the humours, heats the body, nourisheth the apprehension. It is in quality hot and dry, it fortifieth the attractive faculty, as blood doth the digestive; it moveth



man to activity and valour, it is under the Planet *Mars*, whose residence is in the Gall, which is an official member, a purse or pancreatic vesicle placed in the hollownes of the Liver, whose office is to receive the Cholerick superfluities, which are engendred in the Liver as aforesaid. Which Purse or Bag hath three holes or necks; by the first it draweth to it self the Choler from the Liver, that so the blood be not hurt by the choler. By the second it sendeth choler to the bottom of the Stomach, to fortifie the attractive faculty. And lastly, it sendeth choler regularly to every gut, from one to another, to cleanse them from superfluities and dross.

Flegm is made of meat not perfectly digested, it fortifieth the virtue expulsive (what it is, and what the other faculties are, you have heard in the fifth Chapter) and maketh the body fit for ejection, it is kind to, and fortifieth the Brain by its consimilitude with it, it is antipathetical to the apprehension, and doth much injure it, therefore flegmatick persons have but weak apprehensions; It is cold and moist in quality, its receptracle is in the Lungs, it is governed by the Moon and *Venus*: Therefore it qualifies choler, cools and moisteneth the Heart (as you have heard before in the description of the Lungs) thereby sustaining it and the whole body from the fiery effects which continual motion would produce.

Melancholy is the sediment of blood, it is cold and dry in quality: it maketh men sober, solid and staid, fit for study, or any serious employment: It curbs the unbridled toys and fooleries incident to the sanguine complexion: it stayeth wandring and idle thoughts, and reduceth them home to the Centre: It is like a grave Counsellor to the whole body. It is governed by the Planet *Saturn*, it strengtheneth the retentive faculty, and its receptracle is in the Spleen, which in the body is placed on the left side, transversly linked to the Stomach.

*Hollerius* reports, That a Woman at *Paris* was found without a Spleen. And *Pliny* in his Natural History saith, That in *Carnius* men are born without it: and hence the common people thought, that it might be safely cut out of Footmen and Horses, and as it hath been wanting in some, so it hath abounded in others: *Fallopious* observed three that lay one upon another. One was seen so great, that it weighed above 20 pounds, *Colum. Anatom.*

Another had a Milt weighed 23 pound. Where it increaseth, the body decreaseth, because it sucks away too much Chilus from the Liver. Therefore fitly did *Trajan* liken the Spleen to the Treasury, for as that groweth rich, the common people grow poor: So, as the Spleen encreaseth, the other parts decay.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of the Reins and Kidneys.*

**N**OW I come to a few words of the Reins and Kidneys, which are placed within the region of the Nutrites backward; and they are ordained to cleanse the blood from the watry superfluities: They have two passages; by the one is drawn the water from *Venakelis* by two Veins, which are called *Vene emulgentes*, the emulgent Veins, and by the other is sent the same water to the Bladder, and this is called *Poros Urithedes*.

The Kidneys are made of a hard substance, and full of hard concavities, and therefore the sores of them are hard to cure, they are harder in substance than any other fleshy member, and that for two causes; The first is, that they be not much hurt by the sharpness of the Urine. The other is, that the Urine that passeth from them, might be the better cleansed by them. The Heart sendeth an Artery to convey to them Blood, Heat, Spirit and Life. And from the Liver there comes a Vein, which bringeth nutrimental blood. Their fatness is as of the other members, made of thin blood congealed and crudded by cold; there is ordained the greater quantity in this place, because it should temper the heat of the Kidneys, which they have of the biting sharpness of the Urine.

The next thing that offereth it self to our consideration is the Bladder, which is compounded of two nervous panicles, in complexion it is cold and dry, whose neck is carnous, and hath two Muscles to withhold and to let go: in man it is long, and is contained with the yard passing through the *Peritozeum*; but in women it is shorter, & is contained with the *Vulva*, the place of the Bladder is between the share bone and *Longaon* (commonly called the Arse Gut.) In Women it is between the aforesaid bone and the Matrix. In the Bladder are implanted the Ureters, which bring the Urine or water from the Kidneys thither, and privily entreteth into the holes and pannicles thereof, which is done by a natural motion between Tunicle and Tunicle, till the Urine findeth the hole of the neither Tunicle, where it entreteth privily into the concavity. And the more the Bladder is filled with Urine, the streighter be the pannicles compressed together: The holes be not set one against the other, so that if the bladder be never so full, none can go back again.

This is the *Microscimical* Ocean, into which all the Rivers of the body discharge themselves. There must needs be more than a watry

substance in it : for many times in diseases, it is plentifully made, though the Patient drinketh little or nothing. And it is observed, That Creatures that Drink nothing will make water. Physicians oftentimes foretel many things by their colour, thinness, and thickness. Salt you know is hid in meats, and that Plants have very much Salt in them, you may find by distilling them. And it is very well known, that by the Chymical Art, many kinds of Salt may be fetched out of Urines. The artificial *Cryfocolla* is made of Urine. Nitre is made of Earth moistned with the Urine and Dung of living Creatures. The Urine hath a sympathetical relation to the constitution of the body. The *Arabians* say, amongst the rest *Abenzoar*, that a man that is bit with a mad Dogg, in his Urine the Picture of Dogs may be seen : but this is attributed to the force of the Venome, which changeth a mans constitution, and maketh it like to a Dogs. *Sennertius* himself saith, That it doth so much corrupt the humours, that little Creatures like Puppies are bred in the body. If we credit the Writings of wise, honest, and learned men (which not to do were uncharitable) we shall find, that Worms and many kinds of living Creatures have been bred in the Bladder. We read of a Woman that voided one, that way, a span long; and a Maid, many, as big as Woodlice. One voided one like a Magpye. Another who had the Stone in the Bladder, voided two with Horns, sharp head, back and belly, crusty, black, and like a Tortoise, onely their bellies were red. Another voided a living Scorpion, and another a shell-fish. The passage of the Urine from the Bladder, all know; yet sometimes men are known to make their Urine another way. The Son of one *Boimius* urined a little beneath the Glans. A Maid at the Hague of a Noble Family, made water at her Navel. One, by an Ulcer on his Buttock, and another by the Belly. For my own part, I have known two young men, who urined between the Testicles and the Fundament : read *Fernsius*, l. 6. c. 13. who affirms the same thing. I need not tell you that stones are bred in the urine of a fæculent matter, mingled with salt and stony juyce sometimes small, and sometimes great, of several shapes and forms : sometimes, like the Sea sand, sometimes like pebbles, sometimes like Salt, and sometimes they are found ragged and branching, lively and excellently resembling the stock and branches of Coral : few or none are ignorant of this. Thus have I, with as much brevity, as may be, described this *Microscopical* Ocean.



## C H A P. IX.

## Of the Generative Parts.

I Shall herein use as much brevity as may be, and shall write nothing but with a minde that is modest, and with such a mind I desire it may be read. The Instrument of Generation are of two sorts, Male and Female; their use is the Procreation of Mankind, the Operation is by Action and Passion, the Agent is the Seed, the Patient the Blood. Although this cometh to be spoken of in the last place, yet it might have deservedly been put in the first; for Nature regards not only the conservation of it self, but to beget its like, and conceive its Species. *Venus* hath the principal Government of the Members of Generation; in which Members there are many parts considerable, but I shall onely epitomize them.

First, Of the Genitals of Men; the first thing to be considered is, that which Anatomists call *Vasapreparantia*, or preparing Vessels, which bring Blood and vital Spirits to the Stones, they are four in number, and before they come to the Stones, they make a curious implication, intertexture or twisting the one with the other, the Arteries into the Veins, and the Veins into the Arteries, which Physicians call *Corpus varicosum*, some call it *Pampiniformis*: This interweaving reacheth down even into the substance of the Stones, their use is to mix the blood and vital spirit together, that so the Stones may have a fit matter to work on.

The Testicles or Stones are of a white, soft and spongy substance, full of small Veins and Arteries; or else, when humours flow to them, they could not swell to such a bigness: their form is Oval, of their bigness few are ignorant. Each Stone hath a muscle which the Learned call *Cremaster*, which serveth to pull up the Stones in the act of Generation, as its name in the Greek signifieth, that so the Vessels being slackned, may better avoid the Seed.

The Seed being thoroughly concocted by the Testicles or Stones, there are two other small Pipes called *Vasa deferentia*, they are also called *σπέρματος πόροι*, Spermatick pores; their office is to carry the Seed to the Seminary Vessels, who are to keep it till need requireth its expulsion. From the Stones they arise very near to the preparing Vessels into the cavity of the Belly, then turning back again, they turn to the backside of the Bladder between it and the right Gut, there they are joynd to the seminal Vessels, which are soft and spongy, somewhat like Kernels, through which passeth the *urethra*, or common passage in the Yard both for Seed and Urine.

Histories make mention, and Experience evidenceth, that some are born without Stones, some with one, *Philip, Landgrave of Haffza* had three, he was so full of seed and prone to Venerous actions, that his Wife could not suffer him so often as necessity urged him to it, he otherwise being chaste and honest; he relating his minde to the Priests, with the consent of his Wife took a Concubine.

It would be too tedious if I should take upon me to describe the Yard, and all the parts thereof, it would make my Book swell too big, and I should run beyond my first intention, viz. onely to give a brief touch of the most considerable parts.

I now come to the Generative parts of Women, and shall be silent in what is visible, and declare onely the internal parts for brevity sake, and first of the *Clytoris*, which is a sinewy and hard body, much like the Yard of a man, and suffers erection and falling, causeth lust in Women, and giveth delight in Copulation: *Avicenna* calleth it the Wand, or *Albathara*, and *Albucasis* calleth it *Tentigo*, and *Fallopius* saith, that this hath sometimes grown so big, that women would copulate with others like men. This observe, that the passage of the Urine is not through the neck of the Womb; near the passage of the Urine are four Caruncles or fleshy knobs, they are called *Myrtiformes*, because they resemble Myrtleberries; the uppermost of them is largest and forked, to receive the neck of the passage of the Urine: the other lie below this on the sides, and are to keep back the air, or any hurtful thing from the Womb. In Virgins these knobs are joyned together by a thin skin, interlaced with many small Veins, with a hole in the middle about the bigness of ones little finger, through which passeth the menstruous blood: this skin is a note of Virginity, for the first act of copulation breaketh it. I believe that this was that note of Virginity which God gave to the *Hebrews*: These knobs joyned together do much resemble a Rose not quite blown, therefore called a flower, thence came the word to Desflower a Virgin. If I should take upon me to declare the Opinions of Authors, it would prove (almost) an endless task; This I shall add, that I conceive it not a certain note of Virginity, because it may be broken without the act of Copulation; as namely, by applying Pessarics to provoke the Menstrues, or by a defluxion of sharp humors, &c. but 'tis probable that the Jewish Virgins were more chary of it, their reputations depending thereon.

The Womb in figure is almost perfectly round, in Virgins about the bigness of a Walnut, yet when a woman is conceived with Child, it dilates it self to such a capacity, that it is able to contain the Child; the mouth of it no bigger than to receive the Glans of the Yard, yet at the delivery makes room for the Child to come out be

it never lo  
mination o  
Creation o  
powerful  
overs the  
Zanini)  
a salubrit  
that Divi  
himself.  
But I  
ception is  
be close  
is the con  
this opini  
much from  
Women  
Mens in  
Men with  
less than  
Ligament  
skin, mo  
to the co  
But th  
viz. to co  
Hyperat  
Reason an  
The W  
carrying  
mes, the  
ving a th  
women:  
operation  
twisted ap  
because m

it never so big : This made *Galen* admire, and it may be a great admiration to all, if we consider the wonderful works of God in the Creation of Man : He who knows himself may know there is an All-powerful God ; and therefore it was ingraven with Letters of Gold over the Porch of the Temple of *Apollo*, the God ( according to the *Panims* ) of knowledge and wisdom ; this Sentence, *Know thy self*, as a salutation unto all, signifying, that he that would have access unto that Divinity, and entrance into that Temple, must first know himself.

But I return to my intended Discourse, The Womb before Conception is small, because the Seed being but little in quantity, might be close embraced and cherished ; it hath but one cavity, though it is the common approved Opinion, that it hath seven Cells, and of this opinion was *Galen* ; the truth is, the Matrix in Women differs much from Beasts, and *Galen* never saw a Woman Anatomized.

Women have Testicles or Stones as Men have, but they differ from Mens in these particulars, They are within the belly in Women, in Men without, they are not so smooth in women as in men, they are less than the Stones of Men, they are not staid by Muscles, but by Ligaments ; as mens are Oval they are flattish, they have but one skin, mens have four, because they are without the body, and exposed to the cold, they are more soft and colder than mens are.

But they are ordained both in men and women for the same use, viz. to concoct Seed, and though *Aristotle* denied seed in Women, yet *Hippocrates* one of the Ancients of Physick was of this Judgement, Reason and Experience confirmeth it.

The *Vasa preparantia*, the preparing Vessels, and *Vasa deferentia* carrying Vessels, are of the same nature and office as they are in men, they differ onely in this, that they are somewhat shorter, having a shorter way to go, the Testicles being within the belly in women : but lest the shortness of the passage should hinder their operation, God and Nature hath so provided, that they are more twisted and interweaved than they are in men, that they may the better mingle the blood and vital spirit, as you have heard before.



## CHAP. X.

## The Conclusion.

**T**HUS have I given you a brief Description of Man, the Master-piece of Gods Workmanship; I have only given you an Epitome or Breviary of him, who is a small draught of all things in the Universe; should any attempt a particular description of the Body and Faculties of Man, he would fall short of his expectations, it being an *Herculean* task for the most acute Genius: This I will add, not to say, that the World would not contain the Books that might be written of him, the Life of Man would be too short to perfect it. Not to recapitulate what I have formerly delivered: In Man, as in a perspective-Glass, may our Mother-Earth, with her innumerable Off-spring be discovered; in him may the unruly and restless Waves of the Ocean be delineated: Nor doth he onely epitomize the Elemental World, but also the Cœlestial; In him are discovered the prudent, majestic, sumptuous, magnificent, honourable, affable and humane *Solar quality*: The unstedfast, timorous, soon-daunted, oft-changing and shifting temper among men, answer to the various motions of the low and oft-changing *Luna*. Others in profundity of imagination, reservedness of words, austerity of actions, &c. are a fit portraict of the melancholy Planet *Saturn*. There are yet a few in the world who are faithful Lovers of fair-dealing, beneficent to all men, doing glorious, honourable and religious actions, just, wise, prudent, vertuous, &c. of the temper of benevolent *Jupiter*. There are (in our apprehensions) too many of the Martial temper, who are Valiant, Lovers of Wars, Frays and Commotions, subject to no reason, bold, confident, willingly obeying no body, &c. Nor is *Venus* excluded those peoples affections, who love mirth in words and actions, musical, delighting in Venery, drinking and merry-meetings, who trouble not themselves in State-affairs, nor are inquisitive after Armies or Navies, unless they bring good News from the *Canaries*. Nor is *Mercury* without his party among us, who are subtil and politick, excellent Disputants and Logicians, sharp-witted, and able to learn any thing, men of unwearied Fancies, and fit for any Employment, yet unconstant. The Planetary influence in the good or ill disposition of the Air, is lively represented in man: A healthy sanguine Constitution, or a delicate compofure of heat and moisture answer to a serene temperate Air, with seasonable moistning dews and showers which are the sweet influence of the *Sun*, *Jupiter* and *Venus*. The feverish, hot and parching distempers of the body

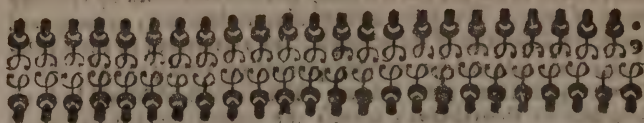
body, answer to the hot and scorching weather occasioned by the fiery beams of *Mars*. Nor is the cold, chilly, melancholy, weeping and lamenting disposition of many people, less represented by the melancholy, dark, cold and wet weather proceeding from *Saturn's* influx; I could much dilate, but I forbear. The intellectual World hath also in Man its Portraiture; witness the soaring Contemplations of the Soul of Man, which cannot (like the body) be confined to any place, but in a moment surrounds this terrestrial Globe, nor there content, but as soon mounts it self to the Heavens, and searcheth their secret corners; nor there satisfied till he comes to the highest, for by his Contemplations, (having his Original from the uncreated light) he reflects thither, viz. to the Divine Majesty: To conclude, God hath made all things in Man, he hath made all things for Man; for Mans sake he made himself Man, to redeem Man to himself; To whom be all Honour, Glory, and praise for ever.

---

*The End of the First Book.*

---

THE



# THE SECOND BOOK.

## CHAP. I.

### O F

# *The Nature of Physick, AND The Office of a Phisitian.*

**G**Od in his Power having created all things ; in his Wisdom, by Nature governeth and preserveth them : By her are the variable motions and revolutions of the Sun, Moon and Stars harmonically preserved ; in her hands are the mutations and Catastrophes of times ; she is the Moderatrix of the scourging Ocean. This immensity of things she governeth in a certain and immutable Order ; there is nothing in the Universe but yields obedience to this Law : what ever are contained in the Animal, Vegetable, or Mineral Kingdoms, are wisely governed, and providentially preserved by the Will of the Divine Architect in the Government of Nature.

But to steer our course nearer to our intention ; The little World or Body of Man, is subject to Natures Government, whose Deputy or Representative is Physick ; *Natura legibus esse medicine leges consentaneas* : The Laws of Physick are agreeable to the Laws of Nature ; Physick imitates Nature, its design is to preserve the body in health



health, defend it from infirmities, to strengthen and corroborate the weak, to raise the dejected ; in a word, to keep the Body in health and comfort till the approach of death, to whose yoke all must yield, whose Laws the greatest Monarchs, Kings and Princes cannot resist. To this one Law all people of every Country, Nation, Quality and Degree become obedient, as to a Law, most necessary, most excellent, sound, pure and just, being grounded upon, and drawn from the purest and most wholsom Fountains of Nature. It is not strict nor rigid, but mild and gentle ; it succoureth, refresheth and restoreth those that have languished by reason of tedious Diseases ; health of body is all the comfort a man hath in this troublesome and turbulent world : this is that which maketh humane actions to flourish, she is the most excellent Chamber-companion, she is the richest Treasure, for she is more precious than Gold, the best of all earthly goods : to say all, without it no earthly thing is a blessing.

Hence it cometh, that the Art of Physick hath gained a reverend esteem in all Ages, and the Physicians sometimes more than humane honour. *Asculapius* transported this Art from *Egypt* into *Greece* ; the *Grecians* ( thinking he could raise the dead ) honoured and worshipped him as a God, and his two Daughters as Goddesses. Indeed the difficulty of *Medicine* brings the more honour and dignity to a good Physician, which generally is thus described ; A good Physician ought to be a man learned, honest, gentle, diligent, he ought to trust in God, more than his own skill ; he ought to know what he should do, and be able to put it into practice, because the health and life of Mankind is committed into his hands : And, as he imitates *Christ* who cures the Soul, the Physician the Body, so he ought to imitate him in a holy and unblameable conservation : He ought to deny himself, and to be very tender of the poor ; He must not be ignorant in Divinity, well skilled in Anatomy, in the knowledge of Simples, and making up of compound Medicines : And ( saith *Galen* ) if he be ignorant of the Mathematicks, he is a Murderer :

*Hippocrates* in his Aphorisms describes a Physician thus ; He ought in discourse to be witty and solid, and so let him behave himself in reproving the errors of his Patient, and those that look to him ; let him not be fearful nor over-confident, but let him walk in the middle path, between fear and confidence : He should be near in body and minde, temperate in Diet, a hater of venereous and lascivious actions ; let every wise man beware of a drunken Physician, or any way viciously inclined. Let him not greedily desire honour, but what he honestly getteth by his Art ; let him not beg it of others, nor confer it upon himself ; let him be courteous and have a fellow-feeling of others miseries. Let him declare the event of a Disease so far as he knoweth

knoweth it, that so he may stir up the sick to obedience, and avoid the ignominy that may be cast upon the Art: yet let him so declare it, as not to afflict the minde with the Disease of the body. A good Physician is not envious at the success of another, nor will he detract from his due praise: he ought not to be dogged, currish, scurrilous, nor ridiculous, to be familiar with all, and speak no more than becometh him: let him use but few words, and those that are pertinent to the purpose, let gravity and love be read in his face. He ought to visit the sick as often as necessity requireth, and speak comfortably to him: Let no unseemly action nor uncivil word proceed from him; let him not forsake his Patient for any cause whatsoever. Let him consult with God in the beginning of all his Cures, and heartily give God thanks for the performance of them: Let him love godliness and honesty, and be an unblameable servant to God and Nature. These are the principal and chief Characters, by which every diseased man may make choice of his Physician, of whom I shall say with the Learned Fernelius; *Medicus remedium confert, non solum ut naturæ minister, sed interdum ut adiutor, interdum etiam ut opifex primarius*: A Physician doth cure, not onely as Natures servant, but sometimes as her helper, yea, sometimes as the chief workman. I shall not build my discourse Theorically but Practically; and having in the former Book briefly described the principal parts of Man, and the humane faculties and virtues thereon depending: I shall in this Book declare the Causes, Synptomēs and Cures of Diseases in those parts, which hinder them in the exercise of those humane faculties. I shall treat of each Disease simply and distinctly, and leave this Aphorism to the consideration of the Ingenious: *Simplex affectus, simpliciter remedio; compositus composito propellendus*; A simple Disease is removed by a simple Remedy; a compound Disease is expelled by compound Medicines.

## CHAP. II.

### Of Diseases of the Head.

**M**Any Diseases are incident to the Head of Man, I shall treat of them in order according to the places which they possesse, which I shall divide into three parts: First, the Membranes: Secondly, The substance of the Brain: Thirdly, The Nerves which nourish the Brain. The Membranes are the first Pannicle within the Skull, called *Dura Mater*, or without the Skull, called *Pericranium*, which are subject to these Diseases, viz. the Head-ach, the inveterate Head-ach, and

and avoid  
m to de-  
body. A  
or will be  
curely,  
no more  
that are  
face. He  
rest com-  
d proceed  
that over.  
res, and  
Let him  
God and  
oy which  
whom I  
ert, was  
etion at  
wars le-  
which work-  
tically;  
al parts of  
ding: I  
es of Dis-  
those hu-  
distin-  
us: Sim-  
; A lim-  
Disease is

## Chap. 2. Of the Diseases of the Head.

29

and the Megrim. In the substance of the Brain, which is the seat and instrument of the intellectual Faculties of the Soul, viz. Imagination, Judgment and Memory, are defects also, viz. the depravation of those faculties, as a Frensie, Melancholy, and Madness, sleepy Disease, Lethargie. The Ventricles of the Brain are subject to many Distempers, as Vertigo, Falling-Sickness, the Night-Mare, the Apoplexy, Palsie, Convulsion, Trembling and quaking, and Catarrhs.

### Of inveterate Head-ach, and the Megrim.

The inveterate Head-ach is called in Greek and Latine, *Cephalæa*; is a Disease of long continuance, very painful, and upon every light occasion invadeth the Patient with sharp Fits, that he cannot endure noise, nor light, but desireth to lie still in the dark; sometime this Disease is with continuance, and sometimes with intermission.

#### The Cause.

This Disease is caused through blood or other humors abounding, or by sharp humors or vapors within or without the Skull, inflaming the Head, sometimes weakness of the Head is the cause.

#### The Sign.

If fulness of humors be the cause of the Disease, then is the Head very heavy and lumpish: if the humours be sharp, the pain is felt with pricking and shooting, if there be Inflammation, the Head worketh like the Pulses: if wind be the peccant cause, there is found distention or stretching out without heaviness or beating; if two or more of these Symptomes appear together, judge accordingly. Note that if the pain be felt superficially, or outwardly, then is the *Pericranium* grieved; if it be felt within (which is known by the pain at the roots of the Eyes) then is the grief within the *Dura Mater*. *Hemicrania* or the Megrim differeth not from *Cephalæa*, saving that in the Megrim one half of the Head is afflicted, whereas in the other the whole Head by the foregoing Symptome, you may discover the humour offending.

#### The Cure.

As there are diversity of Causes, so there is of Cures; If the Disease be ingendred of plenitude of humors, and the whole Body appears



appear full, it is not amiss to begin the Cure with the evacuation of the whole Body, and if Age, Strength and the Season consent, open the Cephalick or Head-vein : If flegmatick and viscous humours be the cause, it is good to extenuate and make thin the humors thus ; Take of *Oxymel scilliticum*, and Syrup of *Stæchas*, of each half an Ounce, distilled water of Marjerom, Betony and Parsley, an Ounce, mix these, and make a Potion for the Morning. Or else make a Decoction in this manner : Take Mint, Calamint, Marjerom, Betony, Sage, of each half a handful, the Seeds of sweet Fennel, Annis, and Parsley, of each half an Ounce, the Roots of Asparagus, Fennel and Parsley, of each two Ounces, Pyony Root half an Ounce ; shread the Herbs, bruise the Seeds, slice the Roots, and take out the Pith, and boyl it in a quart of water till half be consumed, strein it, and add of Syrup of Betony compound, one Ounce, and *Oxymel simplex* as much, and make a Potion for three times ; take it, at Night two hours after a light Supper : The Body thus prepared, you may come to purge and evacuate the peccant humors ; Take half a dram of *Pill. Cochis* the greater, in the Morning, and keep the Chamber ; they which are most commendable are Pills of *Hiera* with *Agarick*, take half a Dram at Night two hours after a light Supper, take some warme Broath in the Morning, and keep the house, thus do for a week or longer : In like manner you may use *Pill. Alephangine*, and order your body as before, and remember that gross and clammy humors will not follow a sudden Purgation, and therefore often purging is used, that so they may be drawn out by little and little. Also Clysters are necessary, because they cleanse the Bowels, and pull back those humors and vapors which ascend and annoy the head : Take of Mallows, Pellitory of the Wall, Endive, Succory, Violet-leaves, Cammomel-flowers, of each one handful, sweet Fennel-seed half an Ounce, Linseed two Drams, boyl them in a quart of Spring-water, (or rather clear Posset-drink) till half be consumed, strein it out ; and to the Concoction add of the Pulp of Cassia Fistula one Ounce, Oyl of Rue half an Ounce, Benedictæ Laxativæ half an Ounce.

The Body being purged by discretion, it is not amiss for the Patient to make use of some Diet-drink that hath power to warm the Brain, to exsiccate and concoct crude humors, to attenuate the gross, cut that which is tough, and expel the thinnest, either by Urine or insensible transpiration.

You may make it thus ; Take of Guajacum, Saxafras, the Root of Sarsaparilla, of each two Ounces, English Liquoris and Cinnamon, of each one Ounce, Coriander-seed half an Ounce ; infuse them 24 hours in four quarts of Spring-water, the Vessel standing in hot Embers, and close covered, afterwards boyl it gently to the consump-

tion

tion of half, sweeten it with honey whilst it is hot; let the Patient drink half a Pint in the Morning, and dispose himself for sweat, and if he drink it for his ordinary drink 15 or 20 days more or less, as necessity requireth, it is the better; if the Patient become costive by the use of this Diet-drink, let him take a Clyster as often as need requireth, and once in seven days let him take some purging Medicine, that day omitting the Diet-drink.

This Bole taken in the Morning two hours before meat, is exceeding good to strengthen the Head after due evacuation of the peccant humours, viz. Conserve of Roses, and of Rosemary flowers, of each two scruples, of Venice Treacle the weight of both, with a little fine Sugar, make a Bole, and administer it as before.

Likewise may Gargarisms be made and used in manner following; Take the Root of Masterwort a dram, Long-Pepper and Nutmegs half a Dram, Mustard-seed one scruple, beat them to powder, and put them in a linnen cloth, and chew it half an hour, which will purge the head of gross and phlegmatick humors.

Sometimes it is convenient to use Sneezing-Powder, and you may make them in this sort: Take the leaves of Marjeron, Rosemary, and Betony dried, two scruples, white Hellebore, Cloves, Nutmegs, Cubebs, of each half a scruple, beat them into fine powder, and by the help of a Quill provoke sneezing.

Also a Quilt to corroborate and strengthen the Brain, may be thus made: Take of Wood-Betony dried one Ounce, the Flowers of Rosemary and Storchas a dram, red Rose-leaves two Drams, Frankincense, Mastick, Benzoin, Mace and Cloves, of each half a Dram, beat them to powder, and quilt it in silk or linnen, and apply it warm.

I might here teach you to make Plaisters to corroborate the Brain, to attract or resolve the humors, but I forbear here for brevities sake, and refer you to its proper place, where I shall treat of the making of Plaisters, and their uses.

If the Distemper hath its Original from Cholerick humors, let him use Meats and Drinks that are naturally cold and moist; it is convenient that the humors be prepared, quenched and concocted, for which purpose you may use this Medicine following; Syrup of Violets one Ounce, of Water-Lillies half an Ounce, distilled Waters of Endive, Succory and Lettuce, of each one Ounce, mix them, and drink it in the Morning fasting: the humors thus concocted and made mild and obedient unto Nature, may the better be removed by purging Medicines; to which purpose, take fine Rubarb two Drams, Spicknard one scruple, cut small and infused in the distilled Water of Endive, Succory and Bugloss, of each one Ounce, for the space of

of twelve hours, dissolve therein a Dram of the Eleſtuary of the juyce of Roſes, and make a purging Potion. Pills of Rubarb and Alephangina may be ſafely uſed in this Caſe, the Doſe is a ſcruple or half a Dram, taken at night going to bed; *Pill. Auræ* or golden Pills taken half a Dram in the Morning, purge cholerick and other offenſive humors from the head.

Clyſters in this caſe profit much; Take of the Decoction for a Clyſter before deſcribed, add one Ounce of Caſſia Fiſtula, *Hiera Picra* half an Ounce, Oyl of Roſes one Ounce, Salt half a Dram, mix them and make a Clyſter.

After purging of the cholerick Humor, it is convenient to cool and ſtrengthen the Head by outward Medicines, Oyl of Roſes, and Oyl of Camomel mixed with a little White-wine-Vinegar, is good to anoint the Head; but if there need greater cooling, you may add to the Oyls juyce of Houſleek, Purſlane, Nightshade or Sorrel: If the ſick cannot ſleep, anoint the Fore-head with Oyl of Water-Lilies and Poppy.

If the ſymptomes declare wind to be the cauſe, let the Patient eſchew all Meats that do breed windineſs, empty the Belly with Clyſters; that are made of ſuch things as doe naturally diſſolve windineſs, *viz.* the Seeds of Annife, ſweet Fennel, Caraway and Cummin, of each one Ounce, boyl them in a quart of Poſſet-drink till half be waſted, ſtrain it, and add to the Liquor Catholicon and Diaphænicon, of each half an ounce: This Clyſter doth not onely purge the Inteſtines and thoſe parts about the Liver, but alſo pulleth back thoſe vapors which aſcend to the head.

To the outside of the Head may be applied repulſive Medicines, as Vinegar, Wormwood, Melilot, Mints, Pomegranate-rinds, Shepherds-pouch, Purſlane, Lawrel, Nutmegs, &c. After a moderate uſe of theſe, add Medicines that have power to mitigate, conecſt and digeſt, as Camomel, Linſeed, Fenugreek, Saffron, Yelks of Eggs, Hens greaſe and Goole-greaſe. Laſtly, Apply Medicines that have power to diſcuſs, *viz.* Meal of Lupines and Barley, Lilly-roots, Nigella, Oyls of Dill and Rew.



## CHAP. III.

## Of the Frensie.

**T**HE Frensie is an inflammation of the Brain and Membranes thereof, caused by the abundance of blood or choler occupying those parts: it differeth from madness in this, that a Feaver is joyned to the Frensie: Some that are thus grieved, do err much in imagination; others are acute in imagination, but want judgment to regulate their cogitations: and some are deprived of memory.

*Symptoms and Signs.*

They who are thus grieved, are in a continual Feaver, are mad, and cannot sleep: Sometimes they sleep, and are much troubled therein. They often rub their eyes, which are red, and sometimes dry, sometimes afflicted with a hot Rheume. The tongue is rough, sometimes they bleed at Nose; they snatch and catch at the bed-clothes: their Pulse is weak and hard, like the motion of a sinew: they breath seldome: If choler be the cause of the Phrensie, they rage very furiously, and can scarcely be ruled: if blood be the cause, they sometimes laugh, and rejoyce: This disease (according to the opinion of the wisest Physicians) for the most part is deadly and incurable.

*The Cure.*

From the Cure of this Distemper, the blood or choler afflicting the Brain must be discussed, pulled back, repelled and evacuated, so that the distemper of the Head be removed, the strength of the head and the whole body be reserved. It is convenient, as soon as the Disease is discovered, to open a Vein, having first administered a Clyster, thus made: Take of the Leaves of Violets, Mallows, Endive, Beets and Lettuce, of each one handful, of the root of Marsh-Mallows an ounce, of the flowers of Water-Lillies, and the tops of Dill, of each half a handful, let them be boiled in a sufficient quantity of Barley-water; then strained out to a pint of this decoction, dissolve Cassia newly drawn, Syrup of Violets, Disprunum Lenitive, of each half an ounce; brown Sugar one ounce, and make a Clyster.

You must, soon after the Patient hath had a stool, open the Cephalick; or Head-Vein; but if blood do abound, open the Basilick or Liver-Vein, or the middle Vein first, and after a while breathe the

**Cephalick Vein.** If you find that suppression of Menstrues, or the Hemorrhoids hath been the cause of the Distemper; you may first open the Vein under the Ankle called Saphæna, and afterwards open the Cephalick Vein. If the age and strength of the Patient forbid not, you must bleed him often in the Cephalick Vein; if the body be weak, open the Vein under the Ankle: be sure not to draw too much blood at once, lest the sick faint. If you fear blood-letting, by reason of age, want of strength, or a bad season, use cupping with scarification behind the neck upon the back bone.

It is good also to use Frictions and ligatures upon the Legs, and to draw blisters upon the Arms and Shoulders.

After Phlebotomy, you must apply Medicines that do cool the Brain, and repel and hinder the humors from ascending to the head: as Oyl of Roses two ounces, Rose-Vinegar one ounce, the water of Plantane and Lettuce, of each two ounces, with the whites of two Eggs, mingle them together, and apply it to the fore-head with a double cloath. If that prove not efficacious, take Oyl of Mandrakes, Roses, Violets, and water-Lillies, of each two drachms; the juyce of Lettuce and Purslane, of each an ounce, the whites of two eggs, mingle and apply it.

But here let me advise people to be very wary and careful in the applying of these Medicines; by no means apply cooling Medicines in the extremity of the fit; not refrigerate and stupify the Brain too suddenly, lest by overmuch cooling, you turn the Frensie into a Lethargy, and make your Patient sleep his last. Likewise consider from the Symptomes of the Disease, to what part of the head to apply your Medicine, having consideration to the age of your Patient, and season of the year; your wit will inform you, whether you are best to apply it warm or cold. If you find the inflammation extend it self to the skin and exterior parts, use no repelling Medicines, for fear you drive the distemper to the Brain.

It is convenient likewise to refrigerate the interior parts thus; Take of the Syrup of Violets, Erratick Poppies, and Pomegranates, of each four drachms: the distilled waters of Plantane, Lettuce, Poppy, and Purslane, of each two ounces, mix them, and make a Julep, for three dozes. This Electuary is good in this case: Conserve of Roses and Violets of each one ounce; the Conserve of Clove-Gilliflowers, and Water-Lillies, of each half an ounce; Diamargariton stigidum, half a drachm, with Syrup of Violets: make it into an Electuary, give the sick the quantity of a Nutmeg, once in an hour, two, or three, as necessity shall require.

Having thus prepared the humors, you may evacuate them by Purgations; but it is convenient to use the most gentle purgers; you

may safely  
somewhat  
purge. O  
half a p  
twelve hou  
drachms o  
Bailey-w  
mores or B  
Frensie, l  
viti.

much out  
without a  
teale is c  
the Brain  
distemper  
the Head  
watching  
from the ab  
Objects of  
proceed  
vent M  
tion, and b  
and harder

There is  
pying the  
blood is gen  
by. Some  
blood is in  
frictions, a  
thereof. I  
in a comm  
imagination  
perfected the  
Company f  
and to make

may ſafely adminiſter an ounce of Catholicon in the evening ; drink ſomewhat warm in the morning ; it is a fine cooling and gentle purge. Or you may make a decoction of ſome cooling Herbs, and in half a pint of the liquor warm, infuſe therein a drachm of Rubarb twelve hours ; diſſolve therein half an ounce of Catholicon, and two drachms of Syrup of Roſes, and make a potion. Let him drink be Barley-water, and mingle with it the Syrup of Pomegranates, Lemons or Barberies. By this you may know how to cure not onely Frenſies, but all ravings and watchings which are ingendred by Fevers.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of Madneſs.

THE Latins call this Diſeaſe *Inſania* and *Furor*, and the Greeks *Mania*, we call it Madneſs. In this diſtemper the body is much out of order, and the Spirits much diſquieted : It cometh without a Fever, and therein it differeth from the Frenſie. This Diſeaſe is cauſed, ſometimes of the abundance of blood flowing up to the Brain : Sometimes of hot and cholerick humours, or of a hot diſtemper of the Brain. The Symptomes of Madneſs, are weakneſs of the Head, tickling of the Ears, and ſhinings before their Eyes, watchings, ſtrange thoughts, and ravenous appetite : If it proceed from the abundance of blood, there followeth continual laughing ; Objects of laughter evermore appearing before the Eyes. When it proceedeth from both blood and choler, it cauſeth a dawning and fervent Motion in the Brain, which maketh the ſick iriſh, full of motion, and bold. But if the choler wax groſs, the ſick is more mad, and harder to cure.

There is another ſort of Madneſs cauſed by Melancholy ; occupying the mind, and changing the temperature of it : Sometimes the blood is generally corrupted by melancholy, & the brain hurt thereby. Sometimes melancholy blood aſcendeth to the Brain, when the blood is not generally corrupted. Sometimes inflammations, obſtructions, and evil effects of the Stomach and Spleen may be the cauſe thereof. There are many Signs of this Diſtemper ; they which are moſt common are theſe, fearfulneſs, ſadneſs, hatred, and very ſtrange imaginations : ſome have fancied themſelves Beaſts, and have counterfeited the voice of Beaſts. others, Earthen-pots, and have fled from Company for fear of being broken : Sometimes they deſire death, and to make away themſelves ; ſometimes they much dread death.



Some think themselves inspired with the holy Spirit, and do Prophesie; others fancy themselves great Philosophers. If the blood be generally corrupted, the body is lean, pale and rough, and generally melancholy. They, whose Distemper arise from defects of the stomach or spleen, have burnings, grievous inflammations, and plucking of the sides, are subject to be costive, troubled with wind summing to the head, causing lightness and troublesome dreams.

For the Cure, if blood abound (after the administering of a Clyster) you must come to blood-letting: You may open the Cephalick, but if that appear not, then the middle Vein: draw as much blood as the strength of the Patient will bear; you may, as you find occasion, open the vein in the forehead, if it appear: if the sick be a woman, open the vein under the Ankle, you may also bleed the Hemorrhoid-veins. I beseech you, not only here, but in all other distempers, to be very careful, and sparing of your Patients blood; draw not too much at a time, lest you weaken nature too much: in this case it is best often to bleed, and in the mean time keep the body soluble, either by Clysters, make as the former Chapter will direct you, or other convenient purges, viz. Take black Hellebore sliced small, one ounce; infuse it three dayes in a quarter of a pint of Rain-water: then boil it gently to the consumption of the third part (keeping it close covered) strain it out, and add to the liquor two ounces of clarified honey; let the sick drink half an ounce (in the morning) in a little broth or posset-drink, for several dayes together: increase or decrease the dose, according to the strength or debility of your Patient. Or take of the extract of black Hellebore half a scruple, Syrup of Violets, one ounce; mix it for one dose.

If the Body require a stronger purgation; Take of *Diagridium*, and *Lapis Lazuli*, of each half a drachm; *Turbith*, one drachm; *Seana*, half an ounce; *Epithimum*, *Cremo-tartar*, of each two drachms: of *Cinamon*, add *Citron-pills*, of each one scruple; *Saffron*, half a scruple; Let them be finely pulverized, the dose is a drachm or four scruples administered in broth, or some other convenient Liquor. These are convenient Medicines, which purge both choler and melancholly. You may purge with *Confectio Hamech*, *Diasena*, *Pillulæ Indæ*, *Pill. Lapid. Lazuli*; the dose must be regulated according to your Patients condition, strength, and age. Before you come to purging, make use of altering or preparing Medicines; Take of the flowers of *Borage*, *Bugloss*, and *Violets*, of *Harts-tongue*, *Fumitory*, and *Tamarisk*, of each one handful; *Raisins of the Sun* stoned, one ounce: bark of the root of *Capers*, three drachms; roots of *Fennel*, *Parfly*, *Licorish*, of each a drachm: boyl them all gently in three pints of water, till one be consumed, strain them out,

and

and clarify the liquor with white of eggs; add to the same of the Syrups of Fumitory, Epithimum, and apples magisterial of each one ounce: Take half a pint in the morning; use this, or medicines of this nature, three or four dayes; twice in the week purge gently: twice in a month administer a strong purge, ever remember in the mean time to use Phlebotomy, as necessity requireth; forget not to empty the body by Clysters, if there be occasion: The night after you have let your Patient blood, be sure you administer such things as have power to procure sleep, which you may do thus: Take of Conserve of Roses, Violets and Bugloss-flowers, of each half an ounce: the conserve of the young tops of Tamarisk and Clove-Gill-flowers; of the stalk of Lettuce, and Citron-rindes preserved, of each four drachms, Mirabolans and Emblicks, of each one: *Confectio Alchermes* and *de Hyacintho*, of each two drachms, Coral and Pearls prepared, of each two scruples, *pil. Diamargariton frigidum*, and *Leticians*, half a drachm, mix them well in a marble or glass Mortar, adding one ounce of Syrup of sweet-scented Apples: The dose is the quantity of a Wall-nut, drink after it a little of some convenient Julep or decoction. You must likewise apply repelling and discussing Medicines to the head; the Chapter of the Frensie will furnish you with such Medicines. But if the Cholerick and Melancholly humors in the Brain are gross and hard to be removed, prepare a fomentation in this manner. Take a sufficient quantity of Cephalick herbs, viz. Betony, Penny-royal, Rosemary, Lettuce, Plantane, Willow-leaves, Housleek, Strawberry-leaves, Violet-leaves, Fumitory, Water-Lillies (or their Flowers) Stæchas, Poppys, boil them in a sufficient quantity of Fountain-water: then take of Bay-berries, and the root of black Hellebore, a sufficient quantity, grossly bruise them, and sew them (with some of the softest of the Herbs) into a long bagg, boyl the bagg a little in the aforesaid decoction; bathe the head (being shaved) with the decoction an hour, as hot as may well be endured, with double clothes: then bind the bag to the crown of the head with hot clothes, let the Patient lie in his bed and sleep if he can; this will wonderfully expel the humours through the Emunctories of the head, for it wonderfully discuteth the fuliginous matter gathered in the head, which other Remedies can scarcely perform. This you may do for nine dayes together if you see occasion; but be sure to keep the head warm afterward. If you find that obstruction or inflammation of the Spleen, or defects of the Stomach be the cause of the Distemper, you must administer inward and outward Medicines to open the obstruction, and allay the inflammation; for such Medicines, I refer you to those Chapters, where I shall treat of the Distempers of those parts.

## C H A P. V.

## Of the Apoplexy, Lethargy, and Sleepy-disease.

**T**He Apoplexy is a depriving of sense and motion throughout the whole body, coming suddenly without let or hurt of all voluntary function.

## Causes.

It is caused of humours cold, gross and tough, which fill up and obstruct the Ventricles of the Brain; which are engendered by overmuch crudities: Drunkenness is oftentimes the cause: Sometimes a blow or fall causing humours to flow thither is the cause: Sometimes of a gross melancholly humour; Or, the excrements and humidity of the Brain, are congealed and thickned by the coldness of the Air.

## Signs.

The Symptoms or fore-runners of this Disease are violent and sharp pains of the Head, the Vertigo, the swelling of the Veins of the neck, a slowness to move, the extreme parts of the body, cold. When the disease cometh to its height, the breathing is so diminished, that it cannot be perceived, and that is a very evil sign; or else it is holden a while, and then fetcht with great violence: so much the more it differeth from the natural course, so much stronger is the Disease. Hippocrates in his Aphorismes saith, that it is impossible to cure a strong Apoplexy, and not easie to cure a weak one.

The Lethargy is likewise an inextinguishable desire of sleeping, and sluggishness; Its name in the Greek is *Λύθη Ἀγνῆς*: *Λύθη* signifies forgetfulness, and *Ἀγνῆς* dull, viz. dull oblivion. The cause is the same with the former in quality: they differ only in this, that the Lethargy is accompanied with a Fever and raving: the Pulse is great and striketh seldom, and as if they were full of water: they fetch their breath weakly, always sleepy, and can scarcely be compelled to awake. If you call them very loud, they will sometimes open their eyes, but soon shut them again: they gasp and gape, and sometimes forget to shut their mouths, &c.

Coma is a profound sleep, from which if he be roused, he will answer to any Question, but soon fall asleep again: sometimes the sick watcheth much, yet cannot hold open his eyes, but is very desirous to sleep.

Carus is also a sleepy disease, and differeth from the rest; it differeth from



from *Coma*, and the *Lethargy*, because they that have *Coma* lie in a dead sleep, call them, pull them, and prick them, they will not answer. Again, for the most part a violent Feaver goeth before *Coma*; in the *Lethargy* it followeth; it differeth from the *Apoplexy*, in it the breath is very streight, that the sick can hardly breath at all, but in *Coma* the sick hath its breath at liberty.

The Cure.

They who are afflicted with either of these Diseases, are in much danger, and have need of the speedy help of an able Physician, who must without delay use his best endeavours. First, let him endeavour to awake his Patient out of his dead sleep, by presenting forcible objects to every sense: Let him place him so, That the Sun-beams, or some clear light, may shine upon his face. Let him fill his ears with noise, clamours, and sounds, and call him by his name with a loud voice; put up into his nose things that are sharp, as Rue, Castoreum, and Vinegar: do the like to his mouth. Likewise you must provoke the sense of feeling by Frictions, pulling of the hair, and folding of the fingers, and all other parts, binding, &c. You must provoke the body to stool by sharp Clysters, thus; Take of Sage, Betony, Rue, Centaury, of each one handful; Camomile, Calamint, and Penny-royal, of each half a handful: the seeds of Cummin, sweet Fennel, and Dill, of each three drachms: the roots of Polypody, six drachms: Agarick, three drachms: pulp of Coliquintida, one drachm: boyl them in a convenient quantity of water, until half be consumed; to a pint of the decoction, add the oyls of Lillies and Rue, of each half an ounce: Hier: Picra, Benedicta Laxativa, and Diaphenicon of each half an ounce; Honey of Roses, an ounce, Salt a drachm: mix them and make a Clyster. If your Patient be young, strong, and full of hot humours and blood, you must soon after the operation of the Clyster, open a Vein in one Arm, let him not bleed too much at once, lest his strength fail; in a few hours space open a vein in the other Arm: so by that means the disease will be the more abated, and the strength the more preserved. After the first vein opened, if you perceive his countenance more lively, his pulse beat more orderly, and his breath fetcht with more ease, it is a good sign, and a good encouragement to open another Vein: make the Orifice wide, or else the grossest blood will lie behind. Where you see the body abound with blood, draw blood liberally: if not, draw blood sparingly.

After letting blood, if you see hopes of your Patients recovery, within a few hours, you must administer some purgation, the time of the day matters not: one ounce of Elect. Diacathammum, half a scruple of Castor, dissolved in Betony water: you may in this case make use of Pillule Cochix the greater or the less: or Pillule de Agari-

co, (pills of Agarick.) But in the *Lethargy* (by reason it is accompanied with a *Feaver*) you ought to administer more gentle purgations, as *Pillule Hiera cum Agarico*, (I shall lay down some general Rules for purging, in the next Book,) which serve to divert the humours, flowing to the Head. But the humours there fixed, must be purged with *Scammony* one Scruple; *Castor*, two scruples, administered in *Oximel*, which hath been proved with good success.

If hitherto your Medicines prove unsuccessful, you must venture to administer stronger, not fearing the danger or strength of your Medicine, seeing without it, nothing can be expected. You may use such Medicines as are extracted out of the *Antimony*, or those less violent, as is the infusion of *Crocus Metallorum*; or two drachms of the Tincture of *Tobacco*, extracted with the Spirit of Wine, doth powerfully evacuate upwards and downwards, both cholerick and flegmatick humours, and cleanseth not onely the Stomach and Bowels, but the Brain also.

Also Frictions and Ligatures on the extreme parts are necessary, that the vapours do not ascend to the Head. You may fasten Cupping-glasses to the Shoulders, Arms, and Thighs with scarification, if you have not let your Patient blood, otherwise without forget not the often administration of Clysters, or instead thereof, you may use Suppositories, made thus. Take two ounces of Honey boiled to a due thickness, of *Hiera Picra*, two drachms; *Coloquintida*, *Agarick*, and *Scammony*, of each two scruples: *Sal gemme*, one drachm: make them into fine powder, and mix them with Honey, and make Suppositories as long as you think good.

You may apply things to their Noses, which have property to awaken them, as *Vinegar*, *Castoreum*, *Galsbanum*, *Sulphur*, *Goats-horn* or *harts-horn* burnt, and holden to the Nose: A fumé made with white *Amber*, is of excellent virtue in the *Apoplexy*; You must pull them by the hair, and prick their Legs, or rub them with Salt and Vinegar: You must annoint the Palate of the Mouth with strong and sharp Medicines, as *Methridate*, *Mustard*, Powder of *Masterwort*; and rub the bottoms of the Feet with Salt and Vinegar, and the Palms of the Hands with the Oyls of *Rue*, and *Castor*. If the disease be of long continuance, provoke sneezing, with those Powders prescribed in the second Chapter: to which you may add *Rue* and *Castor*.

You may apply resolving Medicines, but first you must make them thus. Take the leaves of *Betony*, *Sage*, and *Rosemary*, of each one handful; the tops of *Lavender*, and *Marjerom*, *Rue*, and *Savoury*, of each a handful; the root of *Angelica*, *Masterwort*, and *Setwall*, of each one ounce; *Bayberries*, and *Juniper-berries*, of each half an ounce; boyl them in a sufficient quantity of *Vinegar*, and with

## Chap 5. Of the Apoplexy, Letbargy, &c.

47

a Sponge or cloath dipped in the decoction, bathe the head of the sick.

If the Disease yield not to these Medicines, you may fasten Cupping-glasses to the upper part of the Neck, about the first or second Joynt: Some use to draw Blisters there, and with good success.

Many precious Medicines, against this disorder, have been left to posterity; I shall (omitting many) insert this one, viz. Take of the root of Peony, and melleto of the Oak, of each two ounces; Calamus Aromaticus, Galanga, Cyperus, of each one ounce; of Betony, Sage, Marjerom, of each one handful; the seeds of Peony, Annis, Fennel, and Caraway, of each three drachms; the flowers of Lavender, Stoechas, and Rosemary, of each half an handful; of Nutmegs, Mace, Cubebs, Cloves, Grains of Parædice, of each half an ounce; Cinnamon, two ounces: Saffron, half a drachm: of Species Diambæ, and Diamoshi, of each two drachms. Let all these ingredients be shred and bruised, and put into a glass Limbeck; pour on them of the best rectified Spirit of Wine, enough to cover them, the breadth of three fingers; digest them in Bathe eight dayes, afterward distill it, and upon occasion administer a drachm, or half a drachm, in some other convenient liquor. In like manner may the Spirit of Castor be administered in Oximel, and 'tis a good Medicine against these Disorders. Moreover, be very careful that you well understand the nature of the humor offending, as if blood offend, use not too many refrigerating Medicines, and bleed the more: I need say no more, *Verbum sapientibus, &c.* If after so many Evacuations, the Brain become too cold, and much weakened, you may strengthen it with Lozenges made thus, or after this manner; Take of the distilled oyls of Annis, Cinnamon, and Nutmegs, of each three drops: oyl of Cloves, one drop: Amber-grease, half a scruple: with four uncies of Sugar, dissolved in Betony water, make Lozenges, take a drachm in a morning. Likewise you may make Pills to strengthen the Head in this manner: Take of the Species Cordiales temperate, and Aromaticum Resatum, of each two drachms: Mastick, Nutmegs, and Cloves, of each one scruple; Amber-grease, half a scruple, and Musk three grains; make it into a mass for Pills with the juyce of Marjerom, and take a scruple to bedward, once or twice a week: or you may take half a drachm of the powder, called *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, night or morning. If any fear the return of this Disease again after cure: or any (by the foregoing Symptoms) fear its growth upon them: let them carefully consider the humour offending: if blood abound, lessen it by opening a vein; if Choler, flegm, or melancholy, by purgation; How you may know which humour offendeth, or by what it may be purged, this Treatise (if you have any ingenuity) will inform you.

CHAP.



## CHAP. VI.

## Of the Vertigo, and Falling-sickness.

**T**He *Vertigo* is a Disease which maketh a man think every thing turneth round, and suddenly his sight faileth him, all things appear misty and dark. This disease is caused through inordinate moving of windy vapours, and Spirits contained in the Brain, or in the mouth of the Stomach offending the Brain.

*The Sign.*

Those that are thus troubled, a darkness and mist appears before their eyes upon every light occasion, especially if they turn about. It astonisheth him to see a man, a wheel, or any thing, turn round. When it is accompanied with sound and noise in the ears, and vehement pain in the head, with much heaviness, the deprivation or debility of any of the senses, these are infallible testimonies, that the cause of the distemper lieth in the Brain; then is that fit worst, when the head is heat by the Sun, or any other means. A gnawing of the stomach, or a disposition to vomit precede the fit, then the Disease proceedeth from the mouth of the Stomach. This Disease is oftentimes a Prodromus or forerunner of the *Epilepsie* or Falling-sickness, and sometimes of the *Apoplexie*.

The *Epilepsie* is a Writhing, Cramp, and Convulsion of all the parts of the Body; it attacheth and much hurteth the sense and roind. Sometimes it is caused through gross and clammy flegm or choler, stopping the passage of the Ventracles of the Brain: and sometimes from the mouth of the Stomach, as in the *Vertigo*. There goeth before this Disease an evil state of the body and mind, sadness, forgetfulness, troublesome dreams, ach of the Head, and continual fulness of the same, paleness of the Face, and inordinate moving of the Tongue.

*The Sign.*

They who are afflicted with this Disease fall down, are plucked up together, they tremble and turn about, snort, cry out, beat themselves, and foam at the Mouth.

*The Cure.*

It is good for those that are thus afflicted, to eschew all meats of a  
hard

hard digesture, and such as afford a crude nourishment, or breed fumes; observe the same in all Diseases of the Head. In the beginning of the Cure, make the body soluble by Clysters if need be. If plenitude appear, and the sick be of a sanguine complexion, begin the Cure with blood-letting: otherwise observe the same order before prescribed in the *Cephalæa*, or Head-ach, proceeding of gross and phlegmatick humors; this remembring, to add to the Medicines there prescribed, the roots and leeds of Peony, and Mistletoe of the Oak, which have a notable faculty in the Cure of the Falling-sickness, as experience teacheth. Make use of the sudorifick drink there prescribed, thirty or forty days, adding to every dose, three or four drops of Vitriol; You must purge the Sick with *Pillule Cochææ*, *Pillule cum Agarico*, or such as purge flegm, but remember to regulate your Purges according to the strength of the sick; and to prepare the Body with Medicines, which do attenuate and cut gross and thick humors: as be the Syrups of Wormwood, Hyssop, Stœchas, or Oxy-mel scilliticum: or with the decoction of Hyssop, the roots of Peony or such like. Sibium is of great force, and doth mightily purge the superfluous humors of the Head; you must use it thus, Take 12 grains, and make it into fine powder; put it into four ounces of Wine, and there let it remain 24 hours, shaking it every three or four hours; then pour off the Wine, leaving the powder, and drink it with a little Sugar: let none use this Medicine, but such as have strong Bodies, and be first well advised by a skilful Physician. The Syrup of Tobacco, mentioned by *Quercitanus* in his *Pharmacopeia*, is of great force and vertue against this Disease; but before you make use thereof, be well advised, as I said before. After the Body hath been diligently and carefully purged, it is meet you make use of this, or such like Medicines, viz. Take of the flowers of Betony, Rosemary, Peony and Bugloss, of each one ounce; the root of Eriango, and the rind of Citrons preserved, of each two drachms; powder of Saxafraz, one ounce; of the seed of Peony, and Mistletoe of the Oak gathered the Moon decreasing, Elks claws, of each half a drachm: of the Skull of a man not buried calcined, half a drachm: of Coral, Pearls, and Harts-horn prepared, of each four scruples; of Bezoar, one scruple: *Diamosh. dulcis*, four scruples; *Theriaca Andromachi*, and *Confectio de Hyacintho*, of each four scruples; of Vitriol 20 drops, with as much Syrup, Citron Pills, and Oxy-mel, as is sufficient to make a liquid Electuary or Opiat, of which take three or four times in a day the quantity of a Filberd. *Emplastrum Epispasticum*, and such as have power to draw blisters and Causticks, may with good success be applyed to the hinder part of the Head and Neck.

*Fabius Columnus* extollet the root of Valerian to the Skies, for the cure of this Disease; a drachm in powder administred in Wine, or other convenient liquor, is a sufficient Dose. Of no less esteem is this Chymical Medicine following; Spirit of Vitriol, one scruple; Spirit of Tartar, one drachm: Treacle water camphorated, one drachm and an half: mix them, and in a glass well sealed, digest them a Moneth; the Dose is one drachm, taken with some convenient liquor.

If a Child have this Disease, you must make use of Medicines suitable to the age and strength of the Child: If it suck, let the Nurse use a moderate diet, and eat such meats as afford good nourishment: By Clyster or Suppository, make the Child soluble. Take one ounce of fine Sugar, of Peony root, and Mistle of the Oak, of each half a drachm: with as much Oyl of sweet Almonds as is sufficient to make a Lohoch, and let the Child lick often thereof.

*Riverius* commendeth this Epileptick powder, by him called *Pyl-via de gutteta*. Take the root and seed of Peony, the root of white Dittany, Mistle of the Oak, of each half an ounce: the seed of Arach, two drachms: of mans Skull, three drachms: red Coral prepared, of Hyacinth or Jacinth, of each half a drachm, of Elks claws prepared, half an ounce: Musk, one scruple; leaf-gold, one drachm; mix them, and make them into very fine powder: of which administer from half a scruple to a scruple; in milk, broth, or some Antepileptical water, as the compound water of Peony, &c. Anoint the Head of the Child with oyls of Dill and Marjerom: apply Medicines to the Head, that have power to discuss the peccant humours, and to corroborate the Brain: Anoint the Back-bone, and those members which are contracted and drawn together, with this following Liniment. Take of the Oyls of Rue, and Earth-worms of each two ounces: the Oyl of Castor, a drachm; with a little *Aqua vite* make a Liniment. Or, take of Venice-Treacle one drachm; *Confectio Alchermes*, and *de Hyacintho*, of each a scruple; the waters of Betony, Sage, Marjerom, and Cinnamon of each half an ounce; mix them all, and bathe the Nose, Temples and Ears; and you may give the Child half an ounce to take inwardly. You may purge the Child twice in the Moneth with Manna, Syrups of Roses & Rubarb; and every change of the Moon, take a dose of the powder before mentioned, and oftner if need require.

To conclude, if the Disease be caused by some evil effects in the mouth of the Stomach; you must labour to free the Stomach from the humors that offend.

For the Cure of the Vertigo, I shall say nothing, but refer you to those Medicines propounded for the Cure of the Falling-Sickness; and

Chap. 7.  
and to the Se  
from cold, c  
only to epic

*P* *drals* *gi*  
part th  
motion, ex  
that the F  
its proper  
finery, the  
nis, that it  
hend to all  
their motion

The Pa  
which stop  
come from  
by veheme  
Back-bone  
by some wo

There n  
ha h been  
much part h  
tune; the  
dangerous  
the sound  
much. L  
are forget  
then in a l  
must apply  
difficult; f  
of cold and  
Medicines;



and to the Second Chapter, viz. Of the Cure of Cephalaa, proceeding from cold, crude and phlegmatick humors; it being my present task only to epitomize, not to write largely of the cure of Diseases.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of the Palsie.

**P**aralysis, or the Palsie, is a Disease wherein the whole Body, or part thereof (as Arm, Hand, Leg or Tongue,) doth lose sense or motion, or both: Sometimes it followeth the Apoplexy. Here note, that the Faculty of sense and motion floweth from the Brain, as from its proper fountain, and is conveyed to all parts of the Body by the sinews, the proper Organs of sense and motion. Hence it cometh to pass, that if the faculty of the Brain be obstructed that it cannot descend to all parts, that all or some of the parts of the Body, lose either motion, or sense, or both, according to the part obstructed.

## The Causes.

The Palsie is caused by abundance of gross and clammy humors, which stop the sinews, and hinder the animal Faculty, that it cannot come from the Brain or fountain to the Members. It may be caused by vehement cold, or by some inflammation or swelling near the Back-bone: or the sinews may be crushed by some binding, or hurt by some wound, or Ulcer, or the like.

## The Cure.

There need no more Signs to know this Disease by, than what hath been declared in the explanation of it. This Disease for the most part happeneth to old Folk, and surprizeth them in the Winter time; therefore Phlebotomy for the most part is unnecessary and dangerous. If plenitude of humors or blood appear, open a vein on the sound side, draw blood sparingly, lest you cool the Body too much. Let what part soever of the Body be affected, yet you must not forget the Brain, but you must purge, corroborate, and strengthen it: If you find the original of the distemper in the Brain, you must apply Medicines which have power to extenuate, dissolve and discuss; such as are prescribed in the second Chapter, for the cure of cold and phlegmatick Distempers of the Head. To the purging Medicines, you may add these, *Pillule Fastide, de opoponace, Arabica,*

and *Trochisci Almandi*, taken in a convenient quantity (as you shall be instructed in this next Book) and suitable to the season of the year, and age of your Patient. Let him abstain from drinking of strong Beer and Wine; and let most of his drink be the decoction of Guaiacum, and the bark of the same; and if you add Cephalick herbs to these, it will be the better. This Decoction is commendable, viz. Take of Guaiacum ground, two ounces; of the bark of the same, half an ounce; the root of China, and Sarsaparilla, of each two drachms; Saxifraga, three drachms; Lignum Aloes, and Galanga, of each two scruples; the roots of Angelica, Peony, and Fennel, of each two drachms, the seeds of Peony, and sweet Fennel, of each one drachm; Betony, ground Pine, Sage, of each one handful: the flowers of Lavender, Rosemary, Sæneas, and Cowslips, of each one pugil: Cinamon, and Polypodium of the Oak, of each half an ounce: Infuse them in six quarts of water twenty four hours: then boil it gently to the consumption of two quarts, strain it, and add to the decoction brown Sugar-candy, and syrup of Sæchas, of each four ounces. Let the diseased take half a pint in a morning, three or four mornings as a preparative to purging, you must purge once in a week, with one of the aforementioned Medicines; having respect to the age and strength of your Patient, and season of the Year. Or, you may prepare the aforesaid water by distillation, thus, Take of the simples aforesaid, and infuse them 24 hours in four quarts of water, and two of Whittwine: then distil them in *B. lino Marie*, (as you shall be taught in the fourth part of this Treatise) to a pound of this distilled water; add one ounce of the syrup of Sæchas, and a drachm of *Theriacal Diatesis*, divide it into three parts for three mornings.

It is convenient to set Cupping-glasses to the part affected, without scarrifying it, but easily drawing the humors and spirits to the place; afterwards you must rub and chafe the parts: it is convenient to bathe the paralytick part, and cause it to sweat with the decoction of Bur-root, and Elder-leaves, shoe-houses often profit much; but much better it is, if they can come to natural Baths, which proceed either from Nitrous, Bituminous, or sulphurous Mines, as the Bath of Bath. You may safely bathe two or three times in a week, and afterwards anoint the Member with some convenient Liniment, viz. Take of the Oyls of Foxes, Castor, Earth-worms, and Rue, of each one ounce: *Unguentum Nervinum*, and *Miriaturum*, of each half an ounce: the distilled Oyl of Rosemary, one drachm; Oyl of Spike, six drops: mix all these, and make a soft Oynment; with which anoint the Back bone, and the other parts that are diseased; afterwards wrap them up warm with the skin of a Fox or Hare. If the Palsie be caused by an inflammation, or hard swelling in any part; the cure of the

Chap. 8.  
inflammation  
shows by pain  
and the cure  
and the cure  
away the  
Back, or a  
catath.

*S. Palsie.*  
S are dis  
two fers,  
en of the  
five motion  
moved di  
Convulsio  
vulsive n  
thus divi  
of the Bo  
ber suffer  
the Brain,  
Body; or  
move the  
tion is ma  
ing from  
on.

The im  
the Nerv  
tracted,  
means co  
The m  
flegm an  
in breadi  
cause an  
But the  
humour

inflammation or swelling, cures the Palsie also. If bruising of the sinews by pinching or binding be the cause, remove the bruised blood, and the cure will ensue. If the Spondils of the Back be out or broke, and that cause the Palsie or Resolution; the cure of the cause taketh away the effect. If the Palsie ensue a wound or Ulcer in the Head, Back, or any particular Sinew; if the Sinew be curable, the Palsie ceaseth.

## CHAP. VIII.

## Of the Convulsion.

**S**pasms. Cramp or Convulsion, is a Disease when the Sinews are drawn or plucked up against a mans will. Of this there are two sorts, viz. a true Convulsion, when there is a constant retraction of the Muscles, and the Limb remains unmoveable: or a convulsive motion, when the retraction is every time new, and the Members moved divers ways. They differ likewise in their Causes, for a true Convulsion proceedeth, either from repletion, or inanition; a convulsive motion from irritation or provocation. Again, they are thus divided, a true Convulsion is either total, by which most part of the Body is contracted; or partial, by which one particular member suffereth contraction. The Universal Convulsion is caused from the Brain, when the Face is plucked together as well as the whole Body; or from the marrow of the Back, when the Muscles that move the Head and Back, are drawn together. A particular Convulsion is made from the contraction of the Muscle of some part, coming from the hurt of that Nerve which is ordained for his motion.

The immediate Causes (as I said before) are repletion, or inanition; the Nerves being too full of moisture, or too dry, are extended or contracted, and the Muscles into which they are united, are, by that means drawn back to their original.

The mediate Causes of a Convulsion, proceeding from repletion, are flegm and waterish humours flowing to the Nerves stretching them in breadth, must consequently make them shorter, and sometimes cause an inflammation.

But here in the way lieth an Objection, namely, why a watery humour obstructing the Nerve, and the cause of the Palsie and Convulsion,



vulsion, should sometimes bring one, and sometimes the other : the humour offending, and the parts affected, being one and the same. The divers opinions, and long disputation of Writers, I shall not here repeat ; the difficulty of the matter having distracted them into divers Opinions.

I shall answer the Objection briefly, and adhere to the most able modern Physicians, and say they differ thus : A Palsie is caused of a purge watery humour without mixture, which softeneth the Nerves, extends them not : The Convulsion is caused of the same humour, but mixed with much wind, by which the Nerves are stretched, and the Muscles contracted to their original. It is the Opinion of all Physicians, That wind is the cause of Convulsions ; and Experience teacheth us, That the greatest distentions are caused by wind, as we see in the Dropsie, Tympanies, and the Cholick. Sometimes an inflammation in or near the original of the Nerves, may cause a contraction of those nervous parts ; and the cause of this inflammation is sometimes internal as a flux of blood upon the part ; or external by a wound, contusion, or bruise.

The Causes of a Convulsion by emptiness, are all immoderate evacuations whatsoever, diseases, diet, and Medicines which are hot and dry.

A Convulsive motion is caused by humours, or vapours which are full of Acrimony, or Malignancy : and sometimes so happeneth in malignant Fevers ; and Diseases of Cholera occupying the Head, or Stomach.

From what hath been said, it is easie to know a Convulsion proceeding from fulness or emptiness or Convulsive motion. A Convulsion near the Brain is dangerous ; in the Muscles of the Breast, gives fear or suffocation : If it come after bleeding or purging, it is deadly : So is a Convulsion, following a Frensie. A Convulsion coming upon a Fever, shews a malignant matter, which ends in death : But if a Fever follow a Convulsion, it taketh away its Cause.

The Cure of this Disease is as various as the cause : the Convulsion caused by emptiness requires moistening Medicines, both internal and external : This Disease seldom happeneth, and almost ( if not altogether incurable ) I shall say nothing of it.

A Convulsion coming of repletion or fulness must be cured by evacuation of the peccant humours ; if you see occasion, make use of Phlebotomy, and purge the humours with Medicines agreeable to the age and strength of your Patient : and sometimes with sharp Clysters, such as are described in the Fifth Chapter. If you see it not convenient to let blood, apply Cupping-glasses, always above the parts

grieved,

grieved, that so the humours may be brought back to their original; that is to say, if the Convulsion or Cramp be in the Leggs, apply them to the Buttocks and Loins; observe the same rule where-  
 ever it be. The part affected ought to be chafed with Oyls and Oyn-  
 tments suitable to such a distemper, viz. the Oyls of Rue, Camomil,  
 Dill, Spike, the oyl of Foxes, &c. the oyntments of Marsh-mallows,  
 Martiatum, Nervinum, to which may be added the Mucilage of Briony,  
 with which you may make convenient Liniments to anoint the parts  
 affected, and the root of the Nerve which comes to it. Ducks or Goose-  
 grease, prepared in manner following, is much commended, viz. Take  
 a fat Duck or Goose, pluck it and draw it, then fill it with these things  
 following, viz. of Sage, Marjeram, and Stæchas, of each one handfull;  
 Gum Ammiacum & Bdellium, of each one ounce; Calamus Aromaticus,  
 Nutmegs, Mace, and Cloves, of each half an ounce: beat them in a Mor-  
 ter, moistening them with oyl of Earth-worms: after, sew them in-  
 to the belly of a Goose or Duck, spit it and roast it, receiving the  
 dripping in a pan, half full of Vinegar, and anoint therewith. Or  
 you may make it stronger thus: Take of the aforesaid dripping six  
 ounces, the Chymical Oyls of Wax, Nutmegs and Sage, of each two  
 drams, mix it and make a Liniment: When you have anointed the part  
 affected, cover it with a hot sheeps skin, a hares or Foxes skin. To put  
 the part affected into an Oxe or Sheeps belly, or any other beast new-  
 ly killed; or to apply the Lungs of a Sheep, young Pidgeons, Whelps  
 or Chickens slit in the middle, is much commended, and hath been  
 successfully proved. For those that are thus affected, it is very good  
 to bath themselves in the Bath of Bath, or such like, proceeding from  
 a sulphurous Mine: If you cannot conveniently come to this Bath,  
 you must make a Bath with these things following: Of Marsh-mall w  
 roots, and Lillies, of each two pounds: of the leaves of Pennyroyal,  
 Lawrel, Rue, Marjerom, St. Johns-wort, Violets, Mallows, Sage and  
 Wormwood, of each two handfulls; Linseeds and Fenugreek: of each  
 one pound, boyl all these in water sufficient to make a Bath, and let  
 the party diseased sit therein, not too long, but let him come out as  
 soon as he finds ease. If you dare venture to be at the cost, make your  
 Bath with oyl, boyling a Fox therein, together with the aforesaid  
 Herbs, you may purge the Head with Sternutations, Gargarisms, and  
 such medicines as you may find in the Second Chapter, for the cure of  
 a cold Phlegmarick distemper of the Brain; and it is good to foment  
 the Hinder part of the Head & Neck with hot Aqua Vita, the infusion  
 of Castor, or the Spirit of the same, and the dose is a drachm, or half a  
 drachm, according to the age or strength of the Patient. Anthiolus  
 his Bezoar-water the like dose; the compound water of Peony: give  
 these mixed with other cooler medicines. The Syrup of Peony com-

pound, *Diamoschu dulce*, *Diacorum*, *Diateffaron*, are much commended for the cure of this Disease.

I might add variety of Medicines for the Cure of this Distemper, but what I have said (I hope) is sufficient to give light to the Ingenious searching Spirits.

## CHAP. IX.

### Of a Catarrh or Defluxion.

**A** Catarrh is a Defluxion of excrementitious humours from the head into the inferiour parts. The brain requiring much nourishment, must necessarily void much excrements, which if they are in quantity moderate, and natural, they are received into the fore-Ventricles, and convey'd to the moist glandules, and spit out from the Palate; if it grow more plentiful, yet natural, it is dispersed through the films of the brain, and sent forth by the Nostril as well as the Palate. But when the brain is weak, and affected with distempers, and receiveth more nourishment than it can concoct, it aboundeth with excrements, which by their quality and quantity overcome the retentive, and provoke the expulsive faculties, and so evacuate themselves by unusual and improper ways, to the disturbance of the whole body.

The cause of this distemper proceeds from want of a good concoction in the brain, and this proceeds either from a hot or cold distemper.

A hot distemper doth attract more nourishment than Nature can sufficiently digest. A cold distemper turneth the nourishment, brought to the brain, to flegm or water. Cold, gross, and slimy meats hinder a good concoction, and windy meats send up many vapours to the head.

And to these many external causes, as Southerly winds, long sleep upon a full stomach, especially an idle life, &c. And though this be accounted a disease of the head, yet the principal cause lyeth in the inferiour parts, in which evil humours are collected, as the Liver, Spleen, Mesentery, womb, &c. from whom, not only vapours, but even the humours themselves are sent to the head, and descend to the inferiour parts again; a hot distemper of the Bowels, like an Alembick send continual vapours to the head; a cold distemper engenders crude humours, which are also many times drawn up thither. Co-

stigenels



## Chap. 9. Of a Catarrh or Defluxion.

31

stiveness or obstructions in the lower belly, which hinder the avoiding of excrements, they not finding their ordinary passage fly up to the brain, which, by reason of its weakness, and loose and soft substance, is forced to yield to the stronger parts disburthening themselves upon it. The impulsive causes are too much heat or cold in the brain: too much heat doth extenuate and diffuse the humours; and this happeneth to the head, heated by the Sun, fire, coverings, &c. Coldness doth compress the head, and strains forth the humours therein contained, as a sponge is squeezed in the hand. A Catarrh is caused by a Communication of cold humors, to the brain, from the feet, conveyed by the chiefest Nerves, which run through the marrow of the back: The stoppage or closure of the external pores, when the body requireth sweat is the cause of a Catarrh; hence it cometh to pass that Catarrhs are most frequent in Autumn, viz. the body Being made thin in the Summer, and the pores open, evacuating excrements by sweat and insensible transpiration: in Autumn the pores being suddenly stoppt, by reason of the contraction of sudden cold, which causeth many vapours to fly to the head. Many more causes might be instanced, but I fear I shall grow too voluminous, and what I have said is sufficient to stir up ingenious wits to further discoveries. I shall add a few words, of the nature of the parts receiving this Defluxion; which by reason of their weakness are forced to receive the burthen laid upon them, by the stronger parts, like the inferior Commons, who are forced to bear the heavy impositions of their insulting Superiours. The Lungs is naturally weak by reason of its softness and looseness, which maketh the part fit to receive Defluxions; want of natural heat, caused by a cold distemper, maketh the part unable to resist Defluxions: A wound or Ulcer in the part, causeth the humours to flow thither, if you take notice of Issues and Cauteries, you will scarcely doubt of the truth of it: So doth any inflammation or unnatural heat in the Lungs. Consider of this, and you may be able to give a reason of Consumptions of the Lungs, Pleurifies, and Spitting of bloody matter. The humours, which cause a Catarrh, flow from the Brain internally or externally: internally, if the humors fall upon the Breast, it is called a Catarrh or Defluxion: If upon *Aspera Arteria*, it is called *Rauco* or hoarseness: If it flows into the Nostrils, it causeth *Coryza*, *Ozæna*, or *Polypos*. If it falls upon the Nerves, it produceth Numbness, Palsy, Convulsion, Trembling: If in the Ears, Deafness; if in the Eyes, Inflammation, Tears, Blindness; if upon the *Uvula* or Palate, it causeth a Swelling, Looseness, or Ulcer there. If it fall into the Throat, the Quinsie follows; if on the Lungs, Inflammation, Pleurisie, shortness of Breath, Cough, Consumption: If it falls into the Stomach, vom-

miting and want of appetite ensues; if into the Bowels, *Dyarrhea*, or *Dysentery*: and sometimes it floweth into the Veins with the blood, and causeth a Feaver called *Febris Catarrhalis*, and is the fore-runner of the Joynt-Gout, and *Erysipelas*. Sometimes the humors flow from the Head externally, without the Skull under the skin; these Humors fall into the Eyes, Teeth, Neck, and other external parts: therefore it is rightly conceived by many Learned men, That the greatest part of the Diseases incident to the body of Man, have their original from the head: Such whose bodies are spare and slender, easily penetrated by heat or cold; or such as are grossly compact, and have not free transpiration: Such who have weak and cold Brains, that cannot discuss, nor concoct the humours or vapours therein contained; or those whose Brains are so hot as to attract too many vapours; Such, whose Stomachs and Livers are contrary in quality, viz. one hot, the other cold, are men subject to Catarrhs or Defluxions.

The signs of this disease may easily be gathered from the Causes, the approach of this disease may easily be discovered by the following Symptoms, viz. by heaviness of the head, dulness of the Senses, long sleep, a snotty nose, much spitting, costiveness of the body, and much wind; when the disease is perfect, the flowing humors are plainly felt, with swellings and pains in divers parts: if the defluxion be of cold humours, then will the body be sensible of cold, the face pale, the habit of the body generally stigmatized, troubled with sour belchings, sweet, slimy and waterish spittle. If it be a hot distillation, the habit of the whole body is cholerick; the parts affected inflamed and painful, the face red, much thirst, a salt and sharp humour in the mouth.

I need not tell you how an external Defluxion may be known from an internal; but take notice, that if there appear plenty of humors, the Catarrh is more dangerous, for by a sudden defluxion desperate accidents may follow.

If age, strength, and the season permit, or if the body abound with blood, or the Liver be too hot, (as it often happens in this distemper) breathe a Vein at the beginning of the Cure, the contrary prohibiting Phlebotomy. You must first prepare the matter, then gently purge the head, afterwards more strongly purge the peccant humours: out of the former Chapters you may find what purges are convenient, with respect to the humour offending; *Coloquintida* hath an excellent quality to purge the head, but by reason of its violent operation, is not fit for common use; therefore use it not without good advice. In this Disease also it is good to use Masticatories, and Gargarisms, when the humors fall into the Eyes or Nose, &c.

*Erythras,*

## Chap. 9. Of a Catarrh or Defluxion.

53

*Erythines*, and sneezing Powders when it falls upon the Breast, Lung, &c. Issues behind the Neck or Ears are found by experience a gallant remedy for a Catarrh.

I shall not here trouble my self or the Reader, to insert Examples of the aforegoing Medicines; the Chapters before going, together with every Artists ingenuity will sufficiently inform. Take this for a general Rule, That when a Catarrh or Defluxion is caused by excrementitious humors flowing from any of the inferiour parts by reason of the natural passage being stopped, you must open the obstruction, by often purging, or by Medicines, regarding the nature of the obstruction, and by that means turn the humors offering into their natural channel, after convenient Evacuations, with internal and external Medicines, Labour to corroborate the Head, & dry up the humors.

Internal Medicines may be prepared thus, or after this manner: Take of Coriander-seed prepared, and Coltsfoot dried, Nutmegs and Frankincense of each half an ounce; Liquoris, Mastic and Cubebs, of each two drachms, *Elos Sulphuris*, three drams, Conserve of red Roses one ounce, with a pound of white Sugar dissolved in Poppy-water, make Rolls weighing three drachms or half an ounce: Take one Morning and Evening.

Or you may make Troches in this manner; Take of the best Frankincense, and Juice of Liquoris, of each one dram; *Lac Sulphuris*, half a drachm; Opium, Saffron and Myrrh, of each one scruple; the Oyls of Annis-seed and Nutmegs, of each three drops; with *Diacodium*, as much as sufficeth, to make Troches; or if you please you may make them into Pills; and take half a drachm morning and evening. It is good to apply bags of Herbs to the fore-part of the head, which have a drying quality, shave the fore-part of the head, and apply the Gum *Tucamahacca* spread upon a cloth in the form of a Plaster, and add thereto a little Myrrh; or if you make a fume thereof, and shut the Chamber close, it profiteth.

If the Defluxion proceed from a hot cause, you must administer Medicines which have power to thicken the Humors, to repel and evacuate it: you must likewise correct the distemper, and fortifie the parts both sending and receiving; and that you may so do, you must repel or pull back the Humors by Phlebotomy, if a thing hinder it. You must thicken the humors by administering Juleps, made of the Waters of Plantane, Purslane, Lettuce, the Syrops of Poppies, Violets, Water-Lillies, of dried Roses, and Maceium, and such like. Having thus thickned and prepared the humours, you must evacuate them by gentle Purgatives; Take of the best Rhubarb a drachm, infuse it in any of the aforementioned Waters (as much as is sufficient for a potion) six hours in warm Eubers, strain it out; and



add to the liquor one ounce of Manna, and as much Syrup of dried Roses, and administer it. To make the Potion stronger, you may dissolve therein *Catholicon*, *Diaprunum Solutive*, or *Lentive*, *Confectio Hamech*, &c. or such like, having respect to the age and strength of your Patient, and humor offending.

You must endeavour to restrain the Flux thus; Take of Conserve of Roses one ounce, *Diatragacanthum Frigidum*, and *Pulvis Haly*, of each a drachm, Bole-armenick prepared with Rose-water a drachm; with the Emulsion of the four great cold Seeds, and Syrup of dried Roses, make an Opiate, and give the quantity of a Nutmeg to bedward. These Troches are much commended, take Gum-Dracant, and Arabick, of each two drachms; Bole-armenick, and *Terra sigillata* washed in Rosewater, of each one drachm; white Poppy-seeds, and Juyc of Liquoris, of each half a drachm; Sugar-penids one ounce, with the Musilage of Quince-seeds, extracted with Rosewater, make Troches to be held in the mouth day and night.

The Spirit of Sulphur, and Vitriol given three or four drops in a convenient Julep, Morning and Evening, worketh no small effects against a Defluxion, especially if it proceed from an inflammation of the Bowels. If you find the Disease too stubborn to yield to these Medicines, you must make use of Narcotics, of which Laudanum is none of the worst, four or five grains given at bed-time.

*Fapentinus* extollet these Pills in salt Catarrh, or Defluxion of salt humors; Take of the juyc of Liquoris two drachms, washed Aloes one drachm, *Pilula de Cynoglossa* half a drachm, with Syrup of Violets, make a Mass, and take a scruple thereof at bed-time.

It is convenient to make Powders to apply to the head, which have power to strengthen, to stop the Defluxion; and consume the Humors; Take of white Amber, Benjamin, Mastich, Nutmegs, of each half an ounce; Betony, Sage, Rosemary, Lavender, Marjoram, of each half a handful; Frankincense, grains of Kermes, red Roses, Peony-seeds and Poppy-heads, of each two drachms: Sanders, Myrtles, Cypress Nuts, and Pomegranate Flowers, of each one drachm; make a powder for the lining of a Cap or Quil. Or if you had rather, you may make Plaisters with the same Simples, with Wax and Oyl of Roses, according to Art; and apply it to the Head, being first shaved.

## CHAP. X.

Of Diseases of the Eyes, and first of the Diseases proceeding from  
Obstruction in the Optick Nerves.

**I**N the former Book having given you a brief account of this worthy Member, and what variety of wonderful operations God and Nature have placed in so little a subject; yet of the parts and faculties thereof, it is too hard a task for the most exquisite Philosopher to conceive aright, or for the most Eloquent Orator, to express such wonderful Notions. But, seeing God hath endued every man with this Member, by whose curious inspection, he is enabled to pry into all things; it is the duty of every Naturalist to exercise this Member in finding out its own constitution, and curing the distemper and maladies, to which it is subject. For the benefit of those who want better helps, I shall, as briefly as may be, discover the Diseases and Cures of the Eyes, as they are, in which Work I adhere to the Opinions of the Wise and Learned Physitians, verified by Reason, and my own Experience.

Sometimes it happeneth, that the sight of the Eye is totally extinguished, and no fault appears in the Eye: And this cometh to pass, either by obstruction or adstriction of the Optick Nerves; and is called by the Latines *Gutta Serena*, and *Amaurosis*. Obstruction (for the most part) is the cause of this disease, which happeneth by the flowing down of a watry humor upon the Nerves, which causeth blindness or dimness of sight: the like obstruction happening to the other Nerves, causeth the Palsie. Adstriction or Compression sometimes happeneth by some moist humour gathered about the Optick Nerves, as blood or filthy matter, gathered in the Brain, sometimes by humours, sometimes by inflammation, in malignant Feavers, and may be the cause of this Disease. For the Nerves being thus obstructed or compressed, the animal Spirits cannot pass from the Brain to the Eyes. To this I may add, That in case by a wound in the Head, the Optick Nerves be cut, without controversie it causeth blindness.

The sign of this Disease, is the loss of Sight, and the Eye appearing in its natural condition, onely the *Papilla*, or the sight of the Eye looketh wider, blacker and dimmer. The difference of causes is thus known: If the cause be blood or choler, some inflammation, impostume or wound in the Head hath gone before. If the Nerves are compressed by Flegm gathered about the roots of the Eyes, all or most of the Head is affected, and the other Senses are hurt: but if it be obstruction of the Optick Nerves, the Eye is onely affected, or the fore-part of the Head about the Eye-browes beareth part of the affliction.

If the Disease proceed from an obstruction in the Optick Nerves, and the sight be totally lost, for the most part the Disease is incurable: but if the obstruction be imperfect, that is to say, the sight much diminished, and the Patient not totally blind, then there is hope of recovery. If it happen by humours gathered into the fore-part of the Head, compressing the Nerves, it is curable.

For the Cure, the Head must be cleansed by Medicines, which effectually purge those humours which compress or obstruct the Nerves: But remember, That as you cannot free the Nerves, without purging the whole head, so you cannot cleanse the Head without purging the whole body. It is good that the Patient avoid a thick, cold, cloudy, and moist Air, and frequent the contrary. Let him eschew all meats that are gross, or yield a gross juyce, such as are windy, hot spices, or whatever fill the Head with vapours. It is good to put the seed of Fennel into his Bread. Let his meat for his sauce be extenuating, as B:rony, Eye-bright, Fennel, Hyssop, Marjerom, Sage: Nutmeg also doth much comfort the Brain, and clears the sight, as 'tis generally believed: Let the aforesaid Herbs likewise be boyled in his broth: Lettuce and such like cold Herbs are very hurtful; Turneps are highly commended, and 'tis proved they clear the sight, being often eaten: Pidgeons, Sparrows, and such like Fowls are said to be a good food for such who are thus diseased. Let him eat no Supper; if he eat any, let it be light, and not too late. Then let him make use of this Diet-Drink following: Take of Bet:rony, Eye-bright, Celandine the greater, Fennel, Balm, Marjerom, Sage, and Vervain, of each two handfuls: the roots of Elecampane, Fennel, Flower-de-luce, Liquoris, and Sarsaparilla sliced, of each one handful: the seeds of Coriander, Anise, and Fennel, of each one ounce; the flowers of Rosemary and Lavender, of each a handful: Raisins of the Sun stoned, and blew figs sliced, of each a pound: Senna two ounces. Let all these be infused six hours in a sufficient quantity of Wort, upon hot embers, then turned up in four gallons of New-beer, let them work together: Let the Patient drink a draught every morning till the Cure be perfected, unless some other medicine intervenes. You must purge the Body often, as you see cause, either with gentle or stronger Purges; let them be Pills, and such as purge the Humour offending: Of which, you shall have a particular account in the Fourth Book.

If your Patient be not old, and you find blood abound, you may open a vein: the opening of the particular veins of the Head, especially those that are nearest the Eyes, have often proved successful, because the Veins, by reason of their fulness of blood, have compressed the Optick Nerves.



Sometimes the application of Cupping glasses, Vescicatories, and Cauteries, to the hinder part of the Head or Neck, to the Shoulder or Back, have been attended with admirable success. After due evacuation, it is convenient to dry up the humors by a sudorifick Diet-Drink, made and used, as is described in the Second Chapter; adding such Herbs as have a special property to cure the Eyes, viz. Celastine, Eye-bright, Fennel, and Vervain. If you see occasion to dry up the moist humours of the Head, make use of such powders, bags and caps prescribed in the fore-going Chapters. Also sulphurous and Bituminous Baths profit much.

The Grosse and Crystalline humours of the Eye are subject to infirmities and disorder: the first is subject to a mixture, with other humours; and this Disease is hard to discover, but must be cured by cleansing the head and optick nerves, and repelling and discussing the humor, which mixeth with the vitrious humor, and maketh it dusky. This humor also may be disordered, in respect of its situation, when it is brought before the Crystalline, and so diminisheth the sight. This Disease is hardly distinguished from a Cataract, only it differeth in the cause; for a Cataract cometh by a defluxion of humor; this from a blow or contusion, and is incurable: sometimes it happeneth that Nature works a Cure, and reduceth it to its place again; but no man as yet can imitate her, therefore we leave the business to her disposing.

The Crystalline humor is the chief instrument of Sight, and if any defect happen to it, that it be not pure nor perspicuous, the visive spirits cannot exercise their office. This humor doth often suffer prejudice through some drying and condensing cause, as it often happens to ancient people, where the aforesaid cause changeth the Crystalline humor to redness. The sign of this Disease is a thick White about the sight of the Eye, and every object appeareth to the Patient as through a Cloud; it is called *Glaucoma*, and differeth from a Cataract in this; viz. a Cataract lieth in the *Pupilla*, or sight near *Cornea*, but *Glaucoma* lieth much deeper, and is incurable, especially in old people.

Sometimes the Crystalline humor is displaced, that it lieth not directly against the *Pupilla*; sometimes it lieth too high, and sometimes too low; and if one eye suffer, all things seem double: Sometimes vapours and water divide the visive humours, and causeth the objects to be received into two places. Sometimes the Crystalline Humor is removed and brought nearer to the *Pupilla*, and things that are near, are not so easily seen, as things farther off. But if it be removed backward, things near are plainly seen, but not afar off; the use of Spectacles are profitable in this case. Sometimes the Crystalline

line humour lyeth to the right, or to the left side, so that more White appeareth on one side, than on the other; and this we call *Strabismus*, or Squinting, this also is incurable, especially if it happeneth that the muscles of the Eyes be displaced by Convulsion or Palsie, then without hope, is incurable. Sometimes there happeneth an inversion of the Crystalline humor, so that the objects seem folded or crooked: But these Diseases being incurable by Medicines, I shall prescribe none.

## CHAP. XI.

## Of a Cataract.

**A** Cataract is caused or bred by a distemper of a watry humor of the Eye, which distemper is in quantity or quality: if in quantity, it causeth a dilation of the *Pupilla*; of which I shall speak in the next Chapter. If the Distemper be in quality, it proceeds from a mixture of excrementitious humours with the watry humor: In the beginning of this distemper, the sight being a little darkned, it is called *Suffusion*; but when it is gathered about the *Pupilla* (like water) they call it *Aqua* water; but when it is gathered thick about the *Pupilla*, it is called a Cataract. If Choler be the humor mixed with the watry humor, the Cataract appeareth somewhat citrine or yellow: If Melancholy, then is the Cataract more dull and blackish: If it be white as chalk, it signifieth a thick and compacted matter: If it be of the colour of Pearl, then slime and transparent slegm is the humour offending.

There are two sorts of Cataracts, a true, and a Bastard-Cataract: A true Cataract doth for the most part affect one eye onely; and if both be affected, they are not alike, nor affected at the same time, as in the spurious Cataract. In a true Cataract or *Suffusion*, a dark matter appeareth in the *Pupilla*, which doth not in the other.

But here let the Reader beware, lest he fall into error; for this doth not always hold as a sure distinguishing Rule: for if the humor be as thin as the watry humor, nothing appeareth; and many upon this ground have thought it to be *Gutta Serena*: but there is a great difference between *Gutta Serena*, and this: for in *Gutta Serena* the sight is quite lost, or at least much diminished, and no fault appears in the *Pupilla*: But it is not so in this *Suffusion*, which cannot be seen; for the sight is but a little diminished, because the humour being thin and transparent, the objects pierce it like glasse.

Though

Though I need say nothing of the signs of this Disease, it being easie to gather the signs from the causes, yet I shall add a few words. In the beginning of a Suffusion, certain small Bodies, as hairs, flies, cobwebs, gnats, wool, and such like, flye before the eyes, as it grows on, the symptoms are more evident, and the objects appear as through a glais: when it is perfect the *Pupilla* is changed in colour, and the sight is totally lost: What the colours denote, I have already laid down. If the matter of the Cataract appear dark, it lieth between Choriön (or *uvea*) and *Cornea*, and the *Pupilla* is dilated, and white or red veins appear about the circle of the Eye; if the contrary appear, judge that the matter lieth between the Crystalline, and *uvea*. If the matter lye deep, the *Pupilla* is contracted, if higher enlarged. When the Cataract is newly begun, and the Patient can see, as through a cloud, if he be young, and the season suitable, it may be cured: On the contrary, if it be confirmed, and the matter gross, it yields not to Medicines, but must be couched with a needle.

And seeing I speak of couching, give me leave to tell you, That 'tis a dangerous operation, and often attended with bad success; but if you find it needful, and likely to be prevalent, make use of a neat-handed Chyrurgion: and that you may know whether it be likely or no to be cured, consider a few Rules.

Signs of Cure, by couching, are these: If when the sound eye be shut, the *Pupilla* of the Eye affected appear larger, and perceive some light, there is hopes of cure: If the contrary appear, judge accordingly. A black, green, yellow and hard Cataract, never yieldeth to Medicine, seldom to the Needle: Attempt not the operation on old men, nor children: You must also consider, before you attempt this operation, whether the Suffusion be ripe and fit for couching; or whether it be not grown too hard. The first you must try thus; Press down the eye affected with your finger, and if you alter the shape of the Suffusion, and when your finger is off, it returneth to its former station, then is it thin, and not ripe: but if the contrary appear, it may be couched with a Needle. But here note, That it must be moderate, and not too compact, but like a skin that will rowl upon the Needle: if it be thick and solid like chalk, or hail, it cannot be couched.

For the Cure, you must observe the same Rules prescribed in the former Chapter, you must use and abstain from the same kind of diet; you must use general and particular Evacuations; you must repel the humors offending, and strengthen the head and eyes. Then you must come to Topical Medicines, and though I am (almost) of Galen's opinion, who saith they are little worth, for they promise more than they can perform; yet Experience hath taught, and Authors



thors have confirmed, that Cataracts, which have not been of long continuance, but taken in the beginning, have been cured by Topicks, after the use of the medicines before mentioned, therefore I shall insert a few of them, and leave the Ingenious to finde out more.

First, you must make a Fomentation of such things as have power to mollifie and dissolve: Take of Celandine, Fennel, Eye-bright, of each one handfull; of Rue, Vervain, Clary, of each half a handfull; Melilot, Chamomil Flowers, and red Rose leaves, of each one pugil; Fenugreek seed one ounce: boil them in a pint and a half of Spring-water, to the consumption of the half pint, then put in a half pint of White-Wine, and let it boyl a litle. Strain it out, and with clothes wet in the liquor, foment the eyes every morning so long as you see occasion. If you wash the Eyes with red Wine sometimes, it hinders the debuxion, discusseth and dissolveth. It is good to let a Child lick the Eye, after it hath eaten Sweet Fennel seeds, Infuse *Crocus Metallorum* in white-Wine, and wash the Eye with the Wine; or after a sufficient infusion, pour off the Wine clear, and with sweet Fennel and Fenugreek seed, of each one ounce, of Aloes half an ounce, Saffron a dram, beat them, and searce them into fine powder, the blood of a young Pidgeon hot tsh weight of them all, with the aforesaid Wine, what is sufficient to make a soft Pultis, & apply it warm to the Eye at Night; take it off in the morning. Or slit a young Pigeon, and lay it to the Eye. Then you must come to make use of Topical Medicines called *Collyries*, which many times (by *Galen's* favour) have good success, if the Cataract be not too much confirmed. Take the leaves of Rue, Fennel, Vervain, Celandine, and Eye-bright, of each one handfull; Centaury the lels, Burnet, Avens, Sage, of each half a handfull; Fennel roots and the roots of round Birthwort, of each half a pound; Red Rose leaves and White Violet leaves, of each one ounce; Radish seed, and Fenugreek seed, of each one dram; Ammoniacum, and the Natural Balsome, of each a dram, Tutty two drams: powder those that are to be powdered, the herbs and roots shred and sliced; put to them White-Wine, honey, and the Urine of a Boy, as much as may wet them all, viz. of white Wine three parts; of the Urine two, and Honey one; then distil them in *Balneo Marie*: drop the water into the Eyes, morning and evening. regarding the course and medicines before prescribed, *Josephus Quercetanus*, in his *Pharmacopœia*, doth much commend this following Water, viz. Take of the water of the greater Celandine six ounces, *Crocus Metallorum* one dram; infuse it in the same water, and drop two or three drops into the Eye, three or four times a day as long as need requireth.

I could insert many more Receipts of Learned and able men, but I fear my Book will swell too big: I shall only insert the Oynment of *Zacutus Lusitanus*, which he commends, for drying and purging the moisture flowing into the Eyes: Take of the Oyl of Roses three ounces, white Rose-water nine ounces; Camphire one dram, Tutty one scruple, Honey two ounces, the Gall of a Goat half an ounce, Lupin meal half a dram, Aloes Succotrine one dram, Sugar-Candy half a dram, the juyce of Horehound, Fennel, and Rue, of each half an ounce, Myrrh one scruple, Ammoniacum half a dram, Sarcocol one dram and an half.

Powder them that are to be powdered, mix them, and boyl them a little with a gentle fire, and with the grease of a Goat or sheep, and a little Wax, make an Oynment according to Art; anoint the Eyebrows twice in a day, three hours after meat, which will purge plenty of water out of the head, through the corner of the eye.

When you have finished your Cure, whether by Medicines, or by the Needle, you must keep your Patient in a course of Physick, for fear of a Relapse, and administer such things as strengthen the Head and Eyes, and hinder defluxion: It is good to wash the Head and Eyes every morning with white Wine, wherein had been bruised sweet Fennel-seed in powder, till they smart; but for other Medicines, to strengthen the Head and Eyes, I refer you to the preceding Chapter.

## CHAP. XII.

*Of the enlarging and dilating; of the straitning or contracting of the Pupilla.*

**T**His Disease is called in Greek *Mydriasis*, because too much light going in, hurteth the sight: Hence it is, that those that are thus d stempered, see better in a darkish place than in the light. And this may be demonstrated by the natural change of the *Pupilla* (in sound Eyes) in bright and obscure places. For when a man is in a bright and clear place, the *Pupilla* is contracted and made less, lest the light, going in too fast, should dissipate the spirits: so that a man, going suddenly out of a very light place, into a house or place more obscure, at the first entry he seeth (almost) nothing at all the *Pupilla* being so lately contracted: he remaining in the same place, the *Pupilla* is soon dilated or enlarged to receive more light, and then he seeth perfectly those things, which before he could not. Then if he go out suddenly into a very light place his Eyes are dazzled, and he

seeth not perfectly, because the Pupilla is enlarged, and the light goeth in so fast, doth dissipate and disperse the Visive Spirits. Hence you perceive that the light ought to pass into the Eye in a moderate quantity, and the Pupilla ought to be of a moderate size. Hence Galen observes, that they who are born with narrow Pupilla's see best.

The Pupilla is enlarged or contracted by driness, or repletion, it is enlarged by driness, which stretcheth the Uvea, which maketh the form of the Pupilla larger; as Leather being pierced when it is dry, the hole is larger, and this proceeds from Feavers, and such drying Diseases, which are attended with want of sleep. So may the Pupilla be streightned by driness, when the Tunicle Uvea by reason of the diminishing of the humor of the Eye, loseth its former extension, falls together and is wrinkled, and so the hole of the Pupilla is made streighter; whereas in the former the Tunicle though dry, holdeth its extension. It is made larger also by repletion, namely, by vapors or wind sent unto the Eye, or by the extraordinary flowing of the watry and other humors to the Eye, or by the swelling of the Uvea it self, it is distended, and the Pupilla made larger. So the same watry humor may work a contrary effect, namely, by relaxing the same Tunicle, and by that means making the hole streighter. The Pupilla is enlarged sometimes by Convulsion, as may be seen by some Epileptick Children; sometimes a stroke or fall may cause a defluxion into the Eyes, hence comes extension: retention of the Spirits causeth wind and humors; and that causeth distension of the Pupilla, and sometimes the Pupilla is made streighter, by reason of the want of the visive Spirits to extend the Tunicles, for want of which they are relaxed and fall together, as may be seen in old men.

These Diseases though they are contrary, yet are to be cured by the same Medicines; remember this, that if these Diseases be of long continuance, and in ancient people they are (without doubt) incurable. But if the Patient be young, and the Disease of no long continuance, you must proceed, with this consideration, that the cure must be varied according to the variety of causes: If it proceed from driness, you must refresh the body with Medicines which are moist and restorative; and such you shall finde in the cure of the He-lick Feaver. If it comes from a humor filling the Eye, you must purge and cleanse the Head and the whole body of that Humor, as you are taught in the cure of a Cataract. If from wind, after due Evacuations, you must labour to disperse the wind with the decoction of Fennel, Rue, Dill, Camomel, red Roses made in red Rosewater and Whitewine, and the Eyes semented therewith. If there be occasion for Astringent

Medicines,



Medicines, to bring the Pupilla ( being enlarged ) to its former state, make use of this following, taught by *Riverius* : Take of red Roses dried, two scruples, Saffron, Spicknard, and the Bark of Frankincense-tree, of each half a scruple, Tutty prepared, Burnt-Ivory and Acacia, of each one scruple, make them into fine powder, and tie it up in a fine linnen rag, and hang it in three Ounces of red Rose-water, when you have occasion to use it, squeeze the cloth, and drop the water into the Eyes, and wash them therewith. If a blow in the Eye causeth an inflammation, cure it as the inflammation of the Eye; but if by the blow the Pupilla be enlarged without inflammation, drop in a drop or two of Pigeons blood, and apply a Cataplasim made with Bean-flower and red Roses, juyce of Plantane and red Rosewater.

## C H A P. XIII.

## Of the Pin and web.

**T**HE Tunicle, called *Cornea*, sometimes loseth its colour and brightness, sometimes it grows thick by driness, as in old men, and is incurable; sometimes gross humors are fastned to it by reason of inflammation, sometimes by resolving Medicines, the thinner humors are dissolved, and the thicker remain; or by the use of cold Medicines the humors are thickned, and a white humor is contracted, which is called by some *Leucoma*, by others *Albugo*, commonly a Pin and Web. Sometimes it comes from a Scar, after an Ulcer, and so the *Cornea* loseth its transparentnes. Sometimes the Eye is bloodshod, and that spoileth the natural colour of the *Cornea*, and this is called *Sugillatio*: Sometimes the *Cornea* is made yellow by the Jaundise. All these Diseases are easily discovered, and their causes are laid down in the Description: That which cometh after a Wound or Ulcer, and is a Scar, is not easily cured. But the cure of the Pin and Web consists in Emollients, attenuating and discussing Medicines. But the Antecedent cause must first be removed by Universal Evacuations, such as are described in the Tenth and Eleventh Chapters. Then you must soften the hard matter with the decoction of Fennel-greek, Mallows, Melilot, Celandine, Fennel, and the like. Then let a Child chew sweet Fennel-seed, and afterwards lick the Eye, or make a Water thus: Take of Honey a pint, the juyce of Fennel, Brooklime and Celandine, of each half a pint, Sugar-candy dissolved in the Juyces an Ounce, with the natural Balsom a scruple, clarify them together, or distil them in *Balneo Marie*, and drop it into the Eye. The Seed of *Oculus Christi* put into the Eye is good. If it

be

be a Scar, after the use of the former Medicines, use the Water of Honey; afterwards put a quantity of the Gall of an Ox to the Juyce before spoken of, and thicken it with Gum-Tragacanth. If the Eye be blood shod, and yieldeth not to the fore-going Medicine, you must seek its cure in the Chapter of the Cataract. As for the yellowness of the Eyes caused by the Jaundise, take away the Cause and the Effect ceaseth.

## C H A P. XIV.

## Of the Inflammation of the Eyes.

**T**HIS Disease is called *Ophthalmia*, which is an inflammation of the Tunicle *Adnata*, and is sometimes extended to the *Cornea*: By the *Latines* it is called *Lippitudo*, bloodthorness; This Disease is divided into three kinds, the first is called *Taraxis* by the *Greeks*, and by the *Latines*, *Conturbatio*, and it cometh from an external cause, viz. the Sun, Smoke, Oyl, Dust, or the like. If it comes from an internal cause, namely the Distempers of the Stomach, it is called *Phlogosis*, and is a light inflammation, but is the Original of the true *Ophthalmia*, which always proceeds from an internal cause, accompanied with tumour, redness and pain, and a thick Excrement called *Lippa*, from whence the *Latines* call it *Lippitudo*, or bloodthorness. The third sort is called *χυμώσις*, in *Latine* also *Chimosis*, this is attended with vehement pain, and the eye-lids are so inverted, that they can scarcely cover the eye, the red covereth most part of the Iris, and it proceedeth from repletion and stigmatick humors. I might here shew you how *Hippocrates* hath divided these Diseases, namely a moist and dry *Ophthalmia*, the moist I have already spoken of, the dry he calleth *Ξεροφθαλμία*, it wanteth humidity, and proceedeth from *Choler* and acutt *Melancholy*: there are other subdivisions, if there be itching joyned with it, he calleth it *Ψωροφθαλμία*, and if it come with hardness of Eye-lids *σκληροφθαλμία*. *Galen* mentions another, which he calleth *Ophthalmia Tabica*, which ends with a consumption and loss of the Eye: this hapneth to them who have moist heads and weak eyes, fit to receive a defluxion. The immediate causes are defluxion or congestion, and sometimes both; the defluxion cometh from the head, either by the internal Veins, which come from the Brain under the Skull, or by the external Veins, which come from the Pericranium to the Eyes.

These signs demonstrate the Disease and the Cause thereof; if redness appear without swelling, it is a Conturbation: If swelling, heat

# Chap. 14. Of the Inflammation of the Eyes. 65

heat and tears be joyned to the redness, then it is a perfect Ophthalmia; but if ever it cover the black of the eye, and invert the eye-lids, then it is called *Chimosis*: If blood abound, and cause the Distemper, the eye and face will be red, and the Veins swelled: if Choler be the cause, the Patient feelth a pricking pain with sharp tears which corrode the cheeks and corners of the eyes. If it proceed from Flegm, the pain is heavy, many limy and glutinous tears. If Melancholy cause the grief, the tumour is but small, the colour of a dusky redness, few tears, the humor thick, the constitution of the Patient melancholy. If the defluxion come from the internal parts of the head, the pain will be felt inwardly, and about the roots of the eyes; if through the exterior Vessels the contrary signs appear, the Veins of the Forehead are distended, and there is much shooting about the Temples.

For the Cure, the external causes must be removed, the antecedent causes evacuated, revelled and repelled, the conjunct cause derived and discuss'd, and the parts affected strengthened.

Let the Patient observe an orderly and temperate Diet, and eat such things that are of easie digesture, let him avoid all sharp and salt things, and such as fume up to the head; and such things as breed Choler, let him abstain from strong drink, let most of his drink be Barley-water, let him avoid all motion, let him lie still as long as he is able, and sleep as long as he can; let him keep his eyes shut, and whatever he do, endeavour to keep his body soluble.

Plebotomy for the most part is convenient, but let it be regulated and moderated according to the constitution, strength, age, and sex of your Patient, and nature of the Disease.

If the Body be Plethorick, and the Disease hath its original from blood, you must take away the greater quantity, for *Galen* in his Book *De curat. per sang.* relateth how one was cured of an Ophthalmia by blood-letting, first, three pounds, and four hours after one pound; understand this onely in the case before-mentioned: though I could answer many cases more, cited by eminent Authors and Fathers of Physick, yet let these serve for all to avoid prolixity. If onely one Eye be affected, bleed your Patient on the contrary side. If you finde a stoppage of any accustomed evacuations, viz. the Terms or Hemorrhoid Veins; if the first be stopped, open the Saphena, if the other, bleed them with Leeches.

To make revulsion, some do apply Cupping-glasses to the shoulders and back, others open the Veins of the Head and Temples, some mes the Veins of the corner of the Eyes, and behind the Ears; and some bleed these Veins by Leeches, all which are very profitable for detivation. When you have bled, and made sufficient revulsion, you



must purge the humour that offendeth, and causeth the blood to be inflamed; but first let the humors be prepared, then purge gently and often; and if you see occasion, after all this, you may purge more strongly: prepare the humours thus, Take of Endive, Succory and Fumitory, of each one handful, red Rose-leaves one Ounce, of the greater Cold-seeds half an Ounce, of Lettuce and Poppy-seeds, of each two scruples, boyl them in a quart of Spring-water, to the consumption of half, strein it, and with Syrup of Violets two Ounces, and Syrup of Fumitory one Ounce, make a Julep for three Potions; afterwards you must administer such Medicines as have power gently to carry away the peccant humours. Take of Cassia newly drawn, one Ounce and an half, Manna dissolved in Rosewater an Ounce, Catholicon half an Ounce, Powder of Rubarb two drams, with Sugar sufficient, make a Bolus for three times. If the body be slegmatick purge with Pills of Agarick, or Lucis Majores; but take this caution along with you, that you administer no strong Purgation in this Distemper without the advice of an able Physician. After sufficient Evacuations, you may profitably apply a Cataplasme to the Forehead and Temples, that hath an astringent power, by which the humors flowing to the Eyes may be stopt. Take of Bole armenick, Mastick, Frankincense, Sanguis Draconis, and Wheat-flower, of each one Dram, the powder of Lentils and red Roses, of each two scruples, with the White of an Egg, juyce of Nettles, Vinegar of Roses, of each a like quantity, sufficient to make a Cataplasme. An Apple roasted with Frankincense and Mastick in it, moisten it with the White of an Egg beaten to water, and as much of a sound womans breast-milk, make a Cataplasme, and apply it to the Eye; or with crums of bread, and womans-milk, with a little Rosewater, you may make a convenient Cataplasme.

Then you must prepare Collyries, Ungents, and Fomentations, which must be used with discretion, and varied as the pain or inflammation increaseth or decreaseth, or as the humors are discussed or fixed, &c. out of the multiplicity of such Medicines, I shall insert a few, and but a few, for brevities sake.

Take the Salt of Lead one Scruple, Sal Armoniack six Grains, Rose-water and Plantane-water, of each three Ounces, the white of an Egg beaten to water one ounce, let them be mixed therein, and the Salts well dissolved, drop a little into the Eye Morning and Evening. Quercetan commends the infusion of Crocus Metallorum, made in Eye-bright and Fennel-water, and used as before. *Pasotus* his Ointment is very good in these ocular inflammations, and the way to prepare it is thus; Take of Tutty prepared an ounce and a half, Camphire one dram, Verdegrees twelve grains, beat the Tutty and

# Chap. 14. Of the Inflammation of the Eyes. 67

the Camphire together in a Morter, into fine powder, likewise the Verdegreece by itself, then take of fresh Butter (or May Butter if you can have it) one ounce; Rose-water one dram; boyl them gently together, then take them from the fire; first put in the Camphire and Turty, then the Verdegreece by degrees, stir them well together, and strain them through a piece of Sarsnet, put it into a Glass, and keep it for your use; anoint the inside of the Eye-lids, especially about the corners, and you shall finde ease, whether it be a moist or dry inflammation. If you make an Ointment of flesh Butter and juyce of Tobacco, you may do wonders in this case, but you must onely anoint the out-side of the Eye-lids. In the declination of the Disease, you may make a Fomentation, which hath a power to discuss and resolve, of the decoction of Camomel, Melilot, Roses, Eyebright, and Marjerom, and with clothes foment the Eyes.

If the Disease hath its Original from a slegmatick humour, your Resolvents must be the stronger Baths: also the drinking of Wine hath been approved and much commended by Galen and Hippocrates, as a means to extenuate, dissolve, diffuse, and discuss the thick humors gathered in the Eyes, and to open obstructions. If you finde that the Opthalmi is caused by defects of the Brain, by defluxions, or a hot distemper of the Liver, then labour first to remove the cause, as the several Chapters thereof intreating will instruct you.

Sometimes if the humors cannot be resolved, there is a Suppuration and an Ulcer sometimes followeth it, and sometimes matter gathereth under the Cornea; this is called *Hypopye*, this cometh also sometimes by a Contusion, sometimes it covereth the Pupilla, and sometimes compasseth the Circle of the eye, and is like a mans Nail. Hence the Greek call it *ὀφθαλμία*. This Disease is known by the inflammation going before; the matter is white under the Cornea, and when the Eye is moved, it hath a motion. For the cure of this, you must (if any of the inflammation remain) use the foregoing Medicines; afterward do as you are taught in the cure of a Cataract.

Sometimes not onely in the Cornea, but also in the *Adnata*, little blisters do arise like little bubbles, like Pearls of Grumwel-seed, it hath its original from a sharp and watry humor; it is called *Phlyctene*: in the *Adnata* they are red, in the *Cornea* white within; but if they be on the out-side, they are black. They which are in the *Cornea* are more dangerous than those that are in *Adnata*, and the more superficial they are, the less is the danger. The Cure consisteth in the resolving the matter conjoynd, and averting the antecedent cause, labour to prevent a Suppuration, lest an Ulcer follow. For the particular Cure of this Disease, you must use those Medicines proper for the Cure of the Opthalmi.

After an Ophthalmy, and Blisters in'tie Eyes, Ulcers sometimes happen in the aforesaid Tunicles, when the humors are gathered, or the Blisters come to Suppuration: and sometimes they follow sharp, corroding and watry humors flowing into the Eyes. Some of them are superficial or profound, broad or narrow; a hollow, narrow and hard Ulcer is called in Greek Βόθρυον, in Latine *Fossula*, or a little Ditch. An Ulcer that is broad, and not so deep, is called κοίλωμα; that which cometh in the Circle of the Eye is called ἀρτεμον, or *ulcus coronale*. They that are deep, solid, hard and crusty, are called ὑπὸ κελύφῃ, or ἔσχαυμα. If the Ulcer be in the Cornea, there will be a small white blemish in the black of the Eye: If it be in the *Adnata*, there will be a small red blemish in the White of the Eye, because the *Adnata* is full of Blood. All Ulcers in the Eyes are dangerous and hard to cure, but more in the Cornea than in the *Adnata*; if it happen in the Pupilla, though it be cured, it much prejudiceth the sight, because it leaveth a scar, which hindereth the perspicuity of the Cornea. For the Cure, you must use such Medicines as dry and cleanse moderately, such as assuage pain and revel, and restrain the humours flowing upon the Eyes. You can scarcely read thus far, and be ignorant of particular Medicines, yet for the benefit of the unskilful, I shall insert one or two: Take an Egg boyled hard, pilled and cut in two pieces; take out the Yelk, and fill the hollow with Sugar-Candy and Myrrh with powder, tie them fast, and hang them up in a Cellar, and a water will drop from it, which is good to cleanse the Eye without pain: the Water of Honey distilled hath been found very effectual. But if these Medicines are not strong enough, do as followeth; Take of Plantane, Vervain, and white Rose-water, of each one ounce, Honey two ounces, the Whites of ten new laid Eggs boyled hard, of Myrrh, Tutty, and the white Troches of Rasis, of each a dram, Sarcocol, Frankincense, Aloes, and Ceruse, of each half a dram, powder them that are to be powdered, and mix them all in a stone Mortar, then put them into a small Glass-body with a head and receiver, and distil it in Balneo: This Water is excellent against Ulcers in the Eyes. These three Diseases I thought good to annex to the cure of the Inflammation of the Eyes, having a dependencie thereupon.



## CHAP. XV.

## Of the Cancer and Rupture of the Cornea.

Sometimes a Cancer groweth up and is perfected in the Eye, of which there is two sorts, either Occult or Ulcerated, the occult is called a Cancerous Tumor, or Cancer of the Eye; the ulcerated is called a cancerous ulcer in the Eye, it is known by a blew leaden colour, and unequal hardness, the Veins adjoyning are very full and blew, and the Eye, the Temples and the whole Head is afflicted with a strong and pricking pain. If the Disease be fixed and perfect, it is incurable, except it be taken away by manual operation but if it be taken in the beginning, it may be cured: you must administer convenient Physick, and adjoyn a suitable Diet. You must draw blood on the same side; if you finde occasion, bleed the Hemorrhoid Veins by Leeches, and apply them behind the Ears; after the use of these or the like revulsion, purge Melancholy often, and gently, once or twice a week (if the body be strong enough) purge with the extract of black Hellebore. These Remedies will much diminish the humors, and decrease the pain, after which you must use Topicks, such as have prepared Tutty, and the white Troches in them, for which have recourse to the preceding Chapter. The flesh of yong Pidgeons or Chickens applied to the Cancer, hath been found very available.

The Rupture of the Cornea, is when the Tunicle is so divided, that the watry humor, and sometimes the Uvea cometh forth: the cause of both is a Wound, Ulcer, or a great efflux of humors, by which the Cornea is so distended, that it cracks, and the humors contained are let out, and sometimes the Uvea shooteth out: Paulus divideth this Disease into four kinds; the first cometh forth like the head of a fly, and therefore he calleth it *μυκήραλον*. The second is, when a greater part cometh forth, and is like the stone of a Rat, and is called *σαυαλῶμα*. The third is, when the Eruption is so great that it seemeth like an Apple, and is called *μήλον*. The fourth is, when the Uvea (being come forth) is hard, and is called *ἵλας*. The Cure is very difficult alway, but for the most part it is incurable: after bleeding (if need be) and purging the peccant humors, you must use astringent and glutinating Medicines, as the white Troches, and the white of an Egg dropt into the Eye, then make a Cataplasme to the part, thus: Take the root of *Saomon*'s Seal four ounces, Quinces pared and sliced two ounces, red Roses-leaves a handful, Acacia a dram, Saffron two scruples, boyl these in Red-

wine and Plantane-water ( of each a like quantity ) as much as is sufficient to make a Cataplasme. Afterwards, to make a perfect consolidation, take an ounce of the Gum Mucilage of Tragacanth made in Plantane water, the clarified juyce of Plantane, and of the root of Solomons Seal, of each one spoonfull : of the white of an egg beaten to clean water, and a womans breast-milk, of both a spoonfull ; washed Aloes, prepared Turty, and Sarcocol, of each two scruples ; Saffron one scruple : powder what is to be pouced, and mix them for a Collyrie.

## CHAP. XVI.

## Of the Diseases of the corners of the Eyes and Eye-lids.

Sometimes there happeneth a Tumor in the corner of the Eye, at the root of the Nose ; if it do not break, it is called Anchylops ; if it do break, it is called Ægylops. Sometimes this Tumor cometh without inflammation, and is bred of a thick, flegmatick, slimy humour, as the Tumors called Atheromata, Steatomata, &c. of which you shall have a brief account in the next Book.

When it cometh with inflammation, it is like a Boil, with shooting pain, and very red, and it cometh by thin and cholerick blood flowing thither, and then imposthumateth ; which being open produceth an Ulcer ; then it becomes hollow, and is called *Fistula Lachrynalis*. The cure is very difficult, because it is ill applying medicines, the eye being so near. If it hath not been of long continuance, and the Orifice to be seen externally, it may be cured by Medicine. But if it hath continued a year, the Bone is foul, and hard to be cured without burning. If it turns to a Cancer, it is incurable, because Medicines will enlarge it, and increase pain, and is known by the hardness and blew-ness of the skin, the extension of the Veins, and extremity of the pain.

You must open a vein, if nothing hinder, and revel the humours by purging, which you may do by these following Pills, viz. Cochiaz, Arabicæ, Aureæ, and Lucis Majoris ; then you must endeavour to stop the progress by repelling medicines : take the juyce of Nightshade, Shepherds-purse, and Knotgrais, of each two ounces ; Acacia, the flowers of Balauustines, Bole-armonick, Gauls, Frankincense, and Roch-allum, of each a dram ; boyl them well together : then with four ounces of white Wax, and four drams of Turpentine, make a Cerate, to be applied to the forehead : Afterwards endeavour to resolve the humours : *Amatus Lusitanus* commends this following

Cerate :

**Cerate :** Take of the Powder of Cockle-shells two drams ; Myrrh, Aloes, and Frankincense, of each half an ounce : Sarcocol, Sanguis Draconis, and Cerule, of each three drams : Opopanax dissolved in Wine, Vinegar, and Blood-stone, of each one dram and an half, Saffron two scruples, Wax and Rozen, of each three ounces : make a Cerate according to art, and apply it to the corner of the eye and Fore-head. If, after all this, it will come to Suppuration, make use of such things as will hasten it, lest the humours corrode the part : apply a Plaster of *Diachylon Simplex*. If an Inflammation approach, apply a Cataplasme made with white bread and milk : If it break not suddenly, open it with a Lancet, cleanse the Ulcer and heal it. But if it prove a Fistula, you must be the more careful, first to cleanse it thus : Take of *Aqua-vitæ*, and Honey of Roses, of each one ounce ; Myrrh two ounces, with Allum and Verdegreece, of each a dram : boil them together, and make a Liniment ; Unguentum *Ægyptiacum*, and *Apostolorum*, is of great vertue in this case.

If the bone be foul, it must be cured by an actual Caution : yet *Fabricius Hildanus* saith, he cured a Lachrymal Fistula with Medicines ; he applied *Euphorbium*, and upon the same an Emplaister of Gum-Elemi, and this he did till he scaled the bone : afterwards with the Tolutan Balsome, a drop upon a little lint, he incarnated, and consolidated the Fistula in a very short time.

After this Lachrymal Fistula, there followeth a consuming and diminishing of the Caruncle in the corner of the Eye ; sometimes it also happeneth by a sharp humour falling down thither, and sometimes by cleansing medicines applied without discretion ; this Disease is called *Rhyas*. There is another Disease contrary to this, which is an immoderate growth and increase of the flesh in the corner of the Eye ; which proceedeth sometimes for want of orderly drying up of the Ulcer, and sometimes by a defluxion of blood to the part, and this is called *Enchanthis*.

For the Cure of the first, you must perform it by incarnative Medicines : Take of Aloes, Borax, Frankincense, Dragons-blood, Cyprus Nuts, and Myrtles, of each one dram, the flowers of Pomegranates, Red Roses, and Comfrey, of each two scruples ; the seeds of Sumach one scruple : Let them be boyled in old Canary, and Plantane and Rose-water, of each half a pint, to the consumption of half, and with this Collyrie often wash the part affected.

The other you must cure by taking away the superfluous flesh, with eating medicines, as Burnt Allum, burnt Vitriol, *Unguentum Ægyptiacum*, or *Apostolorum* ; or you must cut it off, and burn it with an Iron : But proceed which way you will, you must not forget convenient Evacuations, for fear of a defluxion, and you must beware lest



you take it not away too near, lest it turn to *Rhyas*. There is also a defluxion of Rheum, issuing out of the corners of the Eyes, and is called involuntary weeping, and by some, *Epiphora*: for the producing of this Disease, there is an indisposition in the part sending, and the part receiving: the part sending is the Brain, which being too hot or too cold, attracteth a watry humour, and sendeth it to the inferiour parts. By the weakness, thinness, thickness of the Caruncle in the corner of the Eye, it is made incapable to resist such a defluxion, which often happeneth in the three forementioned Diseases.

This defluxion is conveyed sometimes by the external, and sometimes by the internal veins: Sometimes the defluxion is hot, and sometimes cold. If it be conveyed by the external veins, the veins of the Forehead and Temples are distended, and the pain is felt without the Skull; if internally, the pain is felt contrarily. If the humor be hot, it causeth the more pain; heat, redness, and ulceration of the eye brows follow.

If this Disease cometh from an outward cause, if it hath continued long, it may be soon cured; but hardly if your patient be old. If it proceed from a Lachrymal Fistula, *Rhyas*, or *Encanthis*, it hath its cure with those Diseases. You must take away the defluxion and strengthen the part, you must evacuate the humor offending by purging: likewise if the body be Plethorick, and nothing prohibit, you may open a vein. You must make revulsion of the flowing humors by Cupping, Vesicatories, Blisters behind the neck, and Issues in the arm.

For derivation, apply Leeches behind the Ears, and Masticatories in the morning: strengthen the head and Brain, whether the humor be hot or cold: the Chapter of the Catarrh, and of the coldest distempers of the Brain, will particularly inform you, how to purge, revel, and derive the peccant humours, and strengthen the part affected. Then you must apply astringent Medicines to the Forehead and Temples; if the humor flow through the external veins: If it be a cold humour, take of Frankincense, *Tacamahaton*, and Mastich, of each two drams: *Terra Sigillata* one dram, Mace pulverized, and Juniper Gum, of each two scruples; Turpentine and Wax sufficient to make a Cerate for the Fore-head and Temples; But if it be a hot and sharp humour, take of Endive and Knot-grass, of each one handful; the Root of Solomons-Seal one pound, beat them well in a stone Mortar, and with a pint of White-Wine-Vinegar, let them boil till half of the Vinegar be consumed: then take of Bole armerick, *Sarguis Draco*nis, Pomegranate Flowers, of each two drams; Frankincense, Mastick and red Roses, of each half a dram, powder them, and mix them with the other, and make a Cataplasme to be applied as afore said.

You

## Chap. 16. Of the Diseases of the Eyes.

73

You must likewise apply drying and astringent Medicines to the part affected. Take of prepared Tutty, Egg-shells, Aloes, Frankincense and Mastic, of each two scruples, Sarcocol, Sanguis Draconis, and Sumach seed, of each one scruple; Mirrh and Spicknard of each six grains; make them all into fine powder, and tie them up in a rag, and steep it in white Wine, Fennel, Eye-bright, or white-Rose-water, and squeeze it often into the eyes. These Medicines prescribed for an *Ophthalmia*, are good likewise in this distemper.

There is another Disease appertaining to the corner of the Eye, it is called by some ( *Pterygium* ) by other some the *Haw in the Eye*; and by others *unguis*; and it is a hard and Nervous Membrane, growing out of the corner of the Eye, covering the white, and in time the *Pupilla* also. Sometimes it is thin and white, and sometimes it is red and full of veins.

It is caused by Ulceration of the Caruncle of the Eye, and is bred by excrements (fl wing to the part) as well as blood: hence it cometh to pass, that variety of Haws are bred, according to the feeding humour, and may be thus distinguished; A red Haw comes of pure blood, a yellow of Cholera; a white of Flegme; a dark and black one of Melancholy. If the Eye affected grow less, it is an evil sign, and little hopes there is of recovery.

If you take it whilst it is new and beginning, it may (with difficulty) be taken off by Medicine; but if it be far gone, it must be done by Chyrurgery, you must Evacuate and purge the Antecedent cause, as you have heard sufficiently already in the other Chapters of the diseases of the eyes; and you must use the same Course of Diet.

Then you may make use of the Topicks spoken of in the Cure of blisters in the eyes.

Take of Cutt'bone in fine powder, and put it upon the Haw; this I have known take the Haw from the eye of an Horse: if you mix Tutty and Vitriol to it, it may prove the better.

I shall instance one more commended by *Forestus*: Take of the juice of Fennel four ounces, the juice of Celandine three ounces, of Rue two ounces, and of Mallows two ounces and an half, Aloes one dram, Vitriol two scruples, Verdegrease one scruple, Ginger and Cinamon, of each half a scruple; the Gall of an Eel half an ounce, the Gall of an Ox two drams, Sugar-Candy two scruples, let the juices boyl with the rest, then claryfie it and make a Collyrium; with which dress the Eye: and if this prevail not, it must be taken off by Chirurgery.

I shall say no more, but put an end to this Chapter, and the diseases of the Eyes.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XVII.

## Of the Diseases of the Ears.

**T**HE Ear is the Organ of Hearing, the most spiritual sense, the agent of Understanding, the gate through which Science, Truth and Vertue hath its entrance into the Soul, this Member is subject to divers Diseases, Similary, Organick, and Common, which are known and distinguished by their Symptoms.

There is first deafness or dulness of hearing, which I shall joyn, because they differ only in degrees, and are the same in causes. I shall not spend my time to shew you the difference between deafness and dulness of hearing, only declare the causes of both. The first is called by the Greeks *κωφότης*, the other is called *βάρυνσις*, both of these have their original from a distemper of the Brain. The cause lieth either in the exterior, or interior cavity; the exterior Cavity may be obstructed or stopped by Tumor, Impostume, blood, matter, flegm, or the like, which may prove defective to the Hearing; but this cause cannot make an absolute deafness, because there is an open way from the interior cavity to the Palate, by which the sound is carried; as you may observe by those that are hard of hearing, for they are subject to hold open their mouths, that so they may hear the better, and you may prove it by this example: Hold a stick between your Teeth, with which strike the strings of a musical Instrument, stopping your Ears, and you may hear the sound as well or better than with your open Ears. The interior Cavity is sometimes obstructed by Flegmatick and Cholerick humors, and sometimes by blood. Sometimes humors from all parts of the body are sent to this Cavity, as it happeneth sometimes in Feavers. Sometimes the Tympane may be relaxed, sometimes by excess of moist humors, and sometimes by some violent and sudden noise, sometimes it is stretched or dried after some violent Disease, accompanied with watching or fasting; sometimes it may be broken by a violent motion, or corroded by a sharp humor. Sometimes Narcoticks administred overmuch; sometimes a cold distemper, or cold water got into the Ear, or sometimes the instruments of hearing hurt by some stroke or fall, or the like, may be the cause of this disease.

Though it be hard to distinguish all these by their proper signs, yet you may by Art and Conjecture come near it. If the distemper comes from a distemper of the Brain; either there is an appearance of some disease in the head, as the Head-ach, Apoplexy, &c. or some of the other Senses are hurt. If the external cavity of the Ears be

or Drum

or Opich

obs



# Chap. 17. Of the Diseases of the Ears. 75

obstructed by excrementitious humors, or something fallen in, it may be discovered by the Eye. If the interior Cavity be obstructed by some humor; the humor may be known by some present or preceding disease, or by the constitution of the body: the looseness or moistness of the Tympane may be conjectured by some preceding moist distemper, the dryness of the same part, by the dryness of the whole body. The Tympane cannot be broken, unless there hath some violent cause which might break it, preceded.

If Deafness be absolute, and of long continuance, or if the Patient was born so, it is incurable. If it proceed from a sharp or continual Feaver, the cure of the Feaver is the remedy. The Tympane broken, the deafness is incurable: if it increase and decrease, it proceedeth from a moveable humor, and is curable; if it hath its original from a distemper of the Brain, it is easier cured; than if it comes from a proper distemper of the ear.

For the Cure, you must consider what humour is the cause of the defect, and you must purge the Body, and particularly the Head; you must use Revulsions, as Cauteries, Vesicatories, Gargarisms and Masticatories: to be brief, these and other Remedies effectual against this Distemper, may be sought out of the Chapter treating of cold distempers of the Brain: Sulphurous and Bituminous Baths are very profitable, especially if the Patient wear a Cap made of Sponge, and the water pumped upon his head. It is good also to make Fomentations of these following Herbs, viz.

Mallows, Marjoram, Hyssop, Centaury, Mints, Camomel, Rosemary, Pennyroyal, Sage; boyl them in White-wine, and foment the Ear: if you would have it stronger, add a dram of the pulp of *Coloquintida*, and as much white *Hellebore* to the fomentation; a fumigation made with a Funnel of the same decoction, doth wonderfully pierce the Cavity of the Ear. Or make a Loaf of Bread, and mix with the Meal a good quantity of *Caraway-seeds*, *Bay-berries*, *Juniper-berries*, *Nutmegs*, and *Cloves*, and when it is baked, cut it in the middle, and apply it hot to the Ear affected, or to both if need be, and if you think it not of sufficient force, dip it first into the Spirit of Wine; this will serve instead of a fomentation. After which, you must put some Oyl or Liquors proper to the Cure into the Ear, as Oyl of Bitter Almonds, Castor, Rar, &c. the Chymical Oyls of Rosemary, Marjoram, Sage, Fennel, Spike and Cloves, which are too hot to be used alone, but may with good success be mixed with other Oyls and applied. Take the water of an Ash, (that runneth out at the end, the other being in the fire) one ounce: The dripping of a silver Ecl, (rosted upon a Spit) as much, a scruple of any of the before-named Chymical Oyls, or a dram of the other; mix them and drop it into the Ear. Observe this

this General Rule, that you drop nothing cold into the ear, and that you stop the ear afterwards with Wool or Cotton, and a little Musk in it.

78

Sometimes the Sense of Hearing is prejudiced by a preternatural noise in the ears, the causes of which are many, but chiefly a wind or vapor sent thither from other parts, or bred there.

It cometh from all parts of the Body, when it happeneth in a Fever, and this ( according to Hippocrates ) is deadly. Sometimes it cometh from the Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Midriff and Womb : withness Vomiting, Hypochondriack Melancholy, and fits of the Mother, which for the most part are attended with a noise in the ears. Sometimes it is caused by Flegm contained in the ear, for they that are thick of hearing are seldom free from a noise in the head : a blow, great sound, or an ulcer in the head may cause a noise in the head : a hot distemper in the head filleth the Arteries of the ear with much spirit, and causeth a noise. If the noise hath been of long continuance, it is hardly cured ; if it proceed from Flegm, obstructing the passage, 'tis doubtful that it will end in deafness. If you judge it curable, you may finde the Cure in this Chapter, for it differeth not in cure from dulness of hearing in some cases, and agreeth with the cure of the pain of the ears in others : But this remember, that if it come by consent of the Stomach, Liver, &c. take away the cause and the effect ceaseth.

Pain in the Ears is called in Greek *otalgia*, and is caused by cold winds, cold baths, or the like, or by a hot distemper, so it be accompanied with a defluxion of humors, otherwise heat is friendly to those Nervous and Membranous parts.

The cold matter which causeth pain is Flegm, water or cold wind, either coming from without, or from some inferiour part within.

The hot matter is choler or Blood.

There may be other evident causes of pain, as Wounds, Contusions, Ulcers, or breaking of an Impostume, or any hard or pricking thing got into the Ear. You may judge the Distemper to be from cold, if a cold cause hath preceded, and hot Medicines profit ; the contrary declareth a hot distemper : If Flegm cause the pain, the ear and head will be heavy, some Rheume falleth upon some other part : the Distemper is taken in cold weather, or the patient is old. If wind be the cause, the pain is without heaviness, nor is it constant. If water cause the pain, the Patient is troubled with a sharp defluxion upon the Teeth, Eyes, Breast, &c. If it come from Choler, the pain is sharp and pricking, cold things give ease, the Body is Cholerick, &c. an Inflammation is accompanied with a great heating pain, the parts adjacent are very red, and there is joyned a

Fever.

Fever, A W  
Ear, and an  
an Impellum  
and proceed  
in great a  
follow an In  
ing before de  
burning and  
continually  
and hath co  
itself ; the  
be Virulent  
rode, blood  
growth fifth  
growth har  
If the Dis  
ter, you mu  
especially F  
Ear ; and i  
mor. W  
cooling Te  
humor by  
the preter  
the diseases  
inflammatio  
Cure.

The infl  
the admini  
and this m  
disease reg  
ient permi  
tion is, if th  
Staphylo  
Fistulous  
ders and B  
a Capping  
attended  
place, had  
If you th  
Temple is  
feed the in  
humors wi  
rel-water,

## Chap. 17. Of the Diseases of the Ears. 77

Fever. A Wound maketh it self known by blood issuing out at the Ear, and an ulcer by filth. But sometimes there issueth filth from an Impostume in the Brain, but this may be distinguished by head-ach preceding, and other signs of Impostume: the filth cometh away in great abundance at first, and decreaseth by degrees. If an ulcer follow an Impostume in the Ear, the symptoms of an Impostum going before declareth. If the ulcer come by defluxion, there is a burning and shooting pain, and the matter issueth forth by little and constantly. If the ulcer be in the bone, the matter is thin and yellow, and hath continued long; the deeper the ulcer is, the more matter issueth; the fouler it is, the more and thicker is the matter; if it be Virulent, the matter is thin: if putrid, it stinketh much: if it corrode, blood accompanieth the matter: if it continue very long, it groweth Fistulous, and then the matter is virulent and the flesh groweth hard.

If the Distemper proceed from a cold cause, with or without matter, you must use the Medicines prescribed for the cure of deafness, especially Fomentations and Fumes, with warm Oyls dropt into the Ear; and if it be with watry, you must evacuate and purge the humor. If the Distemper come from a hot cause without matter, use cooling Topicks; if it hath a cholerick matter, you must revel the humor by Phlebotomy, and with cooling Drinks and Juleps allay the preternatural heat of the Liver; but this having dependencie to the diseases of the head, proceeding from a hot cause, also to the inflammation of the Ear, I leave the Ingenious there to seek the Cure.

The inflammation of the Ear is cured by making revulsion (after the administration of an Emollient Clyster) by blood-letting; and this must be done in as great a quantity as the violentness of the disease requireth, and the strength, age, and constitution of the Patient permitteeth: open the Head-vein on the same side the inflammation is, if the stoppage of the Terms hath been prejudicial, open the Saphæna, or the Hæmorrhoids if you see occasion. Revulsions by Frictions and Ligatures of the Arms and thighs, cupping the Shoulders and Back with or without scarrification, are often successful: a Cupping glass fixed behind the Ears with scarrification, hath been attended with admirable success; and Horseleeches applied to the same place, hath been no less effectual.

If you finde the Cure difficult, the opening of the Arteries in the Temple is good to prevent hot and windy blood, which doth much feed the inflammation, you must often purge Choler, and temper the humors with cooling Juleps thus: Take of Lettuce, Purslain, and Sorrel-water, of each two ounces; the water of Plantane and Succory, of each



each three ounces, of Syrup of Lemmons two ounces, the Syrup of Erratick Poppies one ounce; mix them, and make a Julep, take four spoonfulls Morning and Evening.

You may foment the ear with the decoction of cooling and piercing herbs, and let the Patient receive the same with a Funnel: then come to the use of Topicks which have power to mitigate pain thus: Take of Breast-milk two ounces, the Oyl of Roses and water-Lillies, of each one ounce and an half; the water of an Ashen-stick before-mentioned, one ounce, the white of an Egg beaten to water half an ounce; mix them, and drop some into the Ear, after you have fomented and su-med it.

If you would have it repelling, add Vinegar of Roses to it, but use it with moderation, lest you drive the humors to the Brain.

If the vehemency of the pain constrain you to make use of stupefactive Medicines, mix a scruple of Opium, or an ounce of Oyl of Poppy-seeds, with your former Medicine; but be careful also in the use of this, lest you offend the Brain.

If you see occasion for resolving Medicines, the Oyls of Camomel, Dill, sweet Almonds and Violets; all or either of them may be mixed with your aforesaid Medicine.

If after all this you finde that the Impostume will come to suppuration, you must help Nature therein thus: Take the leaves of Mallows, Nightshade, Camomel and Dill, of each one handful, bruise them well in a Stone-Mortar, boyl them in a quart of milk to the consumption of half, and the Musilage of Line-seed, Fleabane and Fennigreek-seeds, of each one ounce, Ducks and Hens-grease, of each one ounce, the Oyl of Camomel, Roses and Violets, of each one ounce; with the crum of white-bread, as much as is sufficient, make a Cataplasme and apply it. After the Impostume is broken, and the matter run out, you must apply cleansing Medicines, viz. Mix Barly-water, and honey of Roses, and drop it into the Ear.

If the Humor be sharp, and cause an Ulcer, you must after the use of needful Purgings, necessary bleeding, and all requisite Evacuations, make use of cleansing and drying Topicks: Take of the Juice of Beets and Sow-bread, of each one ounce, Horehound, Smallage and Worm-wood, of each half an ounce, Myrrh and Frankincense, of each half a dram, Saffron and Verdegreece, of each one scruple, white-wine and Honey, of each four ounces, boyl it, and scum it till the wine be consumed, then drop of it into the Ear two or three times in a day.

After you have well cleansed it, you must come to cicatrize it: Take of the powder of Galls and burnt-Allum, of each one dram, Frankincense and Myrrh of each half a dram, Gum of Juniper and Sarcocol, of each one scruple: make them into fine Powder, and mix them with White-wine, and drop it into the Ear.

If you find the defluxion  
If the Ulcer  
and the  
Ear. If the  
greeting to  
better Almo  
If any thi  
eat with an  
cannot prev  
the easier c  
if by thar  
Mouth and  
If a Flea be  
tient, make  
the Flea will  
water gette  
cray foot co  
Spunge int  
more till y

AS God  
ber, as  
corruption  
therein, viz  
Polypus, th  
and bleeding  
self, and sp  
Ulcer of the  
Ulcer of the  
of the simpl  
sharp or la  
Wound or  
crimonious  
known and  
but little pe  
fash a Scab  
The Oze  
the Patient

## Chap. 18. *Of the Diseases of the Nostrils.* 79

If you finde that it is fed by defluxion, you must labour to divert the defluxion, as you are taught in the Ninth Chapter of this Book.

If the Ulcer be very foul, you must mix *unguentum Egyptiacum*, and the rust of Iron powdered with White-wine, and drop it into the Ear. If the humor be sharp, and you finde sharp Medicines disagreeing to it, make use of the Oyls and Yelks of Eggs, of sweet and bitter Almonds.

If any thing be fallen into the Ear, you must endeavour to get it out with an Ear-picker, but beware lest you thrust it further. If you cannot prevail so, inject Oyl into the Ear to relax it, that it may the easier come out, and anoint the Ear-picker with Birdlime, and see if by that means you can draw it out: provoke sneezing, with the Mouth and Nostrils shut, and by that means it may be forced out. If a Flea be gotten into the Ear, procure pain and trouble to the Patient, make a little Ball of Dogs-hair, and put it into the Ear, and the Flea will come into it. If by swimming or washing the Head, water getteth into the Ear, and is the cause of pain, hop on the contrary foot to that side, and hold your ear downwards, or put in a dry Sponge into the ear, and as it groweth moist, take it out, and put in more till you be freed.

## CHAP. XVIII.

### *Of the Diseases of the Nostrils.*

**A**S God and Nature hath wisely instituted and ordained this Member, as needful and official to the service of the Body, so the corruption of Nature (by our Fall) hath brought many Distempers therein, *viz.* the Ulcer of the Nostrils, and Ozæna, Sarcoma, and Polypus, the loss of Smelling in the Nose, the Coryza, Sneezing and bleeding; the last of which I shall treat of in a Chapter by it self, and speak briefly of the rest in this Chapter. And first of the Ulcer of the Nostrils, which whilest it is new, is called the simple Ulcer of the Nostrils: when it is old it is called Ozæna. The cause of the simple Ulcer is either internal or external; internal, when a sharp or salt humor floweth to the part: External, either by a Wound or Contusion. The cause of Ozæna, is a malignant and acrimonious humor, or the other Ulcer neglected: they are easily known and distinguished one from the other, the simple Ulcer causeth but little pain, sometimes sends forth blood, and sometimes casteth forth a Scab.

The Ozæna is more painful, foul and stinking, annoying not only the Patient, but all that come near him.

If it turn to a Cancer, it eateth the Gristle of the Nose, and destroyeth the Palate; and for the most part hath its original from the French Pox, or Elephantiasis.

The new Ulcer may be easily cured; the old one hardly. If it turn to a Cancer it is never cured: If it hath its original from the French Pox, or Elephantiasis, it cannot be cured, till the Disease be cured.

For the Cure, you must use convenient Evacuations, Purging and Bleeding, Revulsions and Derivations by Cupping, Vesicatorie, of Causticks applied to the hinder parts; and then strengthen the Head, and withall appoint a good Diet, which may hinder and assuage the sharpness of the humor. This being done, if the Ulcer be covered with a Scab, you must endeavour to take it off gently, and not rashly for fear of a Deluxion of Humors; and to that end you must mollifie the Scab with Oyl of sweet Almonds, or fresh Butter, and warm Water. Then you must cleanse it, by washing it with Barley Water, and if you mix a little Oyl of Roses with it, it will not be the worse: then apply Medicines, which are astringent, as the Oynment of Tū tū, the white Oynment, more commonly known by the Latine Name, *unguentum Album*, the Oyl of the yelks of Eggs; the Oynment of Tobacco is good, being carefully applied.

Ozena must be carefully cleansed, Take of Smiths water half a pint, Barley water four ounces; the juyce of Plantane and Wormwood, of each two Ounces: boil them together, till h. l. be consumed, and scum it carefully: then put in four Ounces of Hōney of Rose; let the diseased often snuff it up into his Nostrils wherein the ulcer is. You may make an Oynment more powerful for this purpose thus: Take of the juyce of ripe Grapes half an ounce, the Peels and Flowers of Pomegranates, of each three drachms; of Myrrh, Allum, and Ladanum, of each two drams; Aloes, Chalcitis, and Frankincense; of each one drachm; the Oyl of Roses, and Myrtles, of each two Ounces, with red wax as much as sufficeth to make an unguent, which apply to the ulcer. Or you may wash it with Allum-Water; and if it want cleansing, mix a little *Aegyptiacum* with it.

The sublimate Water doth dry and cleanse wonderfully, and you may prepare it thus: Take of Crude Sublimate in Powder twelve Grains, put it into four ounces of Plantane water, and boil it to the consumption of half.

Now and then touch it with this Water; When it is thoroughly cleansed, you must prepare Medicines, which are powerful to dry it up.

*Rondeletius* commendeth the smoke of a Wax Candle taken up into the Nose often: or you may make a Fume thus:

Take of Libanum, Benjamins, Hypocistis, Mastick, Myrrh, red Saffron, and



## Chap. 18. Of the Diseases of the Nostrils. 31

and Calamint, Sandarach, Frankincense Bark, and red Arsenick, of each three drams, with Turpentine sufficient to make Troches; of which let the Patient take the Fume Morning and Evening.

Sarcoma and Polypus is a preternatural Tumor, or Excreescency of Flesh in the Nose: The first groweth without shape, like proud flesh; but Polypus springeth as it were from small Roots, and hangeth down to the lower part of the Nose, and sometimes out of the Nose.

If it be rooted high, it sometimes falleth into the passage that goeth into the Palate. It is a spongy soft flesh, white, red, or blew, and it is fuller at the full of the Moon, than at the Change.

The cause of both is a gross Humour coming from the Brain, mixed with blood.

The first for the most part, is easily cured. The second, with more difficulty: The lower it is rooted in the Nostril, the easier may the Cure be effected: If it be soft, white, or red, it is more easily cured: but if hard and blew, it is dangerous. You must prescribe a dry and attenuating Diet: you must purge the Humour you see abound; you must revel and repel the Humours, and strengthen the Head, as you are taught in the foregoing Chapters.

Then you must apply such Medicines to the Tumour as are drying and astringent: If it may not thus be cured, it must be taken off by a Caustick, or by Incision.

But apply the mildest Medicines first; Take the Juice of three fores of Pomegranates; boyl it to the thickness of Honey; apply it often to the Excreescency.

Then make use of this Sublimate Water spoken of before in the Ulcer. This following water is commended by Weckerus. Take of unripe Grapes three pound, Pomgranate Peels and Flowers, and Samach, of each two pound, macerate them in Vinegar, and distil them: then add to the water thus distilled, Alum one pound, Vitriol three Ounces: Distil them again, and with this water often touch the Tumor, for it hath a great power to dry and consume it.

You may make it stronger, if you see occasion, by adding red Arsenick and Sandarach to it: Mercury precipitate, and applied with Honey of Roses with a Tent, is good. You may make an Oyntment thus: Take of Litharge of Silver one dram, Cerus three drams, Pomgranate Peels and Alum, of each two drams, Verdegreise, and Orpiment, of each one dram: powder them, and in good white wine, boyl them to the thickness of Honey: put in a little Oyl or Myrrh, and reserve it in a Leiden Box, and use it as the forenamed Medicines.

The sense of Smelling is either diminished, abolished, or depraved; either by Obstruction, or Astriction. Cold, Moist, and Flegmatick Distempers, may either dull or abolish the Sense of Smelling:

Hence Defluxions upon those parts do hinder the sense. Flegm obstructs and hindereth the sensible passages, viz: the Nostrils, and the Pores of the Brain, the insensible Passages, and the Proccellus Mamillares; or Sarcoma, and Polypus, may hinder the sense by obstructing the Nostrils. Smelling is hindered by Astriction, when Flegm gathered in the Fore-part of the Brain, doth compress the Mamillares, as was said before in the compression of the Optick Nerves. Sometimes this Sense is depraved by some putrefaction, or ulcer in the Nose, or the Meninges, or some of the parts official to this Sense, and thereby hindereth it; or some stinking vapour arising from some other part of the Body, may hinder the exercise of this Office: as the Tongue is depraved by Choler, & maketh all things that are tasted seem bitter, the signs are these: Slimy Flegm coming from the Brain, and cold and moisture oppressing the Brain, shew Flegm to be the cause. If it be from Sarcoma, or Polypus, it is easily discovered. If the matter causing the obstruction be contained in the Nostrils, the speech is hurt also: but it is not so, if it be in the Mamillares, or the fore-part of the Brain. The Cure is divers, according to the diversity of causes: I shall say nothing to it, only give you this general Rule: If it come from a Defluxion, you must proceed, as you are instructed in the cure of a cold Catarrh. If from obstruction, or compression of the Mamillares, I shall refer you to the Chapter, treating of the cold distemper of the Brain for the Cure.

In the 9th Chapter of this Book, treating of a defluxion, I told you if it fell into the Nose, it is a cold Coryza: I think it not amiss, if I here speak a word or two of the nature and cause of it. This Defluxion is caused either by overmuch heat, which doth dissolve the crude Humours gathered in the fore-Ventricles of the Brain; or else by cold, which doth compress and squeez the aforesaid Humours. This is easily known by the Humours flowing through the Nose; and of all Catarrhs, it is the most easie to cure. For the Cure repair to the 9th Chapter: to which add the Vapour of Marjoram, and red Rose-Leaves boiled in Vinegar taken into the Nose. If the Distemper be cold, Take Frankincense, Mastich, Nigella, and the like, thrown upon a Chafindish of Burning Coals, and do as before.

I shall now speak a word or two of Neezing (vulgarly Sneezing) which, though it be looked upon but as a slight effect, not worth mentioning, hath (by reason of a sharp Defluxion) proved not onely troublesome, but dangerous: And hence came the Custome of saying, God bliss you, God save you, or Christ help you, when a man sneezeth. Sneezing is a swift motion of the Brain, by which the Breath is drawn up unto the brain, to force out that which doth offend: for Sneezing belongs to the Natural Expulsive Faculty of the Brain,

and

and in Men  
tural motion  
strengthen the  
which doth  
sneezing up  
from the Brain  
the Air doth  
Humour to  
knowledge of  
the signs of  
As to the  
get, accident  
Coryza, it is  
motion: from  
is prepetual  
series of the  
and causeth a  
Grilles of the  
ning helples  
promote the  
welcome to  
ther.

If Sperm  
ternal cause  
Derivations,  
must bleed,  
fling, you mu  
Spermation  
or warm mat  
and Violent,

This Dise  
I commo  
les in Gask  
dows. The  
Vessels, call  
sending either  
Sometimes

and its Membranes; as it is with the Cough which doth by its natural motion, free the Arteries of the Lungs from Flegm, which obstructeth them. But the proper cause of Sneezing, is a sharp Humor, which doth provoke the inside of the Nostrils; (as 'tis verified, by snuffing up sharp things into the Nostrils.) which Humor cometh from the Brain, or some inferiour parts: sometimes the coldness of the Air doth Act upon and compress the Brain, and caueth a sharp Humor to fall into the Nostrils, which provoketh Sternutation. The knowledge of this Disease is manifest: outward causes appear, and by the signs of the parts affected.

As to the Prognostick, it is naturally and essentially without danger, accidentally it may prove hurtful; namely in the beginning of Coryza, it hindereth the concoction of the Humours by its violent motion: sometimes in Feavers it is violent, and caueth bleeding, and is prejudicial to the Patients strength. In the Pleurisie, and all Diseases of the Lungs it is bad, because it violently pulleth those parts, and caueth a greater inflammation. Yet if there be flegm got into the Gristles of the Lungs which a Cough cannot get out, then is Sneezing helpful. For the most part it is friendly to healthy people, and promileth health in Feavers. It is good in Apoplexies, and always welcome to Women in Travel, or troubled with fits of the Mother.

If Sternutation become Symptomical, you must remove the external cause, or internal, from whence it cometh by Evacuations Derivations, Revulsions, and Discussions: and if you see cause you must bleed, use Frictions, Ligatures, and Cupping. In the mean time, you must labour to take away the sharpness which provoketh to Sternutation: Let your patient snuff up warm milk, warm water, or warm water and Butter mingled, the Oyls of Roses, sweet Almonds, and Violets, which will afford much comfort to the diseased.

## CHAP. XIX.

### Of bleeding at the Nose.

THIS Disease is called *Hæmorrhagiz*, and it is either organical or common; the organical is either the opening of the Vessels called in Greek *avasquasis*; or the rarefaction of them called *διάρρησις*. The common disease is also twofold, either the breaking of the Vessels, called *ρήσις*; or the Erosion called *διελκυσίς*: Blood offending either in quantity or quality is the cause of these distempers. Sometimes external causes concur, as wounds, strokes, falls, vehement



exercise, drunksness, long staying in the Sun. It is also either Critical or Symptomatical: Critical, when Nature dischargeth her self of superfluous blood, sometimes in health, sometimes in Feavers, and sometimes from an inflammation of the Liver or Spleen. Symptomatical is, when filthy blood, caused by the weakness of the Liver, (in a Cronical distemper) is let go by reason of the debility of the retentive faculty; or by the strength of the expulsive faculty expelled, as unprofitable and unnecessary. If the blood flowes by reason of the vein broken, the blood is thick, and floweth continually; if the vein be only opened, the blood is thinner, and floweth by fits. If the veins be eroded or gnawn asunder, the Patient hath had a salt Cautery, or Ulcer or *Cacoehymia*. The causes are easily distinguished by their signs, viz. A red face and eyes with heaviness signifieth plenty of blood. If Cholera or Melancholy be the cause, the blood is corrupt and their proper signs appear in the body. If the weakness of the retentive faculty let it go, the body is weak, the face is pale, or some disease hath preceded, which hath weakened the Liver. If it cometh from an Artery, it cometh with great force, hot, pure and fresh; if from a vein, the contrary appeareth. If it come from the Liver, Spleen, &c. pains, extensions or inflammations in those parts will declare it. If blood issue out of the Nose upon a judicial or critical day, it is a good sign, and is not to be stopped, if it flow not immoderately. But if it happen in the beginning of a Disease, it is symptomatical and dangerous. If the Liver be affected, and the blood issue out at the right Nostril, it is good; and if the Spleen be affected, if the left Nostril bleed it is good: the contrary to any of these happening is bad. If the *Hemorrhagy* continue long, it cooleth the Liver, and causeth a Dropic: Likewise bleeding is very hurtful to Melancholy and Flegmatick people, as also to such who have a Quartan Fever.

For the Cure, you must consider whether the *Hemorrhagy* be Critical or Symptomatical: If it be Symptomatical, you must endeavour suddenly to stop it. If it be Critical, immoderate, and the constitution not able to endure it without prejudice, you must do the like: you must begin with revulsions, of which blood-letting is the chief; you must open a vein on the Arm, on the same side the Nostril is that bleedeth: you may draw as much blood as the strength of the Patient will bear. Apply Cupping-glasses behind to the Shoulders and Arms, to the *Hypochondria*: but make use of this, after sufficient blood-letting, for fear of an inflammation of the Liver.

*Forestus* commendeth the application of Cupping-glasses to the Feet, others commend actual Cautery. Throw cold water into the face on a sudden, which doth repel the Blood. It is good to put a cloath dipt in Vinegar to the Neck behind, another to the Cods, and

to stuff up  
full of it, as  
Vinegar the  
plex with  
some figs, &  
Carapalme  
of all a like  
plaine, whi  
ple. Or the  
anewick, of  
each one ou  
Roses, & Pl  
eeve chas  
a dry Bear  
so the pom  
juice of Net  
hath an ex  
Others co  
net, and pu  
It is com  
faculty m  
gus Draw  
burnt Eggh  
blow it up  
hold the mo  
it with the  
and dip a T  
must make  
the pthemi  
ule it alone  
and Frack  
morning in  
Patient, let  
coagulate,  
Kestell, E  
of Spilum  
arum; Coral  
derthem; C  
the Syrup  
Patient take  
conclude, if  
cured; and

# Chap. 19. Of Bleeding at the Nose. 85

to snuff up Vinegar and water into the Nose, and hold the mouth full of it, as long as any thing is snuffed up: take up the fume of Vinegar thrown upon an hot Iron. Foment the Forehead and Temples with water and Vinegar cold: Vinegar put into the Ear on the same side, on which the bleeding Nostril is, is good. Then apply a Cataplasme made with the juice of Plantane, Nighthshade, Vinegar, of all a like quantity, and Bole-armenick sufficient to make a Cataplasme, which must be laid to the Forehead, from Temple to Temple. Or thus, Take of *Sanguis Draconis*, *Terra Sigillata*, and *Bole-armenick*, of each a dram, *Rose Vinegar*, and the juice of Nighthshade, of each one ounce; the Whites of two Eggs, with the distilled water of Red Roses, & Plantane, make a Cataplasme, and apply it as before. If you perceive that the veins of your Forehead are swelled, bind a six-pence, or a dry Bean slit upon the root of the Nose between the Eye-brows. Also the powder of Hoggs-dung blown into the Nose, or mixed with the juice of Nettles, and a Tent dipped in it, and put up into the Nose, hath an excellent property to stop bleeding.

Others commend the Powder of a dried Toad, put in fine red Sarsnet, and put under the Arm-pits, or held in the hand.

It is convenient likewise to make use of those things, which have a faculty to close and glutinate the Veins, Take of *Bole-armenick*, *Sanguis Draconis*, *Aloes* and *Cobwebs* of each two scruples, white Vitriol, burnt Eggshells and Paper, of each one scruple, powder them finely, and blow it up into the Nostrils. To prevent its coming into the mouth, hold the mouth full of cold water and vinegar; or els you may mix it with the whites of Eggs beaten to water, and the juice of Plantane, and dip a Tent in it and apply it. If hitherto you are successles, you must make use of Escharotick Medicines, of which burnt Vitriol claims the preheminency, powdered and used as before: but if you fear to use it alone, add the same quantity of Dragons blood, *Bole-armenick*, and *Frankincense*. A dram of the powder of Spicknard drunk in the morning in broth is very good. If the Disease doth often invade the Patient, let him make use of inward Medicines, which have power to coagulate, thicken, cool, bind and retain its motion: Take of dried *Knotgass*, *Funitory*, and *Bistort* root, of each half an ounce; the *Troches* of *Spodium* and *Amber*, *Terra Sigillata*, and *Sal-prmella*, of each half a dram; *Coral*, burnt *Harts-horn*, and *Bloodstone*, of each one scruple, powder them; Conserve of *Roses*, and *Quinces*, of each two ounces, with the Syrup of the juice of Plantane, make an Opiate, of which let the Patient take the quantity of a Nutmeg, five or six times in a day. To conclude, if it be inveterate let the peccant humor be diligently evacuated; and if it hath its original from the disaffection of any other

part,

part, as the Liver, Spleen, Womb, Kidneys, &c. let that be considered and their Cures sought in their proper Chapters.

# CHAP. XX.

## Of the Diseases of the Tongue.

**T**He Tongue being the chief instrument of speech and tast, a very necessary (though unruly) member, it is not amiss if we consider, and briefly treat of the distempers incident to it, by which the actions are hindered. This member is subject to inflammation and Tumors, which have their original either from pure Choleric, Flegmatick, or Melancholy blood. If pure blood cause the inflammation, there is pain felt with heat and redness of the Tongue and Face; and this is a true Flegmon. If the Tumor hath its original from Choler, then it is called *Erysipilas*: if from Flegm, *Oedema*: if from Melancholy, *Schirrhus*: All which may be discovered by the humor predominate, and shall be more plainly discovered in the next Book, where I shall treat of Tumors and their kinds. These Tumors are sometimes onely troublesome, but do not oftentimes endanger life, except they grow so big, that the body is endangered by suffocation, or a malignant melancholy humor, do breed a Cancer, which may be discovered by its hardness, blewiness, and pricking pain: you must begin the Cure with blood-letting, and (if you can come at it) open the vein under the Tongue; afterwards if you see occasion, open a Vein in the Arm, and draw away as much blood as the Patient's strength will permit. You must purge the humor with convenient Purgatives, or administer a sharp Clyster: Some do draw back the humors by Cupping-glasses fastened to the shoulders, or a little one under the Chin. Cooling and repelling Gargarisms must be used, and you may prepare them thus: Take of distilled water or decoction of Plantane, Nigbshade, and Sorrel, of each four ounces; the syrups of Mulberries, Pomegranats, and Lemmons, of each one ounce; let the Patient often wash his Tongue. *Zincus Lusitanus* commendeth the application of Horshatches to the Tongue. If you find it inclineable to suppuration, you must help Nature, for which purpose this Gargarism is good: Take Violet leaves, Mallows and Parsley, of each one handfull, whole Barley four ounces, Figs, and Raisins stoned, of each three ounces; the seed of flax, and Fenugreek, of each one ounce: Spring water a quart, boyl it to the Consumption of half, strain it, and add four ounces of the Syrup of Fijubes; use it as the other before. When the hu-

mors



# Chap. 20. Of the Diseases of the Tongue. 87

mors are suppurate, if it break not, make incision, then cleanse it with Plantane-water, and Honey of Roses.

There is another Tumor under the Tongue, called by the Greeks Βάργαξ, by the Latines *Ranula*, because it representeth the hinder part of a Frog, also because they are thus affected, when they speak, do Croak like a Frog. This humor is a loose and soft carnosity under the Tongue, the tumor therein contained is sometimes hot, though for the most part it is cold, slimy, and pituitous matter, which when it is opened, is like the white of an Egg, sometimes mixed with yellow. This Disease is not (for the most part) accounted dangerous, unless it be in a Child, or the humour be Cancerous. If nothing prohibit, you must begin the Cure with blood-letting, that so the humors may be the more obedient: you must likewise purge the peccant humors with discretion: Then you may endeavour to dissolve and discuss the humor, thus, Take of green Mugwort, and Hyssop, of each one handful, Common Salt, and Salt Armoniack, of each two drams: Galls one dram, beat them well together, rub the place often with it. But if it submit not to this way of Cure (as it seldom doth) you must open it with a large Orifice, and if you open it on both sides, it will be the better: Some commend a Cautery of iron; after you have opened it, squeeze out the matter with your finger, then wash it with white-Wine and Honey of Roses: Or thus, Take of white-wine and Plantane water, of each two ounces; dissolve a dram of Allum, then add twenty drops of the Oyl of Sulphur, with an ounce of Syrup of Mulberries; make a Lotion, and wash the place till it be whole. Sometimes the Tongue suffereth a Palsie, by which it is deprived of its motion. Sometimes it followeth an Apoplexy, and sometimes it is joyned with a Palsie, which afflicts half the body; sometimes it is only in the Tongue, when its Nerves and moving Muscles are prejudiced by some moist or pituitous matter.

Sometimes those Nerves may be cut, and the Palsie may follow: Avicen confirmeth this Opinion, by an Example in his time, of a certain man being cupped, and scarrified, by which the small Nerve was cut, and caused a relaxation of the Tongue.

If this Palsie follow an Apoplexy, and the other parts of the body be affected, and the Patient be old, it is incurable.

If you have hopes of recovery, you must take away the Antecedent cause lodging in the Brain; and you must dissolve and discuss the conjunct cause, viz. the humors which obstruct the Nerves, and hinder the motion of the Tongue.

If you see occasion, you may make use of Phlebotomy; it profiteth much to open a Vein under the Tongue: you may purge with Pills, or Cephalick Apozems, you may rarifie the humours by sweating,

drinks; cuppings, vesicatories, Cauteries may be applied: for discussing and drawing forth of the humor, let Gargarisms, Masticatories, and Ershines be followed, for strengthening the Brain, and dispersing offending humors therein contained; make use of Fumigations, Powders, and Quilts for the head; for the making and application of which, I refer you to the Second Chapter of this Book.

## CHAP. XXI.

### Of the Diseases of the Teeth.

**T**HE Teeth also are subject to Distempers, viz. the ache, and foulness, and rottenness: The Tooth-ache is caused by a Flux of Humours either hot or cold, which flow to the Membrane, Nerves, or to the substance of the Teeth: Sometimes Worms are bred in hollow and rotten Teeth, of an Excrementitious Humor, which causeth pain: sometimes Wind contained between the Cavity and the Nerve, doth cause pain.

The External Causes are cold Air and South Winds: Likewise the debility of the part, as hollowness, or rottenness of the Teeth do sometimes cause pain.

Every cause is known by its proper sign; for if a hot humor falling upon the part be the cause, the pain is more violent, the Patient is sensible of heat, about the Teeth and Gums; hot Medicines encrease pain.

Signs contrary to these do declare the Humor peccant to be cold.

If the cause be Worms, the pain is with intermission, and their motion may be felt. If Wind cause the pain, it is exceeding violent with sensible extension, yet quickly ending, after the use of discussing Medicines.

If it be a hot Humor, that causeth the Tooth-ach, it is good to open a Vein on the same side, by which the Humors are revell'd; and though the humor be cold, yet Phlebotomy may be needful to reveal the Diffusion, but it must be regulated according to the age and strength of the Patient.

The next day you may purge the Humor that principally offendeth; Cupping is sometimes requisite, and for the most part Vesicatories to the Neck and behind the Ears are successful to draw back the humours.

Astringent Medicines to the Temples are good to hinder the Diffusion; of Plaisters these are good, *Emplastrum de Mastiche, ad Heriam*, and *Gum Elemi* spread and applied to the Temples, and behind the Ears:

Riverius

## Chap. 21. Of the Diseases of the Teeth. 89

*Rivierius* commendeth the Root of Comfrey, bruised and applied as before, to hinder the *Defluxion*.

*Rivierius*, Physician to Henry the Great commendeth this Plaster; Take of *Cypress Nuts*, red *Roses*, Mustard seed torrifed, Mastich, and *Terra Sigillata*, of each one dram and an half: steep them in Vinegar of *Roses* twenty four hours, and then dry them; *Opium* three drams, dissolved in *Aqua-vitæ*; Pitch and *Colophonia*, of each one dram; Yellow Wax, melted in the expressed Oyl of *Henbane*, and white Poppy, as much as is sufficient to make an Emplaster, which must be applied as before.

The Oyl of Bitter Almonds, or Vinegar, put into the Ear, is good to stay the *Defluxion*, if it proceed from a hot Cause.

If the Humors be cold, put the Oyl of Rue, or a Clove of Garlick into the Ear, and wash the Teeth with Red Wine, wherein is boiled the Roots of Bistort, Cinquefoil, Tormentil, the Leaves of Vervain, Penny-royal, and Galls, and anoint the Cheeks, or the Check on the same side, with the Oyls of Carnomil, Rue or *Roses*, to assuage the pain.

If the Tooth-ach come from a hot cause, boil the Leaves of *Henbane*, spotted *Arsmart*, *Houfseek*, and *Nettle-Roots* in Vinegar, and wash the Teeth: and to assuage pain, anoint the Cheeks with the Oyl of Lillies, *Roses*, sweet Almonds: Or you may make a Cataplasm with Barley and Bean-meal, the juyce of *Houfseek* and Milk, and the aforesaid Oyls; and if you add a small quantity of *Opium* to it, it will not be amiss.

But take this Caution, That if the Cheeks be swelled, beware how you apply Cataplasms, lest the Humors be repelled, and do fall into the Throat.

Many find ease by Masticatories, by which they draw much Rheum from the Teeth; Take of Mastich, and Pellitory of Spain, of each a dram; the seed of *Henbane*, *Stavesacre* and Pepper, of each half a dram: Powder them, and sew them up in Linnen Bags, like little Balls, and chew them.

If the Teeth be hollow, the Oyls of Cloves, Camphire, Tobacco, Box, and Hazel-Nuts, are good, if a little Lint dipt in any of them, be put into the hollow Tooth.

If the pain cease not, add *Laudanum* and *Opium*; for sometimes Narcotics by stupefaction do give ease, when other means have failed. Sometimes all Medicines can do no good, till the Nerve in the hollow Tooth be burned with an actual Cautery. This may be done with *Aqua fortis*, or safer with Oyl of Vitriol: but be well advised, before you operate with things of this Nature.

If Worms be in the hollow Tooth, Take of Aloes two scruples, Camphire one scruple, *Aqua-Vitæ* one scruple, the Oyl of Vitriol, and Tobacco



*Tobacco, of each three drops: mix them, and with Lint dipped in it, apply it.*

If all the Medigines prescribed take not away the pain of the hollow Teeth, you must draw it out; but beware of drawing Teeth, when the Defluxion is great, the Head aketh, or the Gums swell: Draw not a Tooth violently, lest you injure the Jaw-bone, or cause a Flux of blood, which may prove dangerous: but if such a thing should happen, and the blood not easie to be stetched, you must apply Burnt Vitriol to the Gum, and dip Lint in Vinegar, and lay thereon; or if you see cause, you must burn the Nerve with an actual Cautery.

Many people have their Teeth disfigured, by black or yellow Humours cleaving to them, which in time make them rotten: this is caused sometimes by a Defluxion of humors into the Teeth, by Distempers of the Stomach, and evil nourishment thence arising.

Sometimes the Scurvy is the cause: For the Cure, it is requisite, that the antecedent cause be removed by purging and other Remedies; and that things that corrupt the Teeth be abstained from, especially things that are sweet. Many are the Medicines prescribed to make the Teeth white; as Coral White and Red powdered, Tobacco Ashes, and the Ashes of Vine Branches burnt, burnt Allum, and many more: That which I have found to be the most excellent, is the Oyl of Vitriol, mixed with Spring-Water, and the Teeth washed therewith: Some say the Oyl of Sulphur hath the same vertue.

## CHAP. XXII.

### Of the Diseases of the Gums.

Sometimes sharp and corroding humors, flowing from the Brain, or occasioned by some Defect of the Stomach, Liver, or Spleen, may cause an Erosion or ulceration of the Gums: This Disease is easily known, you must purge the humor offending, and if the cause be in the Liver, Spleen, &c. you must endeavour to remove it: the Flux must be diverted from the part affected by convenient Revolutions. Then you must apply Topical Medicines, that are astringent and drying: Take of Acorn cups, Galls and Allum, of each one dram; Sanguis Draconis, Burnt Harts-horn, Red Roses, of each two scruples; Sugar-Candy, Tobacco-Ashes, and Myrrh, of each one scruple, powder them all: the white of one Egg beaten to water, with as much honey as sufficeth to make it into the form of a soft Ointment; spread it upon a Rag, and apply it. The Oyl of Vitriol, or Sulphur, mentioned in the former

Chapter,

## Chap. 23. Of the Ulcers of the Mouth.

91

Chapter, may be here applied, as is there described; or a few drops mixed with the foregoing Medicine.

Sometimes a fleshy excrecence is generated upon the Gum, and in time groweth so big, that it hindereth the speech. *Fernelius* saith, That it hath its original from an Ulcer not well healed: See *Fern. lib. 7. pag. 340.* Sometimes it groweth to a Cancer, It must be taken off by a careful and well-skilled Chyrurgion, and afterwards burne with a Cautey, or the Oyl of Vitriol.

Some cure it thus, after purging, and sufficient revulsions to divert the defluxion of humors, they tie a double thread about it, close to the Gum so straight, that in time it falleth off; then use your Cautey as before to prevent its growth again.

## C H A P. XXIII.

### Of the ulcers of the Mouth.

**I**N the upper part of the Mouth, there are certain Ulcers bred, called by the Greeks *Ἀφθῆ*, we call it *Trush*, vulgarly *Thrush*; it is most common to Children presently after they are born, caused by the sharpness of the milk, or by reason of the milk corrupting in the Stomach, for want of good digesture; sometimes they happen to men of ripe years: they are more or less dangerous, as they exceed in quantity or quality: their bigness may be discovered by the Eye; also how deep and putrid they be: their colour declareth the quality of the humor, which is the cause of them. If *Flegm* be the cause, the *Trush* is white, and easily cured. If yellow, *Choler* is the cause, and 'tis harder to cure. If red, blood predominateth. If black, *Melancholy* is the cause, and 'tis the worst and hardest to cure. It cometh sometimes by reason of a foul Disease in the body, or when the Patient hath got the *French Pox*.

For the Cure, if it be in Children, you must wash the mouth often with Plantane water, and Syrup of Mulberries, or dried Roses: if you find that too weak, and some Allum to it: Let the Nurse eat such things as are cooling and drying; as Pears, Medlars, and Services, Marmalade of Quinces is very good in this case; let her likewise make use of Lettuce, Purslane, and other cooling herbs: and if need require, let her bleed and Purge. If your Patient be a man, and the Disease be stronger, and more violent, after the use of mild Medicines, you must proceed higher: If he hath the *French Pox*, he must be freed from that, or else you labour in vain. Generally you must consider what humor offendeth, and purge that; you must bleed, and use

use such revulsions as necessity calls for. Then you must make a decoction of Plantane, Bramble, Violet, and Strawberry-leaves, Pomegranate-flowers, &c. add Allum, and the Syrups before mentioned, and wash the mouth with it: if you find that it healeth not, dip a little Lint in Oyl of Vitriol, and often touch it. If there be an inflammation, add to the before-mentioned decoction, the juyce of Purslane, Horfleeke, and Nightshade; or the Macilage of Quince-seeds, or the emulsion of the cold seeds. If you find an extraordinary defluxion, and your Patient want sleep, administer Laudanum, the Dose regulated according to the age and strength of your Patient.

## C H A P. XXIV.

*Of a loose Columella, and the inflammation thereof, and diseases of the Tonsils.*

**T**He *Columella*, or the *uvula* is relaxed or loosened by a waterish humor falling upon it, which doth so moisten and soften it, that it is extended to the upper part of the Wezand, and causeth a Nautiousness, and the Patient often striveth to swallow it, by which it may be known, as also by looking into the mouth. You must make use of such Evacuations, Revulsions, Derivers and Repellers, as are prescribed in the Ninth Chapter of a Catarrh. And you must make use of Gargarisms which restrain and dry: Take of Plantane, Purslane, and Shepherds Purse, of each one handful; Cypress-Nuts, Pomegranate flowers, and red Roses, of each one ounce; Galls and Allum, of each one dram: boyl them in a quart of Spring-water, to the consumption of half: strain it out, and add to it Bole-armenick a dram; Syrup of Mulberries, and Honey of Roses, of each one ounce; gargarise the mouth therewith. Powders are better, which have an astringent and drying property: Take the roots of Bistort, Flower-de-luce and Tormentil, the Flowers of Pomegranates, and Red Roses, of each half an ounce; Burnt Allum, and long Pepper, of each one scruple: make them into fine powder, and (depressing the Tongue) blow it upon the *uvula*. If this doth not perfect the cure, the superfluity must be cut off; this operation must be performed very warily; for if you cut too much, it will be prejudicial to the speech: if there be an inflammation in the *Columella*, you must extenuate such accidents before you cut it, lest a greater inflammation follow, or a Flux of Blood: If the *uvula* be greater at the bottom than it is at the top, than it is fitter and safer to cut. If the *uvula* be only inflamed, you must make use of such Medicines as are prescribed for the cure of the inflammation of the Tongue.

There



There are other distempers of the Throat, viz. the Inflammation and Ulcers of the Tonsils or Almonds of the Throat occasioned by a defluxion of crude phlegmatick and viscid humors mixed with blood, or by excessive drinking of Wine or strong Liquors, or by a greedy devouring of meat: they who are thus afflicted, swallow with much difficulty and pain, and many times have a Fever. For the cure, administer a cooling Clyster, open the Vein under the tongue, and if blood abound, open the Cephalick Vein in the Arm: use all other convenient Revulsions, then make a Cataplasim of Barley-meal, the Seed of Flax and Fenugreek, and the leaves of Mallows bruised, with new Milk sufficient, and apply it to the Throat, then use astringent Gargarisms; you have examples enough in the foregoing Chapters: If the Inflammation increaseth and the pain be sharp and vehement in the Evening, then expect suppuration; then you must further it by gargarising with a decoction made of Hyssop, Figs, and the seeds of Marsh-mallows, or with Aquamulsa. When it is perfectly rotten, squeeze it gently that the matter may run forth, or else open it with a sharp Instrument, and let the Patient hold his head down, that the matter may the better run out, then wash it again with Aquamulsa till it be healed. For the cure of the Ulcers of the Tonsils, you must observe the same rules prescribed for the cure of the Ulcers of the mouth.

## CHAP. XXV.

## Of the Quinzie:

**A** Ngina, or the Quinzy is a disease of the Jaws and Throat, by which breathing and swallowing are hindered, without defect of the Breast and Lungs: there are two sorts of Quinzies, Legitimate and Bastard; Legitimate Quinzy is accompanied with a Fever and inflammation of the part, which Galen and the ancient Greeks have divided into four sorts; the first they called *κρυψήχνη*, when the inflammation is in the inward and proper Muscles of the Larynx: the second they called *συνεψήχνη*, and the outward Muscles of the Larynx are inflamed: the third, they called *παπακρυψήχνη*, and the interior Muscles of the Larynx are inflamed; the last, they called *μεγακρυψήχνη*, because the exterior Muscles of the Jaws are inflamed: A Bastard Angina or Quinzy cometh without a Fever.

The cause of the first is blood, either pure or mixed with Choler, Flegm or Melancholly, flowing from the Head to the jugular Veins. The cause of the Bastard Angina is caused by much Slegm falling into

into the jugular Veins, and by its glewiness obstructing the passage of the Spirits; or by a Tumor in the Vertebrae of the Neck, caused by a flux of cold flegm removing the Vertebrae from its proper seat, or causing a luxation thereof by loosening their Nerves and making them slippery between the Joynts. Or lastly, this may happen by some fall or stroke, or some external cause.

The legitimate Quinzy may be known by the difficult swallowing and breathing, without fault of the Breast or Lungs, pain about the Jaws and Throat, redness, heat and a fever; their sorts may be distinguished by their proper signs. In the first, there is great hindrance of respiration, the patient is almost strangled, cannot breathe except he open his mouth and hold his Neck straight. In the second, there is less difficulty of breathing but greater of swallowing, especially of drink which flyeth out at the Nose. In the third, there is some red Tumor about the Jaws, less difficulty of breathing than in the first, but more than in the second. The last doth hinder the breath but little, or not at all, the outward parts of the Neck are red and painful.

The bastard *Anginæ* may be known by the abundance of flegm, and humors flowing to the mouth: If it comes by Luxation, the motion of the Head and Neck is hurt, and a preternatural cavity appeareth in the Neck: I shall not need to spend time to shew the sign of every distinct humor predominating, reason or other parts of this Book will inform you.

A Legitimate Quinzy is an acute Disease and very dangerous, for want of freedom in respiration; therefore the first is worst, and the Patient in most danger of strangling: the other are more or less dangerous as they more or less hinder respiration. If the matter fall upon the Lungs, or the swelling vanish away, without critical or artificial Evacuation, it is very dangerous, and for the most part deadly. If the Patient foam at the mouth, it is a sign of death saith Hippocrates in his 43 Aphorism, because it is a sign of streightness and violent heat about the heart, which squeezeth the moisture out of the Lungs and sendeth it to the mouth in a foam.

Every Quinzy requireth a hasty and speedy cure, for it sometimes killeth in one day, read *Fernelius, Lib. 5. pag. 284.* Let the Physician open the Cephalick Vein, and if the body be naturally Plethorick, and blood the cause of the disease, draw as much as the Patients strength will bear, and reiterate Phlebotomy according as necessity requireth: give a Clyster first, or after, or both, or as often as need requireth: you must speedily make use of other Revulsions, as Cupping-glasses with scarification to the Shoulders, Vesicatories, Frictions and Ligatures to the lower parts, Purges must be administered, and if you

you finde the case desperate, you need not question the time of the day. *Trallianus* reporteth that he was forced to open a Vein, and to purge the same day, or else his Patient had been strangled. To derive the humour from the part, it is good to open the Veins under the Tongue called *Ramula*. If the case be desperate, open the jugular Vein, and if the blood cannot be stopped, make use of *Gilens* Emplaister against a flux of blood. You must make use of Gargarisms which have power to allay the inflammation, and somewhat to repel: Take the leaves of *Plantane*, *Nightshade*, *woodbine*, *Strawberry* and *Cinquefoil*, of each one handful; the flowers of red *Roses* and *Pomegranates*, of each one Puzil; boyl them in a quart of running water to a pint, strain it and add four ounces of Syrup of *Mulberries*. But beware lest repelling Medicines drive the matter to the Lungs. The Oyl of *Vitriol* mixed with water, sufficient to allay its sharpness, often taken is good to allay the inflammation of the Stomach, liver and Veins, also the parts inflamed in this distemper: then you must apply loosening and resolving Liniments, adding such things as ease pain: Take of the juyce of *Mallows*, *Camomel* and *Orpine*, of each two ounces: the oyl of *Camomel*, *sweet Almonds*, and *Lillies*, of each one ounce: *Hens-grease* and fresh *Butter*, of each three ounces: boyl it to the consumption of the Juyces and make a Liniment. You must apply such things as have power to dissolve, among those which have a peculiar property against the Quinzy, as *Riverius* teacheth: Take of a *Swallows-Nest* and *Album græcum*, of each half a dram, powder them: *Flower-de-luce* and *Camomel*, of each half a dram: *Hens-grease*, and Oyl of *Lillies*, of each one ounce: yellow wax a little, make a Liniment. *Orpine* hath a peculiar faculty against the Quinzy, if the bruised Herb be outwardly applied; and the juyce sweetened with Honey often swallowed. Let us not forget the old and vulgar Medicine, viz. *Album græcum* and Honey mixed, and administered like a Lohock. For squeemish stomachs, or such as delight in dearer Medicines, you may prepare this Lohock; Take of *Species Diatragacanthum frigidum*, and *Diapenidion*, of each one ounce, *Lohock Epinis*, & *Sanum* & *Expertum*, of each half an ounce, mix them, and with the Syrup of *Mulberries* and *Jujubes* sufficient, make a Lohock, and take as before. If it tend to Suppuration, make use of the first Liniment prescribed in this Chapter: *Cassia* newly drawn, held in the mouth and gently swallowed, easeth pain, and maceraterh the humors; when it is ripe and will not easily break, you must open it with a crooked Incision-knife, or drop a little Oyl of *Vitriol* upon it, when it is open, let the Patient hold down his head that the matter may run forth, then wash it often with *Barley-water* and honey of *Roses*.



## CHAP. XXVI.

## Of the Asthma.

**A**sthma is a difficulty and shortness of breathing, which cometh from the stuffing of the Lungs, and the obstruction of the Bronchion gristles of the wind-pipe, and is naturally without a Fever; yet sometimes it may be joyned therewith. This Disease is divided into three sorts, the first is called in Greek *ὑστερία*: this is a difficulty of breathing; caused by the stuffing of the substance of the Lungs, and not the Gristles, and is not accompanied with snorting, and this is the least of the three. The second is called *ἄσθμα*, when the Bronchia of the Lungs are filled with slegm and do make a great noise with snorting and wheezing, in which the Diaphragma and the Intercoastal Muscles between the Ribs and the Abdomen are violently moved. The third is called *σπέννια*, in which the Patient fetcheth his breath with much difficulty, with his Neck stretched upright; the aforesaid Muscles, together with the Muscles of the Breast and shoulders violently moved. This Disease is caused for the most part from slegm, which falleth from the Head into the Lungs, and obstructeth the Wind-pipe: sometimes humors brought thither by Arteria Venosa, flow to the Bronchia, and causeth Asthma with snorting, but if they fall into the substance themselves, or into the smooth Arteries, it causeth an Asthma without snorting. There needeth no more signs for the discovery of this Disease, than what may be gathered from its description. As to the Prognostick, I say, that this Disease is Chronical and hard to be cured, unless the Patient be young and of a strong constitution: if a Child hath this disease, if it be not speedily removed, it dieth of a Catarrh. In men it ends in Cachexia or the Dropsie, if it turn to a Pleurisie or Peripneumonia, it is deadly.

You may begin the Cure with blood-letting if the body be plethorick or corpulent, for when the Veins are empty of blood the respiration is free. But you must beware of Phlebotomy in such bodies where you fear diminishing the natural heat, lest slegm increase. You may open the Saphæna or Ancle-vein without danger; you must in the next place purge the head of phlegmatick humors, which are prescribed in the second Chapter of this Book. It oftentimes hath been proved that vomiting is good in this case, that the Stomach may be emptied of slegm and thick vapours, which pushing up the Stomach compresseth the Diaphragma, and causeth difficulty of breathing: one Ounce of Tobacco-water sweetned with Sugar, will cleanse the

Stomach

Stomach by vomit : let the Physician be careful how he administred Vomits to weak people. Sharp Clifters are good in this disease, for revulsion ; but let them be given in small quantities, lest the fullness of the Bowels compress the Diaphragma. The Patient must make use of such things as extenuate and make thin the humors, Take of Colts-foot-water two ounces, Cinnamon-water, one ounce ; with an ounce of Oxymel Simplex, and take it in the morning. Then let him make use of such as have an expectorating quality : Take of the powder Diatrachanthum Frigidum, the powder of Liquorish and Colts-foots of each one dram : the roots of Elecampane and Marsh-mallows candied, Conserve of Roses and Violets, of each half a dram, the flour of Brimstone, and Sugar-Candy, of each a scruple ; with Oyl of sweet Almonds, (newly drawn) and Syrup of Maidenhair, make a Lohock. And let the Patient take the quantity of a Nutmeg Morning and Evening, and half so much every two hours : this I have often given with good success. In the extremity of the Fit, rub the Breast with a Cloth to open the pores, and then anoint it with this following Oyntment. Take of the Oyl of Chamomil, Oil, Rue, and sweet Almonds, of each two drams ; the Roots of Elecampane, and Flower-de-luce in powder, of each one dram ; the meal of Flax seed and Fenugreek a dram, Saffron one scruple, with wax sufficient, make an Oyntment. Out of the Fit, to perfect the Cure, you must endeavor to stop the defluxion, and to cleanse the Lungs. For the first, you may find sufficient Remedies in the ninth Chapter of this Book, adding such which respect the Breast to them : Let your Medicines not be too drying, lest they thicken the humors, and encrease the Disease. Then you must endeavour to unstuff and cleanse the Lungs and wind-pipe, with the beforenamed Lohock, or of the like nature. I could insert many, which I omit for brevity sake : Quercetanus his Syrup of Tobacco is very good : the Tincture of dried Tobacco as much as a pease held in the mouth, and swallowed by degrees, draweth abundance of Slegm out of the stomach and Lungs : or if you take Tobacco in a pipe, it is good. The Juycce of red Coleworts made up into a Syrup, and a little Spirit of Sulphur added to it, may be taken an ounce in the Morning. Or you may make Tablets of great vertue thus : Take of the Roots of Elecampane and Liquorish, of each one ounce ; the leaves of Colts-foots, Maidenhair, Scabious, and woodbetony, of each a dram ; Lac Sulphur is two drams, Saffron two scruples ; make them all into fine powder ; and with the Mucilage of Gum Tragacanth made with Colts-foot water make Tablets, which let the Patient hold in his mouth often. Platerus highly commendeth the preparation of a Cock thus : Take an old Cock, kill, scald and draw him ; stuff him with these things following, For Lungs

Elecampane

Elecampane one dram, Hyssop, Savory, Horehound, Thyme, Calamint, Pennyroyal dried, of each one dram : the Seeds of Fennel and Anise, of each one dram ; Carthamus Seeds bruised, and the Roots of Poly-pody, of each half an ounce, White Tartar one dram, Salt half an ounce, the Yelks of two Eggs, fresh Butter half an ounce ; Cut and bruise them according to the precepts of Pharmacy, and sew them up into the Belly of the Cock, boyl him (in a large Vessel, and so much water as will cover him, and no more ) till his flesh come off from his bones ; strain it, and add to every ten Pints, one pound of Honey, that it may not quickly corrupt : Let the Asthmatick person take a Porringer full every morning, in which dissolve of Manna and Cassia newly drwan, of each half an ounce. It will be the better, if presently after he take a dram of Venus Turpentine with Penids, in form of a Bolus, or otherwise. The Patient may continue taking this Cock-Broth a moneth, or longer.

## CHAP. XXVII.

## Of the Pleurisie and inflammation of the Lungs.

**A** Pleurisie is an inflammation of the Membrane Pleura, and the internal intercostal muscles, girding the sides within ; the Greeks call it Πλευρητις, and the Latins also *Pluritis*. the matter causing this Ducale, for the most part is Cholerick Blood, which doth easily penetrate the Membrane, but seeing other humors may cause it ; it is either Sanguineous, Cholerick, Phlegmatick or Melancholick : but what ever the humor offending be, Choler, it hath for its Vehicle. The signs of a Plurisie ( according to Galea ) are five : First, a pricking pain of the side, caused by a Cholerick humor in the Membrane, extending it self either towards the throat, or the Hypochondria. Secondly, a continual sharp Fever, which is either Symptomatical coming from some Sanguineous Tumor about the part ; or essential, that is, when a Fever first invadeth the Patient, and the boiling blood is expelled to those parts. Thirdly, difficulty of breathing, because the heart being inflamed as well as the rest, greedily desireth refreshment ; and the parts inflamed cannot sufficiently distend themselves to draw in the cold air. Fourthly, a hard Pulse like a Saw ; which is caused by the stretching out of the Membrane, by which defect the Arteries are distended. Fifthly and lastly, an often and troublesome Cough ; because nature doth strive to expel those troublesome humors from the part affected ; also some of the matter sweateth from thence into the Lungs, which causeth a Cough



Cough. I might add here another sign, viz. Spitting of blood or bloody matter; but because it happeneth not in all Pleurisies, nor at all times, I omit it. You may partly judge of the humor peccant by the constitution of the Patient, and season of the Year. The particular signs are first of blood, bloody spittle, stretching and pricking pains, full veins, especially about the Temples; red Urine, and the like. Signs of Choler are, yellow spittle, a burning Fever, a hard and quick pulse, the pain more acute and pricking, restlessness, bitterness of the mouth, and yellow Urine. The signs that shew Phlegm are much sweet and frothy Spittle, the Fever remits, little thirst, the pain heavy, but not violent, the pulse not so hard, the Urine white and thick, the Spittle black and tough, the pain and Fever moderate, a dry Cough, the tongue black and rough; the belly bound, the Urine red and dark, are signs of Melancholly. As to the Prognostick I say, This disease afflicting old men, women with child, Asthmatical persons, or such as have had it often, is dangerous. If the Fever being violent, the breath fetched with difficulty, the Cough raiseth up no matter, or the Spittle very bloody, or very white, and glutinating, green, rustick black, much Spitting, and yet the pain abates not; the Spitting ceaseth, and the pain continueth; all these are dangerous signs. On the contrary, plentiful vomiting, Choler in the beginning of the disease; blood or Choler mixed with the spittle, &c. are good signs.

The Cure of a Pleurisie, consists in the revelling, deriving, dissolving, digesting, maturing, and expectorating the peccant humors: If the Fever be essential, seek its cure in its proper places. Bleeding is a very natural remedy for a Pleurisie, which you must moderate, according to the constitution and strength of your Patient, and the violent or remiss symptoms. If your Patient spit freely, forbear blood letting, lest his spitting be stayed, and his life endangered. Twice or thrice in a day, or oftener, as you see occasion, administered cooling Juleps, to restrain the heat of the boiling humors: make a Julep of Poppy-water and Syrup of Violets. After bleeding prepare a fomentation. Take of Mallows, Violet leaves, Chamomil, Pellitory of the wall, of each one handful, the roots of Marsh mallows, and Lillies of each four ounces, the seeds of Flax, Commion and Fenugreek, of each one dram; boyl them well, and put them with the liquor into a Hogs bladder, and foment the side, afterwards anoint it with this following Liniment: Take of fresh butter and Hens grease, of each two ounces, the Oyls of Chamomile, Lillies, Dill and sweet Almonds, of each half an ounce: The Chymical oyl of wax a scruple, mix them, and make a Liniment. Some slit a live Hen, and apply it: some the Lungs, or the pance of

a sheep hot : others apply hot bread out of the Oven, dipped in Butter. Then you may make an Emulsion of Blanched Almonds, and the great cold seeds, thus : Take of Almonds blanched and steeped in Coltsfoot water, one ounce ; the four great cold seeds, of each half an ounce ; the Seeds of Lettuce and white Poppy, of each one dram : beat them in a Marble mortar, powring on by degrees the decoction of Barley, Liquorish and Plantane, a Pint and an half, strain it out, and dissolve Syrup of Jujubes, two ounces ; Syrup of Violets, one ounce ; make an Emulsion for three doses, give it Morning and Evening. If his Cough be violent, let him alwayes have in his mouth Sugar of Roses, Sugar=Candy or Penids, or the Tablets of Diarragacanthum Frigidum, or with Syrup of Violets and Jujubes you may make it into the Form of an Eclegma or Lohock. If his spittle be thick and tough, add Oxyssel Symples, or the Syrups of Liquorish or Coltsfoot. Let his constant drink be Barly-water, boyl in it Currans, Borrage and Buglos Flowers, Hartshorn, Maiden-hair, Coltsfoot, Liquorish, and such like, give it warm. You must not purge in the Disease, till the declination thereof, and then use a gentle potion. Many Medicines there are proper and special for a Pleurisie : as Stone-horse dung, or White-hens dung, soaked in Carduus water, and strained, give a quarter of a pint; this hath a piercing and discussing quality, (by reason of the volatile salt in it) and doth wonderfully disperse the humours in the Pleurisie. An Apple made hollow, and a dram of Frankincense put therein and roasted given to the Sick, drinking three ounces of Carduus Water after it, and laid to sweat, is good, saith *Quercetan*. Goats Blood also is good. If the Sick fall into a looseness in the height of this Disease it is very dangerous : in the declination it is good ; but if it so happen, give him the Syrup of Myrtles ; and do as you are taught in the Cure of Diarrhæa.

## Περὶ πνευμονίας, Or

The inflammation of the Lungs is a disease not much different in the causes or signs from a Pleurisie, but only in the part affected. Sometimes this Peripneumonia cometh alone, and sometimes followeth another Disease, as the Quinzy or Pleurisie, which is a dangerous Symptome : on the contrary, if a Pleurisie follow the inflammation of the Lungs, it is a hopeful Symptome. This Disease is more dangerous than a Pleurisie, and for the most part deadly, by reason of want of respiration, and the nearness of the heart. The cure is the same with the Pleurisie, therefore I shall say no more of it.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

## Of Empyema.

**E**mpyema, (*ἐμπίημα*) or a Collection of matter in the Cavity of the Thorax, is a Disease, which for the most part followeth a Pleurisie and Peripneumonia, and sometimes a Quinzy, when they are not carefully cured, and the inflammation cometh to Suppuration; and when the Imposthume breaketh, the matter falleth into the Cavity of the Breast. Sometimes blood falling into the Thorax, by the breaking or wounding of a Vein may come to Suppuration, or rather Corruption. Sometimes slegm falleth from the Head and other parts in the Breast, and there putrifying, begetteth matter like quiter. The signs of Suppuration beginning, according to Hippocrates, are these: First, the Pleurisie being not purged, the Fever increaseth while the matter is turning into Pus.

Secondly, the sharpness of the matter touching the Membranes causeth quaking: the Third, is weight and sense of heaviness in the part. To these we may add the difficulty of breathing; for although when the Imposthume is broken, the Diaphragma, and the Muscles of the Thorax move more freely; yet the Lungs are oppressed by the matter lying about them. But an old and confirmed Empyema is known, by a lingering, putrid and partly Heetick Fever, more violent towards night and much sweating, a constant troublesome Cough, the Cheeks grow red, the Eyes hollow, the Legs swell, Pustles break out on the Breast. If the Suppuration break, and the Fever continueth, are thirsty, want appetite, the Pus green, livid or frothy, brought up with much difficulty, and a loose belly; all these are signs of Death, or of long Sicknes: the contrary are the signs of Recovery. They who in this condition do lift up the whole Breast, when they breath, by reason of the matter contained, are quickly choaked.

If the matter be not spit forth in forty dayes, it turneth to a Consumption, and death followeth. The Suppuration on both sides is more dangerous than that of one: that on the left side the worst, by reason of the left Ventricle of the heart. If the matter flow plentifully by Stool and Urin, and the Patient strong and hearty, it is a sign of recovery.

For the Cure: you must endeavour to help nature in suppurating the humors; if Suppuration cannot be hindered by this or the like Cataplasm: Take of Chamomel, Melilot and Mallows, of each one " handful, the Roots of Althææ, one handful: Figs and Raisins



stoned, of each four ounces : after due boiling, beat and strain them, adding to the Liguor, the Oyls of sweet Almonds, Lillies, and Fresh Butter, of each one ounce, with the Meal of Wheat, Fenugreek and Flax Seed sufficient, make a Cataplasim, and apply it. In the mean time, let the Patient take of this Lohock ; Take of the Conserve of the Flower of Baglofs, Violets and Roses, of each one ounce ; Maidenhair, Liquorish and Coltsfoot, of each one ounce : Oyl of sweet almonds, newly drawn, one ounce, Sugar-Candy, one ounce, powder what is to be powdered, and with Syrup of Liquorish, or Coltsfoot sufficient make a Lohock ; and let the Patient take thereof often. Venice Turpentine washed, and with Liquorish powder made up into Pills, are good to mature, discuss and cleanse : give three drams in the Morning. But if the matter will not be spit up, you must open it between the fourth and fifth Rib; and apply a Plaister to draw out the matter, giving the Patient a Wound-drink in the mean time; If you desire particular direction herein, read Hieronymus Fabricius ab aqua pendente, in Libro de operationibus Chyrurgicis.

## CHAP. XXIX.

## Of spitting of Blood.

**S**putum Sanguinis or Spitting of Blood, called in Greek αιμόρρῳσις, is an unnatural Flux of Blood from the vital parts, viz. the Breast, Lungs, and Aspera Arteria. The immediate cause Organical or common ; the Organical twofold, either the opening of the Vessels called in Greek ἀνεσθμωσις or Rarefaction, called διασπῆσις. The common Discale is twofold also, as the breaking of the Vessels called ρήξις, or the Erosion of them called διάβρωσις. Blood offending in quantity or quality may be the cause of opening, rarifying, breaking or Corroding of the Vessels. To be further satisfied therein, I pray you have recourse to the nineteenth Chapter, of Bleeding at the Nose. Some external cause, as Fall, Wound, or the like, may be the cause of Hemoptosis : Immoderate cold may be the cause, by hardening the Tunicles that they cannot be extended. It is very difficult to judge of the part from whence it cometh : It it comes from the head, it is cast forth by Coughing, Hawking, and there is a tickling in the Palate, as in a Catarrh. That which comes from the Breast and Lungs, causeth Coughing ; that which comes from the Lungs is Frothy ; that which comes from the Breast is Blackish, and cometh up with pain ; That which comes from the Gullet and Stomach,

mach, is known by Vomiting; from the Jaws and Wezand, by Hawking; from the Mouth, by simple spitting. Sometimes the Blood is sent from some other part to the Lungs, and spit forth; but this may be known by pain, or some hurt happened there. You must judge of the signs from the quantity or quality of the Blood; the Nineteenth Chapter will instruct you.

To the Prognostick; *Hippocrates* saith, That what kind of Blood seever is spit from any of the inferiour parts is evil, for every opening of a Vessel, which letteth out Blood is dangerous, especially in the Lungs. But sometimes it happeneth without hurt, when nature critically doth evacuate superfluous Blood that way: as it is seen sometimes in women, who have their courses stop.

You must begin the Cure with Blood letting; open a Vein on the same side you judge the distemper to be. If there be obstruction of the Terms, open the Saphæna: If your Patient is subject to the Hemorrhoids, bleed with Leeches. Cupping, or other Revulsions you may use, if occasion be. Then purge Choller, which causeth the Blood to be thin and fluid, with Rubarb, Mirobalans, and the like: Then give Medicines astringent to close the Office of the Vessels: but at the first give such things with them which have an expectorating quality, lest Blood in the Breast, or other parts, out of the proper Vessels should be coagulated: Take of Conserve of Roses, and the juyce of Purslane, of each two ounces, Sugar of Roses one ounce. red Coral, Blood-stone, Bolearmenick, and Terra Sigillata, of each half a dram: Troches of Amber, a scruple: the Oyl of Vitriol six drops: with the Whites of Eggs beaten to Water, make a Lohock, of which let the Patient lick often, especially Night and Morning. *Quercetan* prescribeth a Water, excellent against spitting of Blood; see the fourth part of this Treatise, among Distilled Waters. The Chymical Oyl of Amber, two or three drops, hath an excellent astringent quality, take it in the Distilled Water of Knotgrafs or Plantane, or the like: so you may take, or give half a dram of Sanguis Draconis; or the Blood-stone alone finely powdered: or two scruples of Opium, Laudanum, Philonium Romanum and Persicum: These and such like may be given, provided, the dose be regulated by an able brain: the juice of Nettles drunk four or five ounces in the morning hath prevailed, when all other have failed, saith *Amatus Lusitanus*. If by the use of astringent Medicines, your Patient be caustive, give a Clyster or purge, that leaves an Astringency behind it; and if the use of Astringents hinder spitting, mix those things which do not only stop Blood, but mollifie the Breast also; such are the juyces of Plantane, Purslane; the Syrops of dyed Roses, Quinces, Myrtles, and of Jujubes, Gum Arabick,

bick, Tragacanth and Starch, and such like. If blood be congealed in the Breast, endeavour to dissolve it, by administering six ounces of Oxycrate, three times a day; if it cause Coughing, sweeten it with Sugar or Sugar Candy. Apply this cooling Epithem, to allay the heat of the Liver, if you see occasion: "Take of the Water of Roſes, Plantane and Succory, of each four ounces: Vinegar of Roſes two ounces: of the powder called Diatrion, Santalon, a dram and an half; Camphire one scruple, make an *Epithem*, and apply it warm to the Liver: afterwards anoint with Unguentum Rosarum, and Rose-Vinegar. Anoint the reins with Oyl of Roſes, and Water Lillies: and the Testicles with Oxycrate. If a Defluxion of sharp humours, from the head unto the Lungs, be the cause of the Disease, seek the cure in the ninth Chapter. When the Blood is stanch'd, let your Patient avoid all things that may cause a return thereof; as Salt, and spiced meats, rich Wines, great heat, anger, and violent exercise. If you judge him inclinable to the Distemper, by reason of thin Cholerick humors, mixed with blood, purge those humors at the Spring and Fall.

## C H A P. XXXI.

## Of the Consumption or Ptiſick.

**T**His Disease is called in Latine *Tuber*, and in Greek *φθίσις*; which although it signifieth every Consumption, yet is most properly taken for the extenuation of the whole Body, caused by an Ulcer in the Lungs. An Ulcer in the Lungs, by reason of its nearness to the heart, afflicts it with putrid vapours; the heart disperſeth it into all parts: hence cometh a Fever heſtick joyned with a putrid; and by its unnatural heat, does hinder the well concocting of nourishment, hence the whole Body decayeth. Sometimes sharp corroding and Salt humors falling from the Head, or the suppurated humors from the Pleurisie or Empyema, which humors putrifying upon the lungs may ulcerate them. Many times the cause is in the lungs themselves, which have a vicious, hereditary constitution, naturally tender, and disposed to corruption. Sometimes a Pustule is bred in the Lungs, and never breaketh, but groweth till it stopp the passage of the breath, and killeth the Patient. Sometimes it cometh to Suppuration, and is called the Impoſthumie of the Lungs: which being broken, and flowing to the Bronchia or passages in the Lungs, it may be spit up, if the body be strong, and the matter little in quantity: but many times an Ulcer remaineth, which causeth a Consumption. If the Impoſtu-

mated



mated matter flow into the Ventricle of the heart, the sick die suddenly; and many times insensible of any pain or sickness: take examples from *Fernelius, lib. 5. de partium Morbis & Symp. Chap. 10. pag. 288.* To the causes of this Disease here mentioned, you may add all the causes mentioned in the ninth Chapter of *Defluxions*. *Hippocrates* mentioneth many more kinds of Consumptions, too tedious for me to insert in this Volume: as those proceeding from nocturnal pollutions, the running of the Reins; also the obstruction of the Nerves, or the flowing of Choler to the Back; so want of nourishment, or drying causeth a Consumption: likewise a Distillation from the head to the Marrow on the Back may be the cause, as *Hippocrates* saith; when a Defluxion falleth upoa the Spinal Marrow, there is a secret and undiscernable Consumption. Sometimes it hath its original from hunger, and want of nourishment: Sometimes when the Meseraick Veins are obstructed, that the Chylus concocted in the Stomach cannot pass to the Liver. In the Diagnostick, we must observe the signs of a Consumption, beginning, begun, or confirmed. Signs of a Consumption beginning are, a small Defluxion, the Lungs not much hurt thereby, the Cough but small, the Spitte sweet, Salt or Bitter, the Body a little Feaverish. The Signs of a Consumption begun, the Distillation is stronger, the Lungs pierced, by which the Lungs are exasperated, and the Cough violent. The matter contained in the Lungs maketh the Stomach weighty, a sharp pain before and behind from the humours suppurating, sharp and heating humors fall into the Body, and sometimes into the Veins, causing a Hectick Feaver, sometimes joyned with a putrid. The Lungs by contracted filth, grows hot, by which heat, spitte, flegm, and other humors, good and bad are drawn from the Brain, which the Brain fetcheth from all the Body; hence comes its decay and extenuation. The Patient spitte thick rotten Flegm, and doth sweat at night as soon as he sleepeth. A Consumption confirmed, is known by these signs, the Patient spitte matter it self, the Feaver stronger, the Cough more violent, with more provocation, and less Evacuation; the Cough is attended with hollow sounding, he pineth and wanteth appetite, for the mouth of the Stomach is weakened by the Defluxion: The belly is loose, for the Flegm falling from the Head, weakeneth the Stomach and Bowels. and the retentive faculty is destroyed. The Patient breatheth difficultly, for the faculty is weak, and the Bronchia stopped with a putrid Matter; the Hair falleth off, the Cheeks wax blue, and his Feet swell; the Nails of the Fingers are crooked, because the flesh on the tops of the Fingers which held them up, is decayed. Let the patient spit in a Bason of fair Water: if he spit Matter, it sinketh; if Flegm, it swimmeth.

Thus

Thus have I briefly touched upon the Causes and Signs of a Consumption, a word or two of the Prognostick. If the Consumption hath not long continued, and the Ulcer but newly begun, it may be cured, otherwise not; for those things which dry the Ulcer, do hinder spitting, and encrease the Feaver, and make the Body leaner. Those things which are moist good against leanness and Fevers, do make the Ulcer fouler. Those that have narrow and streight Breasts, and their shoulder-blades stick out like wings, are inclinable to Consumptions, to whom it is natural, for want of natural heat. If the Consumption came with an acute Disease, or the Sick fall into an acute Disease, it killeth speedily. If the Patient spitte stinking Matter, or cannot spit at all, his Belly loose, he is very near Death.

It would take up a great deal more room than I have to spare, to set down the Cure of a Consumption, (I mean when it is only begun, and the Patient strong,) I shall only Epitomise it. Let the Sick drink Milk warm, either Asses, Goats, or red Cows; but above all, the Milk of a sound Woman is the best. Let him use a cool and moist diet, and make use of such things which may correct the blood. Make a decoction of China, Sanders and Guajacum: You must purge the humors offending, but before you make use of such purges as work very gently, as Manna, Rhubarb, Cassia, Syrup of Roses, and the like. To allay the Feaver, it is lawful to let blood, if your Patient be not too lean: You must divert the Defluxion, have recourse to the ninth Chapter. Then you must give such things which have a healing quality, to cure the Ulcer, of which the Milk spoken of before is very good, and if Sugar of Roses be given with it, it will be much more available. Conserve of Roses is good, if it astringe too much, and the breath fail, and the Sick cannot spit, make use of Expectorating Medicines, as the Syrup of Hyson, Colts-foot or Lungs; the last Chapter will enform you. If heat be procured by the same means, give coolers, as the Syrups of Violets and Jubes, the Musilage of Fleabane, Quinces, and the cold seeds. The Syrup of the juyce of Ground-Ivy is much commended by Quercetan, see the fourth Book, Of Syrups.

This Syrup hath admirable Virtue. Take of the juyce of Ground-Ivy, Veronica, and Caruans Benedittus clarified, of each eight ounces, in which boyl of all the sorts of Maidenhair, Scabious and Lettuce, of each lb If a handful, very gently; then dissolve in the Liquor streined, a pound and half of white Sugar, and boyl it to the height of a Syrup; add in the end of the extract of Juniper three drams, of the juyce of Liquorish, and the Extract of Cardus, of each four scruples. Let the Patient take a spoonful before every meal, and as much when he goeth to bed. Forestus commendeth this Powder following, Take of white Poppy-Seed

Seed ten drams, Starch, Gum Arabick and Tragacanth, of each three drams, Purslane and Mallows-Seed, of each five drams, the four great cold Seeds, of each six drams, Quince Seeds the like quantity; Spodium, and juyce of Liquorish, of each three drams; the Perids the weight of all the rest, make it into fine powder; and give two drams in a morning, with the Syrups of Poppies or Jujubes; or you may give it in Barly-Cream, Almond-Milk, or in any other convenient liquor.

Or this Lohock is very good: Take of Lohock de pulmone Vulpis and Sanum & Expertum, of each one ounce, Conserve of Roses, Diamargariton Frigidum and Diapenidion, of each half an ounce; Manus Christi, and Lac Sulphuris, of each three drams, with the Syrup of Consrvy, make a Lohock, of which let the Patient take the quantity of a Hazelnut often, and twice as much night and morning. The Oyl of Vitriol is good to dry the Ulcer, if two or three drops be given in a morning with the juyce of Plantane, or Rose-water, and Sugar, saith Claudianus. The Balsome of Peru, is not without its virtues, for the healing of the Ulcers of the Lungs, if a drop or two be made into a Pill with Sugar, or the powder of Liquorish, and taken every morning; so you may take the Balsome of Sulphur. Fumigations may be made of Frankincense, Myrrh, Mastich, Benjamin, Yellow Sanders, Amber, Storax, and the like; and taken in the Mouth or Nose, and the room scented therewith. Or you may make a moist Fumigation of such herbs which are friendly to the Lungs. Take of Coltsfoot, Hyssop, Horehound and Alehoof, of each two handfuls, bruise them, and put them in a Pipkin with a cover close luted, with water sufficient; put it into the Oven when the Bread is half baked, the Bread being baked, draw out the Pipkin, and put a funnel into a hole which it must have at the top, and draw the fumes into the Mouth, and put it out at the Nose. Many other Medicines and Precepts, I might here prescribe, which I must omit for brevities sake; only remember, that all Medicines against spitting of Blood are profitable for the Ulcer of the Lungs.



## CHAP. XXXII.

## Of the Palpitation of the Heart.

**T**He Palpitation of the Heart is an immoderate and preternatural shaking of the part with a great Diastole or vehement Systole, which sometimes hath been so great, that the adjoyning ribs have been displaced, sometimes broken; and sometimes an Artery hath been much dilated, so saith *Fernelius lib. 5. Chap. 12. pag. 292.* The Greeks call this Disease *Καρδιασ τάλαν*, and the Latines *Palpitatio Cordis*. The causes of it may be referred to three heads: the first is a molestation of the heart, sometimes a troublesome vapour arising from cold and thick humors lodged near the heart, especially the Pericardium, and conveyed to the Ventracles of the heart, or sent from the Stomach, Spleen, Womb, or the like; or caused by the Plague, Poyson, Worms putrified, or the Menstrues stopped, and conveyed as before, may be the cause of Palpitation. To these, add excess in quantity or quality, of bloody, Cholerick or watry humors oppressing the Veins, Arteries or Ventracles of the Heart. Likewise Inflammation, Imposthumation or Tumors happening in the Arteries of the Lungs near the Heart, or in the Pericardium may be the cause of Palpitation.

A Second cause is a preternatural heat, by which the Spirits are inflamed, and the motion of the Heart and Arteries is increased, and this sometimes (though seldome) ariseth from an inward cause: often from an outward, as anger, violent exercise and the like.

The third cause is the defect of Spirits, caused by hunger, watching, anger, joy, fear, shame, or great Diseases, or any thing, which dissipateth the Spirits, which the heart labouring to recover, increaseth its motion, and causeth Palpitation. The *Diagnosis* or knowledge of this Disease is easie, for it may be felt, heard or seen: The causes must be distinguished by their proper signs, A hot distemper is known by often breathing, by a Fever and heat of the Breast, and a desire of cold things. If Wind be the cause, it is subject to Variation, and raised by a small motion, the Breath is difficult; a mist before the Eyes, and a noise in the Ears, &c. If the Disease cometh from humors in the heart or Pericardium, it comes not suddenly, nor goeth away quickly. The nature of the humor you may gather from their Symptoms. Water in the Pericardium is hard to be known, but we may conjecture it, by the weakness of the Pulse, the Heart seems to be almost suffocated in water. If Malignant and Persistent humors cause it, the Patient fainteth, a loss of the pulse and strength, &c. If it

come

## Chap. 32. Of the Palpitation of the Heart. 109

come by consent from other parts, their proper signs declare it. If a Tumor be the cause, the motion of the heart is different from the natural, and the pulse is various: If the Tumor be in the *Pericardium* and hard, the disease is constant, and the Patient decays without manifest cause. To the Prognostick I say, it is a dangerous Symptome, because the motion of the Heart, by which life is preserved, is hindered; and *Galen* saith, That they who are thus affected in youth, or middle age, live not to be old, because the Vitals are weak in them. *Alph. 41. de loco aff. Sect. 2. & 5. Chap. 2.* If it come from a Tumor, it is incurable: if it be peculiar to the Heart, or *Pericardium*, it is incurable. If it come by consent from other parts, the cure must be sought out of their proper Chapters: but, (seeing not onely the cause ought to be removed, but also the Symptomes allwaged, by refreshing the Heart) you must administer Cordial medicines, which have power to strengthen the Heart. If a hot distemper vex the heart, Take of the Conserve of Violets, Water-Lillies, Borrage or Bugloss-Flowers, of each one ounce; *Diamargariton Frigidum*, *Dianrhodon Abbatís*, of each two drams; Red Sanders, Coral, and Camphire, of each a dram, with the Syrups of Coral, Balm, or Citron peels, make an Opiate, of which let him take often. If cold humors cause the Palpitation; Take of the Conserve of Roses, and Rosemary flowers, of each one ounce; *Aromaticum Rosarum*, *Dianthus*, and *Diambra*, of each one dram; Cinnamon, Cloves, and Mace, of each half a dram; Confection of Alcherms, two scruples; Amber, Musk, and Saffron, of each one scruple, with Syrup of Clove-Gilly-Flowers, make an Opiate, and give it as before. With these and the like ingredients the ingenious may form medicines of all sorts, whether the disease be hot, or cold: likewise may Liniments, Unguents, Epithemas, and Sacculi be prepared and applied to the Region of the Heart, to strengthen and abate the hot or cold distempers thereof. If an humor gathered near the heart cause the Palpitation, extenuating medicines must be mixed with your Cordials, and if nothing prohibit, open the inner Vein of the Arm called *Basilica*; if that appears not, open the middle Vein; which course *Galen* commendeth: Also if you see occasion, administer Purging, and Carminative Clysters.

## C H A P. XXXIII.

## Of Swooning, or Syncope.

*Συκοπή*, or Swooning, is a sudden, and swift failing of all Strengths for all parts having a continual necessary influence upon the heart, & vital spirits; when they fail, all the rest must suffer. This Disease is distinguished from the Epilepsy, which hath a Convulsion, and this not from an Apoplexy, in which the breath is much stopped, and the pulse not much abated, till near death: but here the pulse faileth and the breath is free. In fits of the Mother, the breast is most obstructed, the pulse not much altered, nor the colour of the face, except it be higher; the contrary happeneth in a Syncope. The immediate cause of this Disease, is the defect of the Vital Spirits, in which nature is constrained: lest the heart should totally fail, to fetch the Spirits from other parts to the heart, by which means they lose their functions. This defect happeneth four ways principally: First they are naturally few, by fault in the faculty making of the Vital Spirits, or the matter: which fault cometh by diseases proper to the heart, or by consent from other parts. Proper to the heart, are too much constriction, dilation, and Solutions happening to the Ventricles of the heart, or such as destroy the natural temper, as sharp, Malignant, Fainting, Pestilential, and Hestick Feavers, and the like. The faculty may be hurt by diseases in those parts, which have a Sympathy with the heart, as the Brain, Liver, Stomach, and Womb. The matter is faulty, when the Air or Blood, (by which the Vital Spirits are generated) is defective, or corrupted. The Air is defective, when respiration, and transpiration is hindered: But the hindrance of nutrition causeth a defect of the Blood. They are both corrupted, when their qualities are changed. Secondly, this Disease is caused when the Spirits are dissipated and spent, by too great evacuations which may be done sensibly, or insensibly. Sensibly, by inordinate Phlebotomy, Bleeding of Wounds, or at the Mouth, Nose, Womb, Belly, or Hemorrhoids: or an extraordinary discharging of other excrementitious humors, by Vomit, Stool, Urine, or Sweat: the breaking of an inward Impostume; or by *Empyema*, or by tapping the Navel in the Dropsic. Insensible evacuations, are caused by sharp or thin humors, which rarify the skin; or the immoderate heat of Baths or hot-houses. To these add long Watchings, Fastings, Lechery, Anger, Joy, long continuing and violent pain or sickness, &c. may cause a dissipation of the spirits. Thirdly, this Disease is caused by things which alter and corrupt the Spirits, as venemous and pestilential



# Chap. 33. Of Swooning, or Syncope.

III

lential Air and Stinks, or an evil disposition of the Bowels and other parts. In a word, all things which are averse to the Heart may corrupt the spirits. Or lastly, the spirits may be suffocated or destroyed; which may come to pass, by a vehement returning of Blood and Spirits to the Heart, as also corrupt vapours, cold and thick blood and other humours gathered about the Heart, or the adjacent parts. These signs shew a Syncope, viz, a sudden failing of strength, a slow pulse sometimes stopping, a pale and blewish Face, the body externally cold, a cold Sweat, especially on the Temples, Neck, and Breast.

The signs of the Causes, for the most part, are manifest, as the sorts of Feavers, and the external Causes, but how named, may be easily known. A sharp Nose, hollow Eyes, the Temples fallen, are signs of thin Humours: gnawing of the Stomach, pricking heat, and great pain, do shew that the Body is troubled with Choler. Abundance of crude Humors, is known by the enlarging of the Body, swelling of the Breast, the colour pale, and the pulse small, unequal, and obscure. If swooning come by consent from other parts, the Signs of those parts affected will discover it. They who often and violently faint without manifest Cause, die suddenly (saith Hippocrates.)

A Syncope, which cometh from some evident Cause, as Fear, Sorrow, or immoderate Evacuations, is less dangerous than that which cometh from an internal Cause. In respect of various Causes, you must vary the Cure. If it come from immoderate Evacuations, you must endeavour to stop it with their proper Medicines, prescribed in their several Chapters. If from too violent purging, give three grains of Laudanum, or two of Opium. If by too much sweating, you must use Medicines which restrain sweat. If from suffocation of the Spirits, call them back by Frictions, Ligatures, and Cupping. If it come from Poyson taken, give something to expel it; after Vomiting with Oyl, give Treacle: if it burn in the guts, give Milk, fat Broth, or cooling Cordials. If thinness of the Humors cause it, give things that are sweet and thickning. If want of Food cause a Syncope, make use of a restoring Diet, and nourishing Broths. To conclude, From what Cause soever it come, in the Fit, lay your Patient upon his back, throw cold water into his Face, make him sneeze, put *Aqua-vite*, *Caelestis*, or *Imperialis* into his Mouth; call him loud, stop his Nostrils, wring his Fingers, pull his Hair, rub, bind, and Cup if need be.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXXIV.

## Of want of Appetite.

**A**S there are divers actions of the Stomach, so there are divers Diseases hindering those actions: See the Fifth Chapter of the First Book. And seeing that the attractive faculty is the first in order, I shall begin with the want of Attraction or Appetite. It is called *ἀρορεξία* or *ἀπορεξία*. In Latin *laappitentia*. In English *Want of Appetite* or *Loathing of Meat*. That we may rightly judge of the Causes of this Disease, let us consider the Natural Causes of Appetite and Hunger, by which we may the better discover the fault or hindrance.

The first cause of Hunger, is emptiness of the Stomach: if there be no emptiness, there is no Attraction, nor Appetite. Want of emptiness is, when the parts are filled with plenty of crude Humours caused by Gluttony or Drunkenness, want of Exercise or usual Evacuations, Weakness of the Natural Heat or a Fever, when the Heat is busied to concoct the matter of the Disease, or the like.

The second cause of Appetite, is the Attraction of Nourishment to the Stomach, sometimes this is depraved, though the parts are empty, when the Veins have lost their strength by Sickness, or immoderate Evacuations.

The third cause of Appetite, is the Attraction of the *Chilus* from the Stomach to the Liver by the Mesenterick veins; which cannot be performed if those Veins are obstructed, the *Chilus* sent out by Sieges, and the parts depraved of their necessary Nourishment.

Fourthly, the faculty of attracting an Appetite requireth a good disposition of the Stomach, Brain, and Nerves; consequently what ever altereth their Dispositions destroyeth appetite: great heat and drouth dispersing the moist Substance of the Stomach, doth cause a want of appetite. The like doth cold, which causeth a Stupefaction of the parts, and extinguisheth the natural heat.

Elegmy and Slimy humors gathered in the stomach by evil concoction, or by a defluxion from the head: the suppression of the Terms, or Hemorrhoids smothereth the natural heat, and causeth want of attraction. Distempers of the Brain and Nerves make a man insensible of the attracting in the stomach. The sign of the first cause is known by high feedings, repletion, want of evacuation, the body is full and the Veins swollen, and the like. The second cause is evident, by sickness, or immoderate evacuations. The third is known by obstruction of the Liver, Spleen, or Mesentery. The fourth cause

is thus known : If there be a great heat in the Stomach, drinels, bitterness of the Tongue and Jawes, and a Fever with heart-burning, and the like: All which signifie a hot distemper of the Stomach ; if it flow from some other part, the Signs of the Inflammation of the Liver and other parts will demonstrate it. A cold distemper and much Flegm is known by coldness of the stomach, great heaviness, and sharp belchings. *Prog.* Want of Appetite is dangerous, for it is digression from the natural estate. Loathing of meat for want of natural heat is far more dangerous, than when it is caused by abundance of evil humors. In Children want of appetite is worse than in men, because their natures require more nourishment. In all diseases want of Appetite is an evil Symptome. If a man recovering wanteth Appetite, there is fear of a Relapse. If want of Appetite come from a Disease of some other part, I refer you thither for the Cure : but if it be onely in the Stomach, you must consider it as either Hot or Cold. If a hot Humour be the cause, purge Choler gently and often, if your Patient be easie to vomit, give an easie vomit. Alter the Humors with cooling Sytups and Juleps, mixing therewith the Spirit of Vitriol, or Sulphur ; for all sharp things allay Choler, and provoke an Appetite: After purging, Marmalade of Quinces is good : Or take this following Opiate : Take of Conserve of Wormwood and Sorel, of each an ounce ; Conserve of Roses, Succory and Bugloss, of each half an ounce ; *Diamargariton Frigidum*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatiss*, of each one dram ; Troches of Spodium one scruple, with Syrup of Lemmons, make an Opiate ; of which let the Patient take the quantity of a Chestnut, Morning, Night and Noon. To the Stomach apply a Rose Cake steeped in Vinegar. Or anoint the Stomach outwardly with this Liniment : Take of Oyl of Roses, Mirtles, and Quinces, washed with Vinegar of Roses, of each two ounces, all the Sanders, red Coral, Coriander seed prepared, and red Roses, of each one dram ; the grains of Kermes and Spodium, of each half a dram ; White Wax as much as is sufficient to make a Liniment, and anoint the Stomach often therewith.

If a cold Distemper of the Stomach draws crude, flegmatick and melancholy Humors thither from other parts, you must amend the distempers of those parts with Medicines laid down in their proper Chapters. Then you must evacuate the humors oppressing the Stomach, and afterwards strengthen it. You must evacuate the humors, either by Vomit or Stool ; give no Vomits but to those who are easie to vomit. Of Purges, Pills are most profitable, because of their long continuance in the Stomach : the last Book will furnish you with purging Medicines. If the humors in the stomach be tough, you must dissolve them with Honey of Roses, Oxymel, and the like.



Beware how you administer Pills which are strong in operation; lest they draw humors from other parts to the Stomach. If the Liver be very hot you may be let blood, otherwise not; and in this case, you must administer such things as cool the Liver. After sufficient purging, you must come to strengthen the Stomach internally and externally: Take of the Syrup of Wormwood and Quinces, of each two ounces, the Syrup of Citron Peels one ounce, Cinnamon-water four ounces, the Spirit of Sulphur ten drops: mix them, and let the Patient take a Spoonful or two Morning, Noon and Night, or often as necessity requireth; *Quercetanus* his Syrup of Cinnamon is very good: See the last Book. If the Disease be of long continuance, let the Patient make use of the Guaiacum Drink, prescribed in the Second Chapter of this Book: the Bath of Bath is profitable in this case.

But if a hot Liver attend a cold Stomach, as it often doth, your Medicines ought to be the more temperate. *Zechius* commendeth this Bolus: Take of washed Turpentine two Drams, Powder of Mastick half a Dram, *Aromaticum Rosatum* half a scruple: Make a Bolus, and let the sick take it two hours before meat. Candied Nutmegs and Ginger is good, and it is convenient for the Patient to drink his Beer warm. This Liniment is good; Take of the Balsom of Peru three Ounces, the Oyls of Nutmegs, wormwood and Mastick, of each one ounce, mix them and anoint the Stomach. Also with these and other Ingredients which have a heating and expectorating quality, you may make Unguents and Plaisters to be applied to the Stomach.

## CHAP. XXXV.

### Of a depraved Appetite.

**T**HE Appetite is depraved two ways, either in quantity or quality; if it be depraved in quantity, Nourishment is desired in greater quantity than Nature would: it is called by the Greeks *Βέλμη*, by the Latines *Fames Canina*, whence we call it Dog's Appetite. It is depraved in quality, when things which are not Food but viruous and unwholesom, are desired, this is called in Greek *πίνω*, or *κίτλα* and *μαράτλα*.

First, Those that are troubled with the Dog's Appetite, do feed insatiably, and afterwards some vomit like Dogs, some do purge, and others do digest it, and if they have not more presently, are sick. The part affected is chiefly the mouth of the Stomach, the cause containing, is sense of sucking and vehement pulling, which stirs up the

Appetite.

Appetite. Their too much pull the mouth, melancholy, peccant humors, want of Food, which the

Sometimes the Chilus, safe and deadly readily commonly dissolve, this means Nourishment

voicing of which must be belching and external the cause, the going of the Chapter of

Progress it is not dangerous great Evacuation then the Body cure this Disease

Caution in the sticking to the Stomach with former Chapter

with a special scale. Narcotics can be used and than advised Hippocrates experience teaches success.

Fits and is and harmful Meats, by which melancholy and things are ingested and cold.

**Appetite.** Vicious humours sticking to the mouth of the Stomach by their too much coldness, sharpness or soundness do bind, wrinkle and pull the mouth of the Stomach, and so beget a false Appetite; Melancholy sent from the Spleen to the Stomach, if it exceed and be preternatural, causeth an unnatural Appetite. It may be caused by want of Food, and Emptiness caused by too great Evacuations, by which the Veins do continually suck.

Sometimes it cometh from Worms in the Stomach which devour the Chilus. The Hermetick Physicians do attribute it to a sharp, salt and devouring Spirit or Faculty in the Stomach, which doth readily consume whatever Meat is taken, as Aqua Fortis doth quickly dissolve the fixedst Metals, the hardest Stones into Liquor; and by this means doth not allow Nature a lawful and necessary bound of Nourishment. The Disease it self needs no other Sign than the devouring of Meat: the signs of the Causes may be easily found; they which manifest a cold Distemper and sharp humors in the Stomach, are belching and sharp Vomiting, crude Ejections, want of Thirst, and external causes of Refrigeration. If defect of Nourishment is the cause, the Patient is lean, and there are causes present or foregoing of the decay of Moisture. If Worms be the cause, in the Chapter of the Worms their signs shall be spoken of.

*Prog.* If this Disease come from external Causes or from Worms, it is not dangerous: judge the contrary if it follow Emptiness and great Evacuations, or if the Patient doth vomit or purge much, for then the Body (for the most part) falleth into a worse Disease. To cure this Disease, you must purge by Vomit or Stools; (taking the Caution in the last Chapter) the slegmatick and melancholy humors sticking to the Stomach, then you must labour to strengthen the Stomach with internal and external Medicines, prescribed in the former Chapter. Six Grains of Ambergreece taken in a reer Egg, hath a special quality to strengthen the Stomach and cure the Disease. Narcotick Medicines by dulling the exquisite Sense do sometimes cure the Disease, but must not be used till all other means fail; and then advised by an able Brain.

Hippocrates saith, That Wine and Aqua vitæ is good, and Experience teacheth, that Oyl and fat things are seldome given without success.

*Pica* and *Malacia* is a depraved Appetite, by which unprofitable and hurtful things are desired; it is caused by the eating of evil Meats, by which the Stomach is disposed for the production of melancholy and slegmatick humors; hence divers Appetites of evil things are ingendered. Some desire things that are sour, sharp, bitter and cold, as Vinegar, Juyce of Lemmons and Oranges, cold

ter, Snow, Ice, unripe Fruits, and the like. Some do desire earthly, dry and burnt things; as Nutmegs, Clove, Cinnamon and other Spices: Salt, Ashes, Coles, Chalk, Tobacco-pipes, Lime, Oatmeal, Tar, Candles, and such like. This Disease happeneth for the most part to Women with Child, or to Maids which have the Green-sickness, who having their Terms stopped and staving corrupt in the body, and ascending infect the Stomach, and take the Appetite from its natural condition. Sometimes (though seldome) Men and Boyes are thus troubled: *Fernelius* speaks of a Noble-man, who having an extraordinary Appetite to Lime, did devour a piece as big as his fist, without offending his Stomach or Bowels. The cause of this Disease may be found out by the things desired; for if they desire Coles, Salt or the like, we may conclude, that the Disease depends upon salt and burnt humours.

This Disease is Chronical and of continuance, but it is seldom dangerous; yet sometimes if the Stomach cannot be reduced to its former Condition, Obstructions, evil Habits, Dropsies and Cardialgiæ are produced. The more contrary to Nature the things desired are, the farther distant is the Stomach from the natural temper. If you aim at the Cure, it differeth not from the former, but you must consider the variety of the bodies affected: If this Disease happen to a Man, it hath its Original from the Obstruction of the Liver and Spleen, and you must seek the Cure in their proper Chapters. If Women with Child are thus affected, be sparing in giving Medicines for fear of Miscarriage; for the most part they are freed from it in the fourth Month. If the Green-sickness in Maids be the cause of this effect: seek the Cure in the Chapter of the Green-sickness.

## C H A P. XXXVI.

## Of the Thirsty Disease.

THIS Disease is called in Greek *Δίψη*, in Latin *Sitis Morbosa*; The immediate Cause is want of moist Nourishment: Driness of the Stomach and other parts, which maketh the Stomach sensible of their wants; it is caused by those things which have a power to consume and dry up the moisture of the whole Stomach and whole body. It is caused also by propriety or sympathy; by propriety when the moisture of the Stomach is altered or drawn forth by a hot, dry, salt, or filthy humour contained in his Cavity. By Sympathy, when the whole Body or some particular Member having lost its moisture, suck moisture from the Stomach: for the Veins having lost

their moist  
moisture,  
Lungs, an  
on a contin  
therefore  
things as  
excess of  
Sons of H  
chilly Spi  
be lactate  
rity of Vi  
The ka  
affected m  
want of Dr  
stinguihed  
the like  
Humour,  
but if this  
Diseases w  
Causes, i  
ternal Ca  
rences, T  
Cures that  
is not ally  
If it be co  
and restore  
such as  
Marasmus,

The Co  
bedon  
is called  
The fault  
Internal  
in the Sto  
moderate  
culry is ha  
minished



their moisture, endeavour to recruit themselves with the Stomachs moisture, as it happeneth in Feavers, Inflammations of the Liver, Lungs, and a hot and dry Distemper of the Reins, causeth Diabetes or a continual Pissing, and is accompanied with great thirst, and therefore is called *Dipsacus*, The outward causes also are all such things as heat and dry; the use of salt, sharp and spiced Meats: excess of old rich Wine, Watchings or immoderate Evacuations. The Sons of *Hymes* conclude, that preternatural Thirst is caused by thirsty Spirits bred of sulphureous Excrements, whose thirst cannot be satisfied with ordinary cooling Medicines, unless the sharp Spirits of Vitriol, Sulphur or Salt be added to them.

The knowledge of the Disease is easie, of the Cause and the Part affected not difficult. Of the Disease, the Patients Complaint for want of Drink, will inform you. Likewise the Cause may be distinguished by the Tasts, which are hot, dry, salt, bitter, sharp, and the like. lastly, the Tasts do not onely distinguish the peccant Humour, but also that the part affected is the Mouth of the Stomach: but if Thirst come by consent from other parts, the Signs of those Diseases will be manifest. The Thirst which comes from external Causes, is easily quenched with Drink; that which comes from internal Causes, are more or less dangerous, according to their differences. Thirst accompanying Feavers ends with them, and their Cures shall be set down in their proper places. Thirst in a Dropsie is not allayed, but rather increased by Drink, and is most dangerous. If it be caused by immoderate Evacuations, suppress the Evacuations, and restore the Empty Parts with cooling and moistning Medicines such as are prescribed in the Cure of the Feaver *Hectick* and *Marasmus*.

## CHAP. XXXVII,

## Of evil Digestion,

THE Concoction of the Stomach is hurt three ways, viz. it may be diminished, depraved or abolished. Concoction diminished, is called *Begonia*, depraved *Avonia*, abolished *Atrophia*. The fault of Concoction is either in the Organ, Object, External or Internal things. The fault in the Organ comprehendeth all Diseases in the Stomach, for since Digestion is made in the Stomach by a moderate natural Heat, if it want its Moderation, the digestive Faculty is hurt. A cold distemper of the Stomach, if it be gentle, diminisheth the Heat and weakeneth Concoction: if it be greater it

abolished it. A hot Distemper in the Stomach depraveth the Faculty, and causeth difficult Concoction.

Though these Distempers are sometimes simple, yet many times they are joyned with Matter, as *Flegm* and black Humors caused by *Hypocondriack Melancholy* which cause Crudities, sour Belchings, Rumbings, Winds, and the like. The fault of the Object is thus considered, when the Nourishment, which is the proper Object of the Stomach, offendeth in substance, quantity, quality or time. Nourishment offendeth the Stomach in substance, when it is too hard and difficult to be concocted. In quantity it offendeth the Stomach, when either too much is taken at once, that the natural Heat cannot digest it, but some part of it remaineth Crude: less taken than Nature requireth, becometh Crude also, when it is dried or burnt in a *Cholerick Stomach*. In quality Food offendeth, when it is either too hot or dry, or too cold, moist and windy for the Stomach. In respect of Time, Nourishment may offend the Stomach, If a man contrary to his order in Diet, doth eat liberally a little before he goeth to Bed, this may hurt Concoction. External or Internal Means may hurt the concoctive Faculty: Namely, an Air too hot may dissipate the natural Heat; an Air too cold may dull it: immoderate Exercise, especially after Meat, draweth the Heat from the Stomach to the External parts, and drives the imperfect Chylus into the Guts; and so weakens Concoction. Costiveness of the Belly, or a Flux; immoderate Watching, or sleep in the day-time; deep Study upon a full Stomach; Sadness, and other Passions of the Minde do hinder the actions of the Stomach. The *Hermetick Physicians* add another Cause, for they say (and not without reason) that a sharp Li- quor sent from the Spleen to the Stomach, which hath a great power to dissolve, in its natural State causeth a laudable Concoction, and that Concoction is not made by Heat onely: for Meat boyled in a Pot, with a strong Heat many days, is not dissolved; and Bones in a Dogs Stomach are quickly dissolved: Likewise Fishes do quickly dissolve their Meat, though they have no actual Heat. Birds do quickly concoct the hardest Seeds, and small Pebble Stones, and they have a Spleen found about their Maw, and that there is a dissolving Spirit inherent in the Gizzards of Birds, the Physical Practice doth prove, being often used in Medicines to help Concoction, dissolve the Stone, and the like.

The Signes of a diminished or abolished Concoction is the same, differing onely in Degrees, viz. sour Belchings, vomiting or purging forth of Food either not well, or not at all concocted, Weight, Extension and Inflammation of the Stomach; the Patient sensible of some cold Cause going before, and is worse by taking of cold things: some

Chap. 2  
the Urine  
the concoct  
Belchings  
is prejudic  
Patient  
come by  
died.  
Concoct  
that which  
external C  
though it b  
the Choll  
abolished  
meat, and  
the  
A deprav  
Obstructi  
remove the  
mult be cle  
seek Medic  
sent you m  
Chapters v

Avulsion  
depraved m  
thing whic  
Fulness or  
mure cau  
is sent fr  
cines, or g  
propriet  
other Pass  
Stomach.  
the Stomac  
Humors,  
be the cau  
come by  
Signes of th

the Urine thin, and pale like Water, and sometimes thick and red. If the concoctive Faculty be depraved, the Patient is sensible of Sinking Belchings, and the like Taste in the Mouth, of Heat and Thirst; and is prejudiced by hot things. If it come from external Causes, the Patient, or some about him will be able to demonstrate it, if it come by consent from other Parts, their Signs must be considered.

Concoction hurt by consent from other Parts, is easier cured, than that which is proper to the Stomach, onely that which cometh from external Causes, is cured easiest of all. Concoction diminished, though it be not the worst, yet it bringeth many inconveniencies, as the Chollick, Cachexy, and sometimes the Dropsie. Concoction abolished is worst, because all parts are frustrated of their Nourishment, and deadly Diseases follow, as the Lientery, Dropsie, Atrophy, &c.

A depraved Concoction is the cause of many Evils likewise, as Obstructions, Scabs, Feavers, &c. To cure the Disease, you must remove the Antecedent, Conjunct, and External cause: The Stomach must be cleansed of the offending Humors, and then strengthened, seek Medicines in the Chap. of *want of Appetite*. If it come by consent you must amend the parts sending the Humours: their proper Chapters will furnish you with means.

## CHAP. XXXVIII.

## Of the Hiccough.

*Ανγυς* in Greek, and *Singultus* in Latine, in English *Hiccough*, is a depraved motion of the Stomach, by which it desireth to expel something which is hurtful. It is caused ( according to *Hippocrates* ) of Fulness or Emptiness; sometimes ( saith *Galen* ) Provocation. The matter causing the *Hiccough*, is either gathered in the Stomach, or is sent from other Parts. Sharp Humours, Nourishment, or Medicines, or gnawing Worms in the Stomach, may cause Hiccough by propriety: It is caused by consent, when the Liver, Spleen, Guts, or other Parts, being inflamed, send offensive Vapors, or Water to the Stomach. A Tumor in the Liver ( being inflamed ) doth compress the Stomach, and so provoke the expulsive Faculty; finally, sharp Humours, sent from all parts of the Body, in malignant Feavers may be the cause of the Hiccough. Diagnostick signes are, if the Disease come by Propriety, it is more lasting, and is eased by Vomit: the signes of the Humours in the Stomach, appear by the Taste in the



Mouth, Belchings, &c. If it come from any other part of the Body, the proper Signs will declare it. Prognosticks are; if the Hiccough be caused by Meat, Drink, or Cold, it is not dangerous. But if it come in a malignant or great Fever, and continue, it is deadly. The same you may judge, if the Hiccough accompanied with redness of the Eyes, in an acute Disease invade the Patient after Vomiting, *Singultus* from the inflammation of the Liver is also hurtful. For the cure, you must, (if the disease come from a cold cause,) First, administer medicines, which do cut and prepare the Humours, as Vinegar, and Oxy-mel of Squills, and Oxy-mel Simplex: then evacuate the Humours by Purge or Vomit, and then strengthen the Stomach: use the Medicines prescribed in the Chapter of *Want of Appetite*, coming of a cold Cause: if the Disease be violent, add these following: Take of Castor and Mirrh, of each three Drams: Sal Gem, half an Ounce: Diagridium and Mastich, of each one dram: Agarick newly trochiscated three drams: Aloes, the weight of all the rest: with the juice of Mint: make them up into a Mass, and of one dram make six gelated Pills: Let your Patient take two or three in the Morning. *Riverius*.

If Wind in the Stomach be the Cause: Take of Dill-Seed, sweet Fennel and Anise-Seeds of each one ounce, Juniper Berries, half an ounce: Cloves, a dram: Macerate them in good wine, or Spirit of wine, and distil it in Balneo. If sharp and cholerick Humours be the cause of the Hiccough, you must give Oyl of Sweet Almonds, Peisan Broth, Syrup of Apples and Quinces, and the Emulsion of the Colds Seeds: foment the Stomach with a Sponge dip't in Rose Water, or apply a cooling Ointment to the Stomach. Sneezing hath been attended with admirable success: Vomiting with little less, but have a care how you administer Vomits to weak People; Drinking of Milk from the Cow is much commended, and sometimes proves successful. Narcoticks sometimes effect the Cure by stupifying the too too Exquisite sense of the Stomach.

## CHAP. XXXIX.

### Of Vomiting.

*Nautia* Nausea, and *Equet* Vomiting, differ onely in Degrees: the first is a Desire to vomit up, whatsoever troubles the Stomach, either in Quantity or Quality, but cannot, either by reason of the weakness of the Stomach, strength of the upper Orifice, or thickness or slowness of the Matter. But Vomiting is a depraved motion of the Stomach, which shaketh it, by which the expulsive Faculty is stirred

stirred up, by contracting the Fibres of the Lower part, and loosening  
 the Superiour, and with violent motion casteth forth the Matter con-  
 tained therein, which was troublesome to it. The Causes of Vom-  
 iting are external or internal, and is divided into Natural or Artificial:  
 the Natural is either without or in a Disease, and thus divided, it is  
 either Periodical, Critical, or Symptomatical, Periodical vomiting,  
 is without a Disease, and is used by many twice in a year or oftener,  
 to cleanse the Stomach of the cholerick or phlegmatick Humours,  
 and to prevent Diseases. Critical vomiting is when Nature in a  
 disease casts forth her Enemy. Symptomatical vomiting, is when  
 Nature is provoked and weakned, and is not eased by it, because she  
 is not strong enough utterly to expel it: the Matter vomited is either  
 Excrements: as Phlegm, Choler, Melancholy, Water, Matter,  
 Worms, and the like: or Nourishment, as Meat, Chylus, or Blood.  
 Artificial Vomiting, is from an external Cause: as Compression of  
 the lower Belly, Strokes, Falls, violent Exercise, Riding, Sailing  
 on the Sea, Poysonous Air, or Breath, stinking Smells, or beholding  
 some filthy thing. External Causes may provoke Nature, as Vomits  
 taken; Some Nourishment is distastful to some Stomachs, and cau-  
 seth vomiting: Hippocrates reporteth that one eating Mushrooms died  
 vomiting: Meats which are Fat and Oily are præposterous to some  
 Stomachs: Omittting Gluttony, which is many times the Cause. The  
 whole Body in a Plethory: evil Habit, Feavers, and other Diseases of  
 the Body, may be the Cause: Inflammations or Obstructions of other  
 parts, as the Liver, Spleen, Mysteriery, or Bowels, the Terms or  
 Hemorrhoids stopped, a Catarrh, or the like may cause Vomiting. If  
 Vomiting be caused by Humours offending the Stomach, or by an  
 Organical disease therein, you may finde the signs thereof in the præ-  
 ceding Chapters of diseases of the Stomach. If it come by Symp-  
 tomy from other parts, their proper signs will inform. Make the  
 Prognostick thus: Choler and Phlegm exquisitely mingled and vo-  
 mited up, is good. If the sick vomit Critically, and cast forth Cho-  
 ler in a cholerick Distemper, and phlegm in a phlegmatick, it is hope-  
 ful. Violent vomiting, and little brought up, in a Feaver is evil:  
 for it shews abundance of matter, or that Nature is weak. Vom-  
 iting, after a Flux of the Belly is good, for there is a revulsion of the  
 matter, and Nature is refreshed. Vomiting of divers Colours is dan-  
 gerous, because Nature hath to do with divers Enemies. Green,  
 blew, black, and stinking matter vomited, is deadly. In Feavers  
 acute, if the Patient vomit without mixture of Humours, it is an evil  
 sign, because that a pure Humour is not capable of Concoction. For  
 the Cure: If the Disease come by consent from other parts, remove  
 the Cause by working their Cures. If phlegmatick, cholerick, or  
 melancholy

melancholy Humors provoke the Stomach, cast them forth by vomiting: prepare and cut them if they be tough and clammy. Give gentle Vomits, as warm Oyl: or white Vitriol prepared: or Salt of Vitriol made red by Calcination, for they cleanse and dissolve the glutinous Matter. If your Patient be weak and disposed to Vomits, give often Clysters or purge the Body with this or the like Pills. Take of Aloe lots, three drams: yellow Myrobalans, and Rubarb in Powder, of each half a dram: red Sanders, and prepared Coral, of each one Scruple: with the Syrup of Roses solutive, make them into a Mass: give a dram every other or third day: and if the Sick be weak, give but half so much. If the Vomiting be violent, give two Scruples and an half of *Cochie the less*, with three grains of Laudanum in the morning. Then you must strengthen the Stomach with the Syrup or conserve of Quinces, conserve of Roses, Mastic in a small quantity, Syrup of Mints, Plantane-water made sour with Oyl of Vitriol, &c. All these strengthen the Stomach and stay Vomiting, of which you may make Medicines in divers forms. Foment the Stomach with a sponge dipt in Plantane-water, Rose-water, and Rose-Vinegar. But first boil in the water an handful of Mints. Or apply this following Cataplasme: Take of Marmalade of Quinces, or Quinces boiled soft in Rose-water, or Vinegar, four Ounces: the roots of Bistort and Tarentill, of each two drams, Mastic, Mace, and Nutmegs, of each two scruples: Sour Leaven half a pound: with the juyce of Mints and Vinegar make a Cataplasme and apply it. If your Patient vomit Blood: the Causes and Signes you may find in the 19 and 30 Chapr. and the Medicines prescribed in the 30 Chapr. *Of spitting of Blood*: ordered by an able Head-piece, may perform the Cure.

## CHAP. XL.

## Of Cholera.

**X**oléra in Greek, and Cholérica Passio in Latine, is a Disease violently sending forth by Vomit and Stool, sharp and cholerick Humors: this Disease is a Symptome of the expulsive Faculty being hurt by Meats not well concocted, and if the retentive Faculty be also in fault, the Disease is the worse and more violent. Some will have two sorts of Cholera. a moist and a dry; A moist is that which hath relation to what hath been said. The dry is more rare, & cometh from a windy spirit, produced in the Stomach, by the fiery heat of the Part corrupting the Meat: or by Meats which are rank & windy, and this is the opinion of Hippocrates himself. Sennertus (from the



the Hermetical doctrine ) addeth another cause, viz. Salt and adust Humours in the *Hypochondria*, which grow hot by the mixture of a pother Humour, and demonstrateth it, by the mixing of Aqua fortis, and Oyl of Vitriol, with Salt of Tartar, which produce very flammous Spirits. So that the immediate Causes of this Disease are Cholerick, Burnt, Sharp, Salt, or rotten Humours in the Stomach, Bowels, Spleen, Mesentery; or some Nourishment of an evil Quality, or some strong Medicine, or Poyson taken. The signes of this Disease are often and plentiful Evacuations of cholerick, sharp and corrupted Humours, by Vomit and Stool: swelling with Wind, Thirst, and a Gnawing of the Stomach and Guts: a Loathing, which is appeased a little with cold Drink which is soon after cast up. The Pulse is small and unequal: Sweating, with Convulsion of the extreame Parts & Swooning, and such dangerous Symptomes. It is easily discovered whether the Cause come by some violent Medicine, Poyson, or offensive Diet. The internal Causes are known by the Quality of the Humours, that are objected. If there be a continual Loathing and Gnawing, the Disease is in the Stomach. If a malignant Fever be joyed, it is in the Veins. If it hath its original from some evil Food, there is hopes, that when the Matter is cast forth the Disease will end. If it be very violent, it is dangerous, ( I had almost said desperate: ) for the greater the Convulsions, Swoonings, and Coldness of the extreame Parts be, the nearer is Death at hand.

In the beginning of the Cure, you may help forward Evacuations, with gentle, cooling, and cleansing Clysters, thus: Take, of Milk, half a pint; Syrup of *Peas*, and Lettuce, of each one ounce: The Oyles of *Roses* and *Water Lilies*, of each half an ounce; The yelks of two new laid Eggs well beaten, mix them and give it. Or you may make a Clyster with Chicken Broth or Oxycrate. It is good to open a Vein, by which means, the burnt and boyled Blood may be cooled, revelled, and asswaged: but do it with discretion, twice or thrice if the strength be not impaired by the first. You must endeavour to qualify the sharpness of the Humours, thus: Take, of the waters of *Plantane Purslane*, and *Mint* of each, two Ounces: Syrup of *Quinces* and dried *Roses*, of each one Ounce; Syrup of *Vinegar*, half an Ounce; mix them, and dissolve therein two Scruples of *Theriack Andromachi*, and six drops of the Oyl of *Vitriol*: give now and then a Spoonful. But if the Patient hath some ease, and the Symptomes abate, or appear not, beware lest they suddenly return and destroy the Patient, as it sometimes happeneth in this case. Therefore nourish him and strengthen his Stomach with this restoring Opiate. Take of the Gilly of *Harts-horn* made with *Canary Wine*, four Ounces: of the *Conserve* of *Roses*, *Burrage*, *Engloss* and *Clove-gilliflowers*, of each one Ounce: *Confectio Alchermes*, half an Ounce:

Citron

*Citron Barks, and Nutmgs candied, of each three drams; the essence of Cloves, Mace, Nutmegs and Cinnamon, of each three drops, with the Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers make an Opiate; of which let the Patient take often the quantity of a Hazel-nut and more Mornings and Evenings. To conclude, the Medicines prescribed in the last Chapter against cholerick Vomiting, may be useful here.*

## C H A P, XLI.

## Of Pain in the Stomach.

**D**olor Ventriculi, or pain of the Stomach, is caused by naughty venomous and gnawing Humors contained therein: the Ancients made this distinction, viz. that if the upper Orifice of the Stomach, which is of exquisite sense, by reason of the great Nerve which it hath from the fifth Conjugation be affected; the pain is very sharp, which maketh the Heart (the most noble part, and near unto it) sensible of the same, from thence it is called *Cardialgia*. But if the Membranes of the Cavity, or lower Orifice (called *Pylorus*) be affected, it is called, *Dolor Ventriculi*, or *Colica Ventriculi*, especially if it comes of Wind. The cause of this Disease, is either Worms gnawing the Tunicles of the Stomach, or Wind lodged in the Cavity of the Stomach, which causeth swelling and painful distension, or sharp and malignant Humors therein contained; as salt Phlegm, green and black Choler, whose sharp vapours cause pain, corrupt matter from an Imposthume of the Liver or the Breast, Diseases of the Stomach and parts adjoining, evil Humors from the whole Body in Feavers, Choler from the Liver, Melancholly from the Spleen, and salt Phlegm from the Head; all these may be the causes of this Evil. The external Causes may be evil, and corrupt Nourishment, or Meats that are too hot, that breed Wind or Choler; Meat taken in too great a quantity, Poyson, strong, sharp and deadly Medicines not well corrected. Diagnostick Signs are thus taken, when the pain is under the Episthormis, it shews that the upper Orifice of the Stomach is affected; a very sharp pain, that the Patient cannot rest, and sometimes fainteth; the Vapours sometimes offend the Brain, and cause inveterate Head-ach, the Megrims, Vertigo and Epilepsy. In the other parts of the Stomach, there are not so violent Symptomes, but great pains like the Cholick: thus you may know the Causes. The Humors offending, may be known by the Excrements avoided at the Belly or Mouth; also Choler, Phlegm, Wind or Worms may be known by their proper signs. The Diseases of the Stomach or parts

parts adjoining, causing this Disease, may be known by their proper signs.

**Prog.** This Disease is more dangerous than any other Disease of the Stomach; the danger is greater, if a Fever accompany it: if the extreme Parts be cold, Death is at hand, thus saith Hippocrates. It is least dangerous if it proceed from Worms; yet sometimes dangerous Symptoms appear, and the Patient dies; sometimes if the cause of Wind cannot be removed, a dry Dropsie followeth. If it come from other parts, there begin your Cure; if it be in the Stomach properly, consider the peccant Humour. If Wind be the Cause, first administer a Clyster, Take of Chamomil, Penny-Royal, Mints, and Pellitory of the wall, of each one handful; the seeds of Anise, Fennel, Cummin and Dill, of each two drams; make a decoction in white wine Posset-drink, add Benedicta Laxativa, half an ounce; the Oyls of Dill, Rue and Chamomil, of each half an ounce, the Chymical Oyl of Juniper-Berries, ten drops, make a Clyster, and give it or the like as often as need requireth. Make a Fomentation, with the Herbs and Seeds aforesaid, or with others of the like nature; then anoint the Stomach with the Oyls of Sage and Cloves Chymical, Oyl of Dill, Chamomil, Rue, and the like. Then administer this or the like Julep, which hath power to assuage pain, discuss Wind, and strengthen the Stomach: Take of Wormwood, Penny-Royal, Centaury the less, and Agrimony, of each one handful; the Flowers of Chamomil, and Juniper-Berries, of each one ounce; the seeds of sweet Fennel and Anise, of each two drams; Boil them in a quart of white wine, to the Consumption of half, sweeten it with the compound Syrups of Wormwood, and Betony, of each two ounces. Let the Patient take a spoonful of this often, and six spoonfuls Night and Morning: this have I often proved with good success, let the Cause be what it will. If the Disease be yet too stubborn to yield to ordinary Medicines, make a Bath of mollifying Herbs, and let the Patient sit in it, giving inward discussing Medicines. In vehement pain, some do give a purge, and mix Narcoticks with it, to allay the pain, and this following is much commended by Forestus, Take of Diaphenticon, half an ounce; Phlonium Romanum, two scruples, with Chamomil-water (in want thereof the Decoction) make a Potion. If Choler cause pain, purge it, administer Juleps cooling and thickning. Foment the Stomach, and apply a Cataplasm, made of mollifying, cooling, and discussing Herbs and Seeds.



## C H A P. XLII.

*Of the Inflammation, Ulcer, and Imposthume of the Stomach.*

**T**HE Inflammation of the Stomach, is a Tumor coming of Blood, sent into the Stomach and its Membranes, from the *Vena porta*, by the small Veins; which Blood is either pure and maketh a proper Phlegmon; or mixed with Choler and maketh an Erisipclatous; or with Phlegm, making an Oedematous; or with Melancholly, making a Schirrhus Tumor. In a word, all things that may inflame the Blood, may be the Cause of this Tumor. Diagnostick signs are, Great pain, burning, pricking, distending, beating even to the back; you may see or feel the Tumor belching, and sometimes vomiting of Blood, and the breath is fetched difficultly, and a burning Fever. If it be only of Blood, it is somewhat gentler; but if it be with Choler, there are grievous Symptoms. But be careful to distinguish this Inflammation from that of the upperside of the Liver, see the Chapter *Of the Inflammation of the Liver*: This Disease for the most part is deadly. If the Inflammation be in the upper part of the Stomach, or over the whole, or much loathing of the Stomach, or rumbling in the Belly; all these are deadly Symptoms. If the Inflammation kill not, & the Fever and pain cease, and the Tumor remain, then it turns to an Imposthume; which being broken, there remaineth an Ulcer, which is known by voiding of matter by Vomit and Stool. But an Ulcer may be bred in the Stomach from other Causes, as sharp, salt, Cholerick Humors bred in the Stomach, or sent thither from other parts; the breach of a Vein, which could not grow together again, a Wound not well cured, Poyson, or corroding Medicines taken. The Signs of an Ulcer bred in the Stomach, are the same with the former; to which I add these, a constant lingring Fever, stinking Belching, no Appetite, a pricking Pain and Burning when any thing is taken which is hot, cold, sharp, salt or sour. This Disease for the most part is deadly, because Cleansers encrease pain, and Driers cannot execute their Office, but are kindred by Meat, Drink and Chylus. The Cure of these Diseases must be diversly considered: purging is altogether prohibited, lest more Humors be gathered to the Stomach, but give an emollient and cooling Clyster every day, such an one as is prescribed in the last Chapter: you must let Blood in both Arms, as much as strength will bear; bleed the Hemorrhoids, if you see occasion; cup and scarrifie the Shoulders, Back and Buttocks; rub and bind the extreme parts, and heat them with the Oyl of Spike, or Flower-de-luce, and the like. You must give

Medicines

Medicines which are altering and strengthening, and with them mix such which have power to dissolve. This Julep is good, Take of Barley-water well clarified, two ounces; Fennel and Purslane waters, of each one ounce; the Syrups of Water-Lilies and Violets, of each one ounce; the Syrup of Poppy half an ounce: Diamargariton frigidum, a dram, mix them, and make a Julep for three Doses; give it Morning, Noon, and Night. Foment the Stomach with the Decoction of cooling and mollifying Herbs, Roots and Flowers, and afterwards anoint it with Oyl of Roses, Violets, and the like. Some commend Turpentine washed in Wormwood-water given in Pills three or four times, which will quickly dissolve or mature the Imposthume.

If you find that the Imposthume tend to suppuration, apply this Cataplasm; Take of the Roots of Cummin and Marsh-Mallows, of each one ounce; Chamomil, two handfuls; red Rose leaves, a handful: boyl them well together, and then beat them in a stone Morter; then add of the Meal of Barley, Flax-seed and Fenugreek, of each one ounce, with Hens-Grease, and Oyl of Roses and Chamomil alike quantity, sufficient to make a Cataplasm, which must be applied, and often removed. When the Imposthume is broken, cleanse the Ulcer with new Milk and Sugar, or Hydromel, or Take of Barley-water three ounces, Sugar of Roses, and the Oyl of sweet Almond, of each one ounce; make a Julep, and give it. The drinking of Mineral Water is good: Before you endeavour to heal it, you must endeavour to cleanse the Stomach as well as the Ulcer. Take of Cassia, one ounce; powder of Rubarb, one scruple; dissolve it in Whey, and drink it: you may with this or the like Purgers (which attract not the Humors to the part) cleanse the Stomach, as often as necessity requireth. Then foment the Stomach with the Decoction of Comphry-Roots, Quinces, Wormwood, Roses, Pomegranate-flowers and Peels, Myrtles, Galls, Frankincense, Mastick, and the like; then apply astringent Unguents, and Emplaisters to the Stomach; and inwardly give Medicines of the same nature: Take of the Conserve of Roses and Comphrey-roots, and of Marmalad of Quinces, of each ounce; Rosearmenick, Sanguis Draconis, Terra Sigillata, of each one dram; Gum Arabick, red Coral and Bloodstone, of each half a dram; Hypocistis, Sarcocol and Frankincense, of each one scruple; with Syrup of Comphrey, make an Opiate, a little of which let the Patient take often. If his stomach loath the often use of one Medicine, let Troches be made of the powders and the Musilage of Gum Traganth, or into any other form: How to make Troches, see the fourth Book. Give him for his Food, in the mean time, Chicken broth, and boil therein astringent Herbs, fresh Barley and China Root.

## C H A P. XLIII.

## Of the Chollick,

**T**He attractive and digestive Faculties are not only hurt, but the expulsive Faculty, which chiefly respects the Intestines, may also be defective, and cause many distempers in the Body, the first of which is the Chollick. This Disease took its Name from the part affected, which is the Gut, called by the Greek *Colon*; and the Disease *Χολικη*, which is caused by excrementitious Matter retained too long, and by distending, pricking or corroding, causeth grievous pain. Sometimes it is caused through Crudities, bred by a cold Distemper of the Stomach and Intestines, which causeth Wind to afflict the Guts (being obstructed,) especially the Gut *Colon*: sometimes cold gross and phlegmatick Humors sticking to the Tunicles or Coats of the Guts, cause constriction, and divulsion, and a gnawing pain: also salt and sharp, chollerick and melancholly, sower Humors, by pricking, and twitching the Guts, cause pain. Here note, that if Wind or Humours remain onely in the Cavity of the Guts, they might be easily excluded, by evacuating, cleansing and carminative Medicines: but being (for the most part) fixed to the Coats of the Guts, they are not expelled without difficulty. There are other less usual Causes of the Chollick, viz. Tumors in the adjoyning parts, causing compressing of the Guts: Tumors and Inflammations in the Intestines, causing Narrowness; Knots of Worms, or Stones bred in the Guts, which stop them; sometimes a poysonous and malignant Matter engendreth a pestilent Chollick or Plague in the Guts. The external Causes are either a cold Air, which doth constringe the Belly; or an Air too hot, indurating the Excrements; Raw Fruit, Meats gross, and of hard Digestion; in a word, every thing which disturbeth the concoction of the Stomach, may here be taken for an External Cause. Diagnostick signs are, a very sharp pain sometimes moveable, sometimes in the Region of the Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Reins; sometimes above, and sometimes beneath the navel; oftentimes in the left side: so that by comparison of other signs, you must distinguish between this and the Spleen and Stone. The pain is like the boring of an Auger, he vomiteth chollerick and phlegmatick Matters, if the Stomack consenteth. The pain is greater after Meat; the Belly (for the most part) is bound, that the Patient cannot so much as break Wind; when he voideth Excrements, they are windy, like Cow-dung, with Water on the top. The causes are also distinguished by their signs: If Phlegm be the cause, the pain is not so violent, the Sick

hath



hath used a phlegmatick Diet; but if Wind be joyned with it, the part seemeth as it were boared through with a Winde; the Urine is crude and white; yet sometimes the violent pain inflameth the Spirits; and the Urine appeareth yellow or red: He is better for hot and the worse for cold things. If cholerick Humors cause the Cholick, there is a violent pulling and pricking pain; the Urine is cholerick: a Diet breeding Choler went before; he is the worse for hot Medicines; there is great Heat, Thirst, and sometimes a Feaver. If the Cholick proceed from Wind, there is a stretching pain, and the Belly swelleth, and the Wind rumbleth therein, he findeth ease when he breaketh it: If the Wind be in the Cavity, the pain is moveable, and encreaseth and decreaseth; if in the Coats of the Guts, the pain is fixed in respect of place, and constant. Prognostick signs are, if the Cholick be gentle, moveable, and the Belly tumbable, it is easily cured: on the contrary, if the pain be great and fixed, the Belly bound, the Patient wanteth sleep, vomiteth, and is troubled with cold Sweats, Hiccoughs, Doting, and coldness of the extrem parts, it is alwayes dangerous, and (for the most part) deadly. An Epidemical and pestilent Cholick is very dangerous; if it come of sharp cholerick Humors, it degenerateth sometimes into other worse diseases, as the Pally, Falling-Sickness, and the Gout.

You must vary the Cure, according to the diversity of Causes; if Phlegm and Wind be the cause, you must administer an emollient, dissolving and carminative Clyster (see Chap. 41. Of Pains in the Stomach three or four times in a day. Or make a decoction of emollient and carminative Herbs, and boyl therein three drams of Colloquintida: If two or three Clysters provoke not to Stool, make use of this Suppository; Take of Honey soaked, half an ounce; Hierapiera, one dram; Diacolo-Cythidos, one scruple; salt Gem, half a scruple; mix them, and make a Suppository. It is not amiss, if after all this, you purge the noxious Humors, mixing with your purge Narcoticks: See Forreſtus his Medicine prescribed in the aforementioned Chapter. Or give an ounce and an half of Manna; of Oyl of sweet Almonds newly drawn, two ounces; give it in Broth. Then you must toment, bathe, or anoint the Belly, (see the aforesaid 41 Chapter) the bowels of a Wolf pulverized, and the white Dung of the same is much commended, if the Patient take a dram of White-wine. The Electuary of Bay-berries taken, as much as a Nutmeg, often easeth pain. This Medicine I have used with good success: Take of Pellitory of the wall, Mints, Parsly peart, of each one handfull: the Roots of Fennel, Parsly, Marshmallows and Butchers Broom, of each half a handfull; Juniper-Berries one ounce, the Seeds of Anis, sweet Fennel dried Cummin, of each half an ounce; Bay-berries, three drams; bruiſez ſlicke,

and powder them; infuse them in white-wine twenty four hours, and distill it in Balneo: after sufficient Evacuations, give one ounce. Galen much commendeth the Application of a Cupping-glass to the Navel, afterwards apply a Plaister of Tacamahacha. Also the decoction of Guaiacum given for many days is good, and afterwards purge plegm, if there be occasion. The cholerick Cholick is cured also by giving of emollient Clysters, and such as temper the Acrimony of the Humors: as the Decoction of Camomil, Violet-leaves, Endive; the Seeds of Fenugreek, Linseed, Hens-grease, Goose-grease, Oyl of Roses, Cassia, and the like. Foment the Belly with an emollient and cooling Decoction, and anoint it with a Cataplasim, made with the Meal of Linseed, Fenugreek and Barley, boiled in Oyl of Camomil and Roses. Cool the Liver outwardly by Epithems, and inwardly by Juleps made of Poppy, Lettuce, Succory, Endive, Sorrel, Violets, and the like: forget not to add a little spirit of Vitriol to your Juleps. If the pain be violent, use Narcoticks; afterwards purge the Humor with such Medicines which purge gently or strongly, according to the strength of your Patient, and degree of his Distemper.

## C H A P. XLIV.

## Of the Iliack Passion.

**T**HIS Disease is called in Greek *Ἰλῆξ*; in Latine *Iliaca Passio*, in English the *Iliack Passion*, from the Gut *Ilion*, which is chiefly affected in this Disease. But because the other Guts are capable of the same, it is rather derived from *Ἰλῆξ*, which signifieth *to be rowled or girt about*, and therefore the Latines call it *Volvulus*, or *Convolutus*. It is a præposterous motion of the Intestines, the Guts are obstructed, nothing passeth downward; sometimes the Excrements are brought up into the Stomach, and issue out at the mouth. The Intestines have a natural motion downwards, which is compared to the motion of Earth-worms, which move the parts of their Bodies successively; by which they carry the Fæces and Excrements downwards. The expulsive faculty of the Guts is sometimes too vehemently stirred up, the passage being obstructed, that by a violent motion the Excrementitious Matter is cast upwards: so that not only the Chylus and Excrements, but also Clysters and Suppositories are violently snatched up and vomited. Any thing which causeth the obstruction of the Guts, as hard dung long retained, gross Vapours, Inflammations, Tumors, or the like, may be the cause of this Disease. Sometimes an Ulcer in the Guts may be the Cause, when Excre-

ments

ments touch the part ulcerated; it pricketh it so that the Faculty is provoked not to let so noxious a thing pass, but driveth it upwards; the other Guts by Sympathy assisting, force it into the Stomach; Which also by a Peristaltick inverted motion, casteth it out by Vomit. The Diagnosticks of this Disease, are partly common to those of the Cholick, and partly proper or peculiar to it self. Common signs are, the Belly bound and puffed up, pain in the Abdomen, loathing, vomiting, difficulty of Breathing and Pissing, want of Rest. The peculiar signs are, a violent Pain, great Distension, a hard Tumor in the Hypogastrium, nothing voided downwards, an irregular vomiting of Choler, Phlegm and Chylus, at last the Excrements are vomited up. The signs of the Causes are thus gathered; If inflammation of the parts cause the Disease, it quickly cometh to the height, an intense Feaver, with vomiting as aforesaid. If hard Dung in the Bowels be the cause, there went before Constriction of the Belly, it is of longer Continuance, the pain not so violent at first, nor the Feaver so great, if any. If Wind or Phlegm be the Cause, (for the most part) the Cholick preceded, and the signs thereof are laid down in the preceding Chapter. This Disease is dangerous more or less, according to the Causes and Symptoms; that which is accompanied with the Strangury, or that irregular vomiting before-mentioned, (for the most part,) is deadly. If there be a remission of Symptoms, and things taken at the mouth finde passage downwards, there is hopes of Recovery.

What belongs to the Cure of this Disease, must thus be considered; viz. If hard Dung obstruct the passage, you must often inject emollient and laxative Clysters, in the mean time give Medicines inwardly of the same Nature, mixing with them such as strengthen the Stomach and Vital parts; having read thus far, you cannot be ignorant how to prepare them: by this means I cured one in this Condition, who went not to stool in sixteen or eighteen dayes. You may likewise apply Fomentations, Liniments, and Cataplasms of an emollient Nature to the Belly. If you find the Body Harsh and in much pain, administer the Medicines prescribed against the Cholick. If the Guts be inflamed, you must open a Vein, and draw as much blood as the strength of the Sick will bear: Administer cooling and emollient Clysters, and other Medicines prescribed in the 42. Chapter, for the inflammation of the Stomach. If he vomit not, give him warm Water and Oyl of Violets, for it is a good Revulsion. Let his Drink be Barley Water, and sometimes give in a draught thereof two ounces of Oyl of sweet Almonds, and if the pain be violent, use Narcoticks. Let him abstain from Food, for it turns to no good Nourishment; let him now and then take a spoonful of Broth,



and drink such things as are before mentioned. If the Bowels fall into the Cods, and cause this Disease, you must foment the part with emollient Oyls, and relaxing Decoctions, giving emollient and cathartic Clysters, then let the Patient lye with his Heels higher than his Head, and gently thrust them back, and keep them up with a Truss. If there be a Circumvolution, or Hoisting of the Guts, Hippocrates prescribeth this as the last Remedy, namely, to apply a pair of Bellows to the Fundament, and blow into the Belly, and afterwards to give an emollient Clyster; this hath been proved by many able Physicians, and highly commended. Others have commended the taking of Quick-silver in a great Quantity, which hath cured when all other means have failed.

### CHAP. XLV.

#### Of the Flux, Lientery, and Cæliack Passion.

*Διευτεσία*, Lientery is a Flux of the Belly, in which the Meat is quickly sent through the Body undigested. *Κοιλιακή*, or the Cæliack Passion is, when the Meat comes forth crude and imperfectly digested: these two differ onely in degrees, and their Cures are the same. This Disease is not to be referred to concoction hurt onely, but to the Debility of the retentive Faculty, for the Meat is not long enough retained to be concocted; hence it appeareth, that the Disease cometh from a fault of the Stomach as well as the Guts. The Causes of this Disease are referred to three heads.

First, a cold Distemper of the Stomach and Liver, which generateth slegmatick and glutinous Humors, which cover the wrinkles of the Stomach, that it cannot retain the Food. Though Retention be made by the astringing Quality, yet it operates by fit Instruments, viz. the Roughness of the inward Coat of the Stomach, which Roughness being taken away, and the wrinkles filled up by the Humours aforesaid, the Retention is hurt, and the Meat slippeeth away without Concoction.

Secondly, sharp Humors prick and twitch the parts, by which the Stomach and Guts are provoked to send forth the Meat too soon.

Lastly, in malignant Fevers, and other dangerous Diseases, the retentive Faculty is weakened, and Nature being conquered degenerateth into a Lientery.

There is another Cause, peculiar to the Cæliack Passion, Namely, the Obstruction of the Meseraick Veins, which hinder the passage of the *chilus* to the Liver, and therefore must of necessity be cast forth

forth by the Belly. I need not lay down the Signs of this Disease, being obvious to the Eye. The Causes may be thus discovered. If it come from a cold Distemper, there are four Belchings, the Excrements are phlegmatick: If the humors flow from the head, the Excrements are trothy, and the Flux greater after Sleep, the signs of a Catarrh appear. If it come from Provocation, there is a Heat in the *Hypochondria*, sharp and cholerick Excrements, great Thirst, and a gnawing in the Stomach. These Diseases if they last long are very dangerous, because Nature is deprived of her Nourishment, and the Body soon falleth into a Dropsie or Atrophy. If it follow other Diseases, it is for the most part deadly. If the Disease hath its original from phlegmatick humors, covering the wrinkles of the Stomach, you must use those Remedies propounded for the Cure of want of Appetite coming from a cold cause, with which, make use of those things which are astringent to stay the Flux. Clysters are of no great force, except the Flux be violent, in such Cases they must be astringent, such as shall be prescribed in the 47 Chapter of the *Flux Dysentery*.

You must purge the peccant humors, and then strengthen the Stomach with the Medicines prescribed in the Cure of Want of Appetite: for which purpose *Amatus Lusitanus* highly commendeth the following Opiate: Take of Conserve of Roses six ounces; of the best Treacle six drams; Syrup of Quince, sufficient to make an Opiate: give half an ounce in the morning, and fast one hour. If this Flux come from Provocation by cholerick humors, do as you are taught in the Chapter of cholerick Vomiting, or you may use those things prescribed in the following Chapter of the Flux Diarrhæa. For that which comes from the Imbecility of the retentive Faculty, now and then give Clysters made of Posset-drink, in which red Roses have been boiled, and dissolve Sugar therein, and the yelks of Eggs. Give inwardly strengthening and astringent things, which are prescribed in the following Chapter, and against cholerick vomiting. And in the Stomach and Belly with this following Ointment: Take of the Oyls of Marsh-mallows, Wormwood, Mynts and Myrtles, of each two drams: the Powders of Cinamon, Cloves, and Galingale, of each one scruple: the flowers of Pomegranates, and red Roses, of each half a scruple; wax sufficient to make an Ointment. If this Disease depend upon the Obstruction of the Meseraick Veins, use the Remedies prescribed for opening Obstructions of the Liver.

## CHAP. XLVI.

## Of the Flux Diarrhea.

*Diarrhoea*, Diarrhea is a Flux of the Belly, or a great and copious sending forth excrementitious humours; not of Food or Chylus, as in the Lientery or Cæliack Passion: nor of Blood, with Inflammation or Ulceration of the Intestines, as in the Dysentery, which remaineth next to be spoken of.

The humors voided are either Cholerick, Flegmatick, Melancholick or Serous. The place from whence it comes, is either from the whole Body, or from the Brain, Stomach, Intestines, Liver, Spleen, Mesentery, Womb, and the like. The Cause is either Critical or Symptomatical; Internal or External. The Disease it self is easily known, from what hath already been said; the difference of the Matter and Humors sent forth are manifest to the Senses.

It is somewhat difficult to know from what part of the Body the Humors are sent: If it come from the whole Body, there hath been some Disease which hath afflicted the whole Body, as *Cachexia*, *Leucoplegmatia*, a continual Feaver, or excessive Eating or Drinking. If it comes from the Head, the Excrements are froathy, and are voided more violent by Night than by Day, and there is some manifest Disease in the Head, as a Catarrh, Deafness, Lethargy, &c. If the fault be in the Stomach the Patient filled himself with Food apt to corrupt, or there be Signs of Concoction hurt, viz. If the humors be sharp, colerick and stinking, the Concoction is hurt by a hot Distemper of the Stomach; and the expulsive Faculty laboureth to throw it out: If they be crude and phlegmatick, Concoction is hurt by a cold Distemper. If Worms in the Guts be the cause, their Signs seek in the Chapter of the Worms. If the Humours come from the Liver, they are cholerick, and there appeareth some Distemper of the Liver. If from the Spleen the Excrements are blackish and distempers of the Spleen and Hypochondria appear. If from the Mesentery, there is extention; but Humours there have their original from the Liver or Spleen. If from the Womb, there are the Symptoms of the Womb affected.

To the Prognostick: I say, the Flux of the Belly, which is Critical, that is easily endured, and is a benefit to the Patient, by which, Humours, which are burthensome to Nature, are discharged, is good. On the contrary, if it be Symptomatical, painful, and weakening to Nature, it is evil. If the Excrements are thin, voided often with Pain, without Feeling when they are voided, or in an acute Disease,



all these are evil signs. If the Excrements voided be yellow as yolks of Eggs, or black, blew, or of divers colours, it is evil. If this Flux afflict a Woman with Child, she is in great danger of miscarriage. If the Excrements begin to grow thicker, there is hopes of Recovery. If a Flux happeneth in the Dropsie, wherein the whole Body is affected, it causeth a Recovery: understand this where the Patient is young, strong, and the Disease but begun; for if Nature be weaken by the long continuance of the Disease, and the Flux happen, the Disease and Life (hand in hand) go together.

For the Cure, If the Body abound with blood, open a Vein; if not, if the Patient hath a Fever, it is good to let Blood. Then purge the humor offending with such Purgers, that leave an Astringent quality behind them: If the Body be strong, vomiting is good, for it reveleth and evacuateth the Matter of the Disease. Before and after purging, give clearing Clysters; after the Body is sufficiently emptied, give astringents; all which the next Chapter will furnish you with. Inwardly, you may give astringent and strengthening Medicines, prescribed in the next Chapter. If your Patient be free from a Fever, boyl new milk and scum off the Foam, and quench red hot Steel often in it, and let him drink thereof warm, which is a present remedy. Unripe Mulberries and Blackberries dried and beaten to powder, is good to stay this Flux. This Opiare is excellent; Take of the juyce of Quinces, Conserve of Roses, of each one ounce; *Sanguis Draconis*, *Terra Sigillata*, and fine Bole, of each one dram; Bloodstone, and the Troches of Amber, of each half a dram; with Syrup of Comphrey, make an Opiare, and let the Patient take a little often. Take of the Powder of Rhubarb, one ounce, the Troches of Sanders, two drams, mix it, and give the Patient two drams twice a day; it evacuateth the matter and strengtheneth the Bowels. Both the Syrup, Magistery, and Tincture of Coral availeth much; and the Decoction of Juniper-Berries in red Wine is no less effectual. If it continue long, and your Patient's strength much decay, give Laudanum among your other Medicines. The Fume of Fleabane and Mullein taken through a hollow Chair is excellent. The Conserve of Hips is good against a cholerick Flux, you may mix with it such things which are astringent. I shall say no more of the Cure of this Disease, but refer you to the next Chapter. Only this, if the Disease come by consent of other parts, seek the Cure in their proper Chapters.

## CHAP. XLVII.

## Of the Dysentery, or Bloody Flux.

*Dysenteria*, is a bloody Loosness of the Belly, depending upon the Distention of the Intestines; but it is commonly taken for every Bloody Flux: the Latines call it *Tormina*, because of the Torture the Patient endureth. Galen mentioneth four kinds of Fluxes, which he calleth *Dysenteria*. The first is, when any usual Evacuation of blood, as the Hemorrhoids, or at the Nose, is omitted or impeded, or any part of the Body is hurt, and by that means the Blood is sent to the Intestines, and voided by the Belly. The second is, when watery Blood is voided by reason of the weakness of the Liver; of this I shall treat hereafter. The third is, when Blood mixed with Melancholy, and brought by reason of long Retention in the Liver and Spleen, is evacuated and shined. The last, and that which I am now to discourse on, is, when Blood and Excrements are mixed together, and sometimes also Matter is mixed therewith, and is evacuated with Torture to the Patient, by reason of Ulceration in the Gut; this is the proper Dysentery. The internal Causes, are sharp and ulcerating humors, yellow, green and black Choler; Salt Phlegm in the Head, bred by heat, or in the Belly by putrefaction, which being brought to the Guts, and sticking to them, ulcerateth the part. The Causes external, are all things which make sharp and evil humors, Meats which soon putrefie; Fruits which are soon rotten; all things unripe: The Air thus qualified; the Winter cold and dry, and the Spring very wet and full of South Winds, cause Dysenteries in the Summer. Or if the Winter be wet and full of South Winds, and a dry Spring, and the North Winds blow much; such a Season produceth Dysenteries. Sometimes the Air is infected, and produceth a contagious and epidemical Dysentery, which is so infectious that the Excrements of the Sick being cast into a Privy, infecteth all that sit over it. The Diagonal Signs are, often and bloody Evacuations, with pain in the Belly, Watching, Thirsting, Loathing of Meats, sometimes a Fever. If the small Guts are affected, the pain is vehement like the pricking of Pins, because they are of more exquisite Sense, they go not to Stool presently after the pain, and the Blood is mixed with the Excrements. The contrary judge, if it be in the great Guts, the pain not so sharp, they go to Stool presently after, and the Blood swimmeth on the top of, or a little mixed with the Excrements. You may judge of the Humor causing this Disease, by the Colour of the Excrements, Age and Temperament of the Patient,

and

## Chap. 47. Of the Dysentery, or Blood Flux: 137

and season of the year. Thus the Prognosticks are made. Dysenteries caused by black Choler are deadly, if it be not Critical, because the Ulcer groweth cancerous: be sure you judge aright between Melancholy and Blood congealed. If loathing of meat and a Fever accompany it, it is dangerous. If pieces of Flesh be voided it is deadly. Much Watching, great Thirst, black, bloody, and stinking Stools without a mixture of Humors, Hiccough, Cholerick Vomiting, pain in the Liver and Midriff, are (for the most part) deadly Signs. If Choler or sharp Diet be the cause of this Disease, it is easily cured; but Phlegm is worse, because it sticks longer to the Guts. If this Disease happen to one troubled with a disease in the Spleen, or the Gour, it is good (saith Hippocrates) because the Matter is sent forth: but this is rather a Diarrhoea than a Dysentery.

To Cure, you must evacuate sharp Humors, you must assuage Pain, cleanse, consolidate, and dry the Ulcer, and stop the Flux. To evacuate the humors, you must purge every second, third or fourth day according your to Patient's age, Strength, Season of the year, and the like. Rhubarb is exceeding good in this disease, given, a dram, or a dram and an half, or two drams: Or made into a Potion thus; Take of Liquorish scraped and sliced, and Raisins of the Sun, of each three drams; Tamarinds and yellow Myrabolans, of each two drams; boyl them in Barly and Plantane water to three ounces: in which strained, infuse a dram of Rhubarb thin sliced: then add one ounce of the Syrup of Roses solutive, and make a Potion: if you think it not strong enough, add of Diacatholicon, three drams; or you may give the Rhubarb in powder, in the aforesaid decoction. If the Dysentery be accompanied with a Fever, and Inflammation of the Bowels, open a Vein, and let the Patient bleed according to his strength. Sometimes vomiting is profitable to revel the Humours, which fall from the Stomach to the Intestins; Omit not vomiting if you find the Stomach be very foul: Especially if the Sick be inclinable to vomit, for then Nature declares the right way, and ought to be imitated. In the mean while, you must give asswaging, mild and cleansing Clusters, afterwards glutinous and astringent, thus; Take of the Roots of Marshmallows, Butter-burr, of each one handfull; Camomil Flowers, one Pugil; the seeds of Flax, and Fleabane, of each two drams: boyl them in Barly water, or Milk Chalybeated, or Mutton, Capon, or Sheep's Head Broth, to a pint; strain it, and dissolve therein the yolks of four Eggs well beaten, Oyl of Roses, and Syrup of Quinces, of each one ounce, and make a Clyster. If the Ulcer want cleansing, add Centaury and Wormwood to the former decoction: and to the strained Liquor add Turpentine dissolved in the yolk of an Egg, and the Chymical Oyl of Wax, of each one dram. When there is need of more binding



and glutinating, make a Clifter thus: Take of the Roots of Comphry, Tormentil, and Bistort, of each one ounce; Plantane, Shepherds purse, Knotgrass, and Mouse-ear, of each one handfull; Pomegranate Flowers, Mirtles, Acron cups, and Cypress Nuts, of each one dram: parched Rice French Barley, and red Roses, of each one Pugill: make a Decoction in Smiths water; to a pint of the straining add of the Juice of Plantane and Tarrow, of each one ounce, and the yelks of two roasted Eggs. Or, instead of the Juices, you may add the Mufilage of Gum Tragacanth, made with Rose or Plantane water, and the Suet of a Goat, of each one dram, which Emplastick Clifters, as with a Plaister, cover the internal Superficies of the Guts, and preserve the part from the gnawing of the Matter. All this while you must give internal Medicines of the same Nature, and the oitner, if the upper Guts are ulcerated. First, to cleanse, give Goats Milk; to glutinate, Cows Milk Chalybated, with it you may mix the Juice of Plantane, Syrup of Comphry, Sugar of Roses, the Troches of Amber, and the white Troches of Rhasis. Let the Sick eat Rice boiled in Chalybated Milk: or the Mucilage of Gum Tragacanth and Arabick, drawn as before, in his Broth half a dram. The Body being well cleansed, you may make an astringent Decoction to compleat the Cure: Take of the Roots of Bistort, Tormentil and Comphry, the leaves of Plantane, Tarrow, Shepherds purse, Hoife-tayl, Mouse-ear, and Agrimony, of each one handfull: the Seeds of Sorrel, Sumach, and Grape-stones of each one ounce, make a Decoction of four quarts of water, to the Consumption of half; Sweeten the strained Liquor with the Syrup of Comphry, Quinces, dried Roses, Myrtles, or Coral. From what hath been said, there is light enough for the Ingenious to make Medicines in any form, to please the palate of his Patient, which I omit, being loth to be tedious; but least I should omit any thing necessary, make an Opiate thus; Take of Conserve of Roses, and Quinces, of each one ounce; Conserve of Comphry Roots half an ounce: Coral prepared, Sanguis Draconis, Bole-armenick, sealed Earth, Acatia, Conserve of Sticks, of each one dram: burnt Ivory and Spodium, of each one scruple, with any of the Syrups aforesaid, sufficient to make an Opiate, and give the quantity of a Chestnut Morning, Night, and Noon.

Narcoticks do Wonders, especially if they be mixed with astringents and strengthners: Take of Conserve of Roses and Serviers, of each one dram: Confection Alchermes half a scruple: Laudinum three grains, make a Bolus. Anoint the Bolly with the Oyls of Quinces, Mirtles, Roses, Mastich, Wormwood, and the like. The Qyntiment called Comittissa is of wonderful Virtue.

I might here teach you to make Fomentations and Cataplasms, for the purpose aforesaid, of the aforesaided Simples; but seeing the Ingenious

Ingenious  
that labour  
attended  
Cathart  
If the Dys  
cious are  
water: y  
malignant

Ther  
fine  
and blood  
on Strig  
keeth the  
to Stool  
cousm,  
wist, the  
the forme  
between  
to Stool  
(now with  
or watery  
(The sign  
the most p  
humor be  
most part  
Wormw  
ces to her  
will M  
scism  
the Wom  
Excreme  
Fundame  
stula,  
For the  
same, bod  
with the o

Ingenious need it not, and the Ignorant deserve it not, I shall save that labour, fearing my Book will swell to a greater Volume than I intended. What ever you do, remember to strengthen the Liver, with Cataplasms for that purpose made of Simples strengthening the Liver. If the Dysentery be Epidemical, and Malignant; Sudorifick medicines are of great force. As medicines made of Bezoar and Treacle-water: you must begin with Cordials, and proceed as you do in a malignant Feaver.

## CHAP. XLVIII.

## Of Tenasmus.

**T**ENASMUS in Greek, and Tenasmus in Latin, is a continual desire to go to Stool, yet the Patient voideth nothing but Slime, and bloody Matter; it is caused by an Ulcer in the *Intestinum rectum*, or *Streight Gut*, from which filthy matter continually flowing provoketh the expulsive Faculty, hence followeth a continual desire to go to Stool. This Disease properly belongeth to a Dysentery; yet by custom, when onely the streight Gut is ulcerated, it is called *Tenasmus*, therefore I shall not insert the Causes, being the same with the former. For the Knowledge of this Disease, it is easie to distinguish between this and a Dysentery. In a Tenasmus, the desire of going to Stool is continual; in the Dysentery, by Fits onely. In the first (notwithstanding all straining) nothing is voided but Slime bloody or mattery; in the other, both Excrements and Humors are voided. (The signs of the Causes seek in the former Chapter.) *Tenasmus* (for the most part) is easily cured, but is dangerous: If a melancholy humor be the cause, lest it turn to an ulcerated Cancer; yet (for the most part) it is of long continuance, and very troublesome. If a Woman with Child hath the Tenasmus, it brings many Inconveniences to her, and great danger of Miscarriage. *Hippocrates* saith, she will Miscarry; but I have known the contrary. True it is, a Woman seldom escapeth in that condition, for that Motion doth much disturb the Womb; because the same Muscles which serve to cast forth the Excrements, are employed for Delivery. If the Ulcer be near the Fundament or *Anus*, if it continue long, it turns to an incurable *Fistula*.

For the Cure, I shall refer you to the former Chapter, it being the same, both in the causes, and the part affected, of the same Nature with the other Intestines.

## CHAP. XLIX.

## Of the Flux of the Liver.

**F**luxus Hepaticus, a Flux of the Liver is, when serous and bloody Humors are voided, much like water wherein Flesh hath been washed: It is caused by an evil Disposition, consuming the Radical moisture of the Liver, and destroyeth the natural heat thereof; this Disposition cometh by burning and swooning Feavers, and by a hot Distemper of the Bowels; or by great Coldness, from abundance of Flegm and Melancholy which oppresseth the natural heat.

Outward Causes, are great draughts of cold Water, extraordinary eating of raw Sallets, poysonous and too violent Purges, salt, sharp and peppered Meats, which parch the substance of the Liver, may corrupt the natural heat. There is also a Bastard Flux of the Liver, when the Radical moisture is not in fault: nor the Faculty hurt, yet the Blood is impure and corrupt by the mixture of Choler, Melancholy, or some corrupt Matter; or by its staying too long in the Liver, and the parts adjacent, by which it is made thick, burnt or rotten: or the Spleen is in default, and doth not suck away the drossy blood. In this Bastard Flux, thick and black blood, and sometimes blood mixed with divers humors is voided. The Signes of this Disease may be gathered from what hath been said, and it differeth from the Dysentery in this, that the Stools are liquid, bloody and watry, and voided without pain. The Signes of the Causes must be considered: If this defect of the Liver come from a hot Distemper, there went before a burning Feaver, or a Feaver is present, green Vomits or Stools, Thirst, Foulness of Body, and want of Appetite, stinking Evacuations. If from Cold, the Stools are not so stinking, nor is there Thirst; the whole Body is colder and blewish. Moist and dry Causes produce contrary Effects; a moist Distemper causes more Stools and thin: a dry, fewer and thicker, and less in quantity, with much Thirst. This Disease is very dangerous, because a principal part is affected, and the Radical moisture consumed, which can scarcely be restored, and nothing but destruction to be hoped for: so much the more if the Disease come of heat. If it comes in Feaver, the whole Body melteth and putrieth. If it come from a cold Cause, it lieth the longer, and turns into an incurable Dropsie. Though a Bastard Flux of the Liver be dangerous, yet it is far less than a true one, because the Liver is sound, and the Distemper may be taken away, if the humors which corrupt the blood be evacuated, in the Cure of this Disease, your main work is



to strengthen the Liver, correct the Distemper, and stay the Flux. If it come from a cold Cause, deal with it as with a Dropsie. But if it come from a hot Cause (as for the most part it doth) you may gently evacuate the peccant humors with Rubarb, as you are taught in the Cure of the Dysentery. Then you must give Medicines which strengthen the Liver: Take of the Roots of Succory, Sorrel, Bloodwort, and Monk-Rubarb, of each one ounce, the Leaves of Plantane, Ensaive, Succory, Plantane, Agrimony and Dandelion, of each one handful, Wormwood half a handful, red Sanders two drams, Coriander-seed prepared, a dram, red Roses one Fugle, the shavings of Ivory and Spodium, of each a dram, boil them in a Barbey-water to a quart, and in the straining dissolve of the Syups of Quinces, Vinegar simple and the dried Roses, of each two ounces, of the Oyle of Vitrill, as much as will make it moderately thierp, and make a Julep for six Doses, to be given Morning and Evening, first and last. The Syrup of Mirtles, of Succory-simple or compound with Rubarb, the Syrup, Tincture or Magistery of Pearl is very good, and may be made use of as the former, or made into a Julep with Plantane, or other cooling Waters. The Liver of a Wolf is much commended, and it may be made into an Electuary, Opiate, or into any other form, with the aforementioned Ingredients. The tops of young Nettles boyled in Broth or Water are good, and the juyce taken is more powerful to stop the Flux and to purifie the blood. It is good to apply an Epitheme to the Region of the Liver, made of the aforementioned Ingredients, or as many of them as you think good. It is convenient that among your Medicines, which you give to stop the Flux, you administer such as are restorative, because in this Disease the Body is much consumed. Riverius much commendeth this distilled Water, and the truth is, it deserveth commendation: Take a fat Capon and a Partridge, pull and draw them, and fill their bellies with Succory, Agrimony and Snails, of each one handful, Conserve of Roses three ounces, Plantane and Coriander-seeds prepared, of each two drams, Citron Mirabolans one dram, the leaves of Bloodwort half a handful, the Troches of Amber and Spodium, of each four Scruples, the powder of the Electuary de Gemmis, Trisantaloon, and Diamargariton frigidum, of each one dram: sprinkle them with Styptick wine, and put them into the Fowls bellies, Boyl them in a Close Vessel in four pints of water, till half be consumed, then put them into a Glass Limbeck with three ounces of good wine, and distill them in Balneo: Give a little of the Water often by it self, or with other Medicines.

## CHAP. L.

## Of the Worms.

**W**orms (for the most part) breed in the Guts, therefore I shall speak of them here. *Galen* propounds three kinds of Worms, the first, are round and long, and are called *Terebes*, and are more common than the rest, and are bred in the Guts, but do sometimes get up into the Stomach. The second are called *Ascarides*, they are little like threds, and they commonly lie in the lower part of the thick Intestines, and over against the Sphincture-muscle. The third sort are broad Worms and long, though seldom seen: sometimes they are voided of an incredible length: they are bred of such nourishment as easily putrified in the Stomach: hence it cometh to pass that Children and such as are gluttonous, who eat much Fruit and such things as easily putrifie, especially more being eaten before the former is digested, are troubled with Worms. The Signs of Wormes in the Guts are divers, not in all alike; a stinking and sour Breath, Stools like Cow-dung, in colour gray like Potters-earth. Sometimes there is a continual Fever, Heaviness, Fainting, Loathing, Vomiting, unquenchable Thirst, and sometimes cold Sweats, an unequal Pulse, the Cheeks are sometimes red, sometimes blew; the Eyes shine, the Nose itcheth, the Teeth gnash, a dry Cough. There is pain in the Belly, sometimes by Inflammation, and sometimes by Distention, some start in their sleep. Sometimes the Body pincheth, and the Patient hath an insatiable Appetite, this a signe of flat Worms which eat up the Food. The *Ascarides* are known by the itching of the Fundament, and the Excrements are many times full of them. Sometimes the eating away of the Gums is a signe of Wormes. Though to Children and older Folk Worms are common, and little feared, yet many and dangerous symptoms and Diseases are bred by them. In the beginning of a Disease, it is evil for Worms to be voided alive or dead, especially alone without Dung; if they be alive, they signifie great Crudity and want of Nourishment; if dead, great putrefaction, by which they are killed. In the declining of a Disease, Worms coming forth with the Excrements, is a good Signe. The cure of the Worms consisteth in giving Medicines to kill them, and to evacuate them being killed. The best way to kill them; or at least to drive them to the lower Intestines, are these Simples which follow, viz. all the sorts of Wormwood, Southernwood, Camellint, Dogs-Tooth, Centaury, Horehound, Dittany, Hyssop, Rew, Savin, Peach-leaves, Coriander-seed, Harts-horn, Lupines, Mints, Garlicke,

Garlick, Eecampane, and many other: Of these Simples may several forms of Medicines be composed, mixing with them such things as purge, not onely to kill, but also carry away the cause of Worms; Rhubarb is much commended, because it may safely be given, if a Feaver be present. Take of Rhubarb one dram, yellow Sanders half a Scruple; infuse them in Purslane-water three Ounces, strain them, and dissolve the Powder of Rhubarb, and the Powder against the Worms (which you may have at the Apothecaries) of each one scruple, Syrup of Roses one ounce; mix them, and make a Potion. If the Feaver be not great, add Hiera Picra to your Potion, more or less, according to the strength of your Patient, afterwards give a Clyster, made of the Decoction of Liquorish, Raisins, Figs or Chicken-broath sweetned with Sugar and honey of Roses; such Clysters are good to draw them down into the thick Guts. Afterwards give a Clyster made after this manner: Take of Wormwood, Southernwood, Centaury, of each one handful: Lupines half an ounce: the Seed of wormwood and Coriander-seed prepared, of each two drams: In a half pint or pint of the strained Liquor (according unto the age of the Patient) dissolve one ounce or two of the Oyl of Wormwood and Salt, one dram and an half. To bring them out being killed, add to the former Clyster, Benedicta Laxativa, Hiera Picra and Cassia newly drawn, of each three drams, or more if the Patient can bear it. *Rouoletius* doth highly commend Diacarthanum, and the Infusion of Agarick in Oxyemel, because it not onely killeth Worms, but purgeth Flegm and corrupted Chyle, of which Worms breed and are nourished: but this remember, they are not proper Remedies in Feavers. Therefore if the Sick hath a Feaver, you must be careful how you administer hot Medicines; the like you must observe, if you administer any thing to people of hot Natures. Women do commonly give Worm-seed to their Children for the Worms, mixed with sweet things, which is a Medicine not to be despised. But lest it should hurt by its heat, infuse it two hours in Vinegar, afterwards mix it with boyled Honey, and make an Opiate, which *Amatus Lusitanus* much commendeth. *Foresius* as highly commendeth burnt Harts-horn given with Raisins. Aloes are much in use likewise, but the Pill de Aloe Rosata is much better, if half a dram be given at Night. The Juyc of Lemmons is good (if their be a Feaver) and a good Corrigent for hotter Medicines, If they have a hot Feaver, the Chymical Oyl of Juniper given one drop in Broath is excellent: and no less effectual is Spring-water, made sharp with Oyl of Vitriol. Many (and those very learned) Physicians have much commended quick-silver, who say, it may be taken in a moderate quantity with admirable success, and without the least danger to the Body; for *Dioscorides* saith, that he killeth



killeth no otherwise but by tearing of the Guts with its great weight, therefore we fear not to give it in a small quantity, because its weight and roundness will easily carry it through the Body. of this opinion was Matriolus, Bessvolus, Fallorius, Platerus, Fabricius, Hildanus, John Baptista Zappata, Baricellus, Sanctorius, and many others, who extol the benefit of this Medicine to the Heavens for its Virtue, and say, they never found any inconvenience by it. Those that dread the use of that, let them use *Me curius Ducis* well prepared; the Dose for once taking, is from eight to ten Grains, for a Boy of ten years of age; it will be better if you mix of *Disgridium*, half the weight of the former, to carry it sooner out of the Body, and to expel the Worms; if you give it to a Child younger, or to a weak Child, give it in a smaller quantity. Lastly, you may make Topicks of what form you please, to apply to the Belly: Take of the Oyls of worm-wood, Mints and Bitter Almonds, of each one ounce, the Juice of worm-wood and Rue, of each two ounces, wormseed, Aloes and Elicampine in powder, of each one dram, Colloquintida six drams, of the Gall of an Oxe two or three ounces, with Wax, sufficient to make an Unguent; Or so much (if you please) as will make a Plaister, and apply it, if the Sick be loose, leave out the Colloquintida.

## CHAP. LI.

### *Of the immoderate Flux of the Hemorrhoids.*

**T**Hough a moderate Flux of the Hemorrhoids be healthful, and preserveth a man from many and dangerous Diseases, viz. the Pleurisie, Peripneumonia, Stone in the Kidneys, Madness, Melancholy, and from many other Diseases; yet the immoderate Flux is very perillous, and brings many pernicious Diseases, viz. Weakness of the whole Body, Coolness of the Bowels and Liver, an Atrophy, Cachexia, and Dropic for want of natural heat, for by this Flux the blood is wasted, which is the Treasure of Life, and Cherisher of the whole Body. This Flux hath the same Cause that other Bleedings have, viz. Blood offending in quantity, or quality: In quantity when plenty of blood is brought to the Hemorrhoid Veins, and dilateth and openeth the Orifices, or over-mastereth the retentive Faculty, hence followeth a Flux. If the Blood offend in quantity, as sharpness and thinness, it stirs up the expulsive Faculty, and sendeth forth both good and bad blood. This Disease is known by weakness and a yellowish colour of the Body, coming upon a long Flux of the Hemorrhoids. If too much blood be the cause of the Flux, there went

before

before Causes of increase of blood, and the beginning of the Flux was a refreshment to the Patient, but the Flux continuing he grows weak; If the Flux came from sharpness and thinness of the blood; there preceded Causes which breed Choler or sharp water, the Body is of a cholerick constitution, the Blood floweth violently and is strutting, whereas if it offend only in quantity, it is black and Melancholy. To perform the Cure, you must stanch or moderate the blood by revelling, deriving, thickning and astringing Means. First, open a Vein in the Arm, and if the Patient hath not lost much blood, but aboundeth therewith, draw blood plentifully; otherwise, draw little and often. Rub and bind the superior parts, and Cup and Scarrifie the Shoulders that the blood may be revelled. By gentle Purges, derive the cholerick Humors, which make the blood so violent: Purge with such things as have an astringent quality, as Rubarb, Myrabolans, Tamatinds such as are prescribed against Vomiting of blood, and bleeding at the Nose. But beware lest the Body be too much bound, lest by straining, the Veins will be more open; therefore after the use of Astringents, let the Patient eat sharp French Prunes before and after Meat. Then you must give such things as may thicken the Blood (have recourse to the 19, 30, and 39. Chapters.) Lastly, you must prepare astringent Fomentations and Unguents to be applied to the Hemorrhoid Veins: boyl Mallein in Smiths-water, and foment; or you may add other Herbs of the same Nature to it thus; Take of the Roots of Bistort half a pound, the leaves of Plantane, Mullein, Shepheards-purse, Bramble and Oak-leaves; of each two handfuls, Pomegranate-flowers and Peels, Galls and Sumach-berries, of each one handful, red Roses, two Pugils; Myrtles half a dracht, Allum one ounce, boyl them in three parts of Smiths-water; and one of red wine, and foment the part therewith; But let it be moderately hot. Or with a greater quantity of the Simples, you may make a Bath for the Sick to sit in; but let it not be hot. Or you may make an Oyntment with their Juyces and Bolearmionick, Terra Sigillata, Sanguis Draconis, Ceruse, Vinegar, and such like; Unguentum Comittisse is good to anoint the Veins and the Back. The Dripping of an Eel is much commended. Or take the hairs of an Hare burnt, Spiders-Webs mixed with the White of an Egg, and apply it. Or touch the Vein with Oyl of Vitriol, and in a desperate case with Aqua-fortis. If the Veins should ulcerate, cleanse the Ulcer as you are taught in divers places of this Treatise: But be sure you consider the state of the Liver and Spleen; if they be hot or weak, cool and strengthen them, as you are taught in their proper Chapters.

## C H A P. LII.

## Of the Pain of the Hemorrhoids.

**T**HE Hemorrhoid-Veins sometimes do swell and cause very great pain; the cause of this differeth not from the former, for the blood offending in quantity or quality, and cannot open the ends of the Veins, causeth a Tumor or Inflammation. These Tumors are sometimes like Grapes, Mulberries, Warts, and sometimes like Bladders: some are external, others internal. It is convenient that you make a distinction between the Hemorrhoids, and the Clefts of the Fundament, which are like those chops which are in the Lips, caused by sharp Northerly winds: and the Tumor called Condiloma, which is in colour black, as the Hemorrhoids are in the Veins, and round. There is also in the Fundament sometimes to be found a Carnous swelling, called Thymy, and sometimes in the Privities of Men and Women, and they are like the Flowers of Thyme, they are little, white or reddish, without pain; the Hemorrhoids are for the most part black, greater and painful. The Piles are greater than the former, they are called *Fici*, they are blew and painful, are like the Hemorrhoids, onely they are a Carnous swelling, and the Hemorrhoids is a swelling of the Veins. The Piles are of a Malign quality, and do sometimes ulcerate. The swelling of the Hemorrhoids is not dangerous, unless it be inflamed and Grangreen: Or if it suppurate and come to an Ulcer, and chance to turn to a Fistula, which may prove incurable. To cure, you must bleed, and make such Revulsions, prescribed in the former Chapter; likewise open the Saphena: you must not use strong Purges, lest you draw more humors to the place, yet you must keep the Body soluble, lest the voiding of hard Dung greatly encrease pain, keep the Body soluble by this or the like Medicine: Take of the Leaves of Lettuce, Burrage, Bugloss and Mallows, of each one handful, Polypody of the Oak three ounces, Liquorish, Raisins stoned, and Currans, of each half an ounce, Bugloss, Burrage and Violet-flowers, of each one Pugil; Boil it in running water to a pint and an half, strain it, and infuse therein an ounce of Senna (the Liquor being kept hot) six hours; then put in of Cassia newly drawn, one ounce, and let it stand an hour, strain it, and clarify it, and sweeten it with two ounces of Syrup of Violets, make four Potions thereof, and give it twice a day first and last. Then you must apply such things to them which have power to ease pain, viz. the Oyl of Peach-kernels, sweet Almonds, Nuts Eggs, Box; or Oyls of the Seeds of Poppy or Henbane. Of these may divers Liniments be made good to appease pain,



## Chap. 52. Of the pain of the Hemorrhoids. 147

pain, discufs the Tumor, and to dry the Ulcers: Take of the Oyl of Eggs (made in a leaden Mortar) the Oyl of Violets and Roses, of each one ounce, Populeon half an ounce, the Oyl of Box two Scruples, w.<sup>th</sup> Hens-grease and Goats-Suit, sufficient to make a Liniment, and apply it, or take of the juyce of Purslane and Honey, of each two ounces, white Diactylon mollified with the Oyl of Chamomel, two ounces, Opium six grains, make an Unguent. *Horslius* commendeth wild Flax made into an Oyntment with Hogs-grease: to discufs the Tumor, the Balsom of Sulphur is much commended, or this Cataplasme is good. Take of Plantane, Pilewort and Mallows, of each a like quantity; make a Decoction in Milk till the Liquor be half wasted, strain out the Herbs; and make a Cataplasme with the Crums of White bread, adding to it the Oyl of Violets, Roses, Myrtles, and the like. Or a Cataplasme made of the heads of Leeks, is much commended. Green Elder-leaves boyled to slime and applied, and often renewed, are very good: the Lungs of a sheep or Goat taken hot, and some slices thereof applied, or if the sick lie upon them, it oftentimes proveth effectual. If you see good, you may make a Fomentation with Mullein, Mallows, Marsh-Mallows, Pellitory of the Wall, Flax and Fenugreek seed in Milk, Water or Oyl, or all of them; or with a great quantity make a Bath: Or a Fume made of the Powder of Darnel, Mullein, Pilewort dried and thrown upon hot coals, and the fume received: the Decoction of Yarrow, Mullein and Pilewort, is a good Medicine to take inwardly, or a Syrup made of their Juyces against both Hemorrhoids and Piles: If they will not open, bleed them with Leeches, or rub them till they bleed: If the Piles be ulcerated, the Balsom of Sulphur, the Oyl of Eggs stirred in a leaden Mortar, is good to cleanse them. To conclude, those that are subject to these Distempers ought to have an Issue in the Leg.

## CHAP. LIII.

### Of a hot Distemper of the Liver.

**A** Hot Distemper of the Liver is either with or without Matter, but for the most part, a hot Distemper of the Liver doth produce hot and cholerick humors: It is called in Greek *Δυσπαθία*, it is caused either by hot weather, violent exercise, anger, or such like passions of the Minde: hot or spiced nourishment, drinking much Wine, or any thing that is naturally hot. This Distemper is known by loathing of Meat, the Body Costive and hot, especially the Palms of the Hands, and Soles of the Feet, the whole Body grow-

eth lean; a bitterness of the Mouth, and for the most part a Feaver; if there be plenty of humors, the Patient vomiteth, or evacuateth downwards Choler; he is the worse for hot, and the better for cold things: this Distemper though not very dangerous in it self, yet may be the cause of many Diseases; it is hard to cure it if the Stomach be cold, because what you give to cool the Liver, increaseth the distemper of the Stomach. To cure it, you must cool the Liver and evacuate Choler. First, Give a laxative and cooling Clyster, then open the Liver-Vein in the right Arm, and draw as much blood as the Patients strength will well bear, either at once at or several times: then make an Apozeme to purge Choler thus: Take the Roots of yellow Dock, or Monks Rubarb, Sorrel, Succory, and Licoris, of each one ounce, the Leaves of Endive, Succory, Fumitory, Dandelion and Burrage, of each one handful, of the great cold Seeds, of each three drams, of the Cordial-flowers, of each one Pugil, Tamarinds one Ounce, boyl them to a pint and an half, then add to infuse of Rubarb and Senna, of each half an ounce, Syrup of Succory, with Rubarb and Roses Solutive, added at the last, of each one ounce, and clarifie it, aromatize it with two drams of yellow Sanders. Let the Patient take it four Mornings: let his ordinary Drink be Barley-water, and put therein the Syrup of Lemmons or Maiden-hair; or if he delight in things that are sharper, make it sharp with the Spirit of Sulphur or Vitriol. Whey likewise is very good, it is best if it be made by turning the Milk with Vinegar, or the juyce of Lemmons, and add such things as I advised for the Barley-water. Likewise you may prepare Juleps to cool the Liver: Take the Waters of Endive, Succory, Sorrel and Bugloss, of each one ounce, the Syrups of Lemmons, sweet Apples and Pomegranates, of each one ounce, of the Syrup of Coral compound, half an ounce, the Oyl of Vitriol ten drops, mix them, and make a Julep for four Doses: Or, Take of the Conserve of the Flowers of Bugloss, Violets and Succory, of each one ounce, the Conserve of Hips one ounce and an half, with Syrup of Lemmons make an Opiate, and take a little often. Likewise you may make a Decoction of China and Hepatick Herbs, sweetning it with the aforementioned Syrups, and taking half a Pint in the Morning. Likewise of the aforementioned cooling Herbs, you may make an Apozeme to cool the Liver, or you may make a Bath to cool and moisten the Body.

CHAP. LIV.

Of the Inflammation of the Liver.

**T**HE Inflammation of the Liver is a hot Tumor occasioned by Blood, out of its proper Vessels, sent into the substance of the Liver: this Tumor ariseth either from pure Blood, or else the blood is mixed with Choler, Flegm or Melancholy, so producing either a true Erysipelous, Oedematous or Schirrous Phlegmon. This Tumor is sometimes in the gibbous, or hollow part of the Liver. The Causes of this Disease are too much blood, or the heat, thinness or sharpness thereof, and by its motion in the Veins it is sometimes thrown into the Liver: For, the Liver being hot and in pain doth attract the humors to its self; or by its weakness, is forced to receive the burden that stronger parts lay upon it, according to the Proverb, *The weakest go to the wall*. Sometimes an obstruction of the Liver, by retaining the thick humours, which by a preternatural heat is inflamed. The external Causes are the same, which cause heat of the Liver: To which add a stroke or fall, bruising the Liver, or Medicines applied to a cold Stomach, or a Cupping-glass fastned to the Region of the Liver. The signs of the Disease, are heaviness in the right Hypocondrion, a weighty pain sometimes extending it self to the Throat, and sometimes to the lower Ribs, a Fever more or less violent according to the nature of the Humour offending, viz. Choler or Flegm, and difficulty of breathing, because the motion of the Diaphragma is hindred; a dry Cough, an unequal Pulse and like a Saw, the Tongue at the beginning red, afterwards black, great thirst, loathing of Meat, vomiting Choler, and sometimes Flegm, a pale and yellowish colour of the whole Body, red and flaming urine, the Sick hath more ease lying upon his back, than upon either side; for the most part he is Costive, because the heat of the Liver drieth up the moisture of the Chylus; but if the Liver be weak also, the sick is loose, and the Excrements are like water wherein flesh hath been washed. If the gibbous part of the Liver be affected, you may feel the Tumor in the right Hypocondrion, the breath is ferched with difficulty, and the pain reacheth to the right side of the Throat. If the cavity of the Liver be affected, the Tumor is not felt, but because that part lieth upon the Stomach, there is greater loathing of Meat, vomiting, Thirst, and sometimes looseness of the Belly, by reason of the corruption which the distemper of the Liver causeth in the Stomach. The Signs of the Causes are thus known, if the Inflammation



tion be of blood onely, the face is either red or duskyish, the Pulse is great and soft, the Urine is red and thick, the Body is full of flesh, and there is sweetness in the mouth; and for the most part the Patient is young and hath fed high. If Choler cause the Inflammation, the Face is yellow, the Pulse is swift, hard and unequal, the Urine thin and yellow, the Body thin, the Eyes hollow, a bitter taste in the Mouth, and Cholerick vomiting. The Symptomes of the Inflammation of the Abdomen differ little from them of the Inflammation of the Liver, therefore let us a little consider the difference: If the Muscles of the Abdomen be inflamed, the skin is extended, and if you lay hold of it, you cannot move it, but if the Liver be inflamed, if you lay hold on the Muscles, they yield, and the Tumor appeareth deeper. If these Muscles be inflamed, the colour appeareth fresh, and in its natural colour; but if the Liver be inflamed, the colour is yellow as in the Jaundise, you must likewise distinguish between the Inflammation of the Liver and a Pleurisie. Sometimes moist and bloody Stools distinguish it: in the Pleurisie the pain will be vehement, and great towards the right Hypochondria, no change of colour, the Cough great and dry, with bloody-spittle for the most part, the Pulse hard and like a Saw: the inflammation of the Liver is manifested by the signs laid down before. If the Mesentery be inflamed, the Tumor appeareth beneath the region of the Liver, the Stools will be thin and moist, with unconcocted matter; if the party recover, the matter quickly is concocted, the colour dangerous, for the most altered.

*Progn.* Every Inflammation of the Liver is dangerous, for the most part deadly; if the Patient be not cured, or killed presently, the Disease ends in a Dropsie, Atrophy or Consumption. If Choler be the cause of the Inflammation, it is worse then if blood were the Cause, and the Feaver is stronger. The Hiccough in this Distemper is a very evil sign, for it shews the greater Malignity of the Inflammation, which doth disturb the Stomach. A Flux joyned with it, unless it be critical and the humors evacuated, concocted is deadly. To cure it, follow the Rules prescribed in the Forty second Chapter. *Of the Inflammation of the Stomach.* Let his Drink be Barley-water, with a little Syrup of Violets. If the Disease be stubborn to the former Medicines prescribed in the Forty second Chapter, and this following Apozeme: Take of the Roots of Smallage, Fenel and Parsley, of each two ounces, the leaves of Agrimony, Violets, Succory and Maiden-hair, of each one handful, Polypody of the Oak four ounces, Chamomel-flowers one Ounce, the Seeds of Fenel, Gromwel and Parsley, of each one dram; boyl it to a pint and a half, and in the strained Liquor infuse an ounce of Senna, and three drams of Rubarb; afterwards add of Syrup of Vio-

# Chap. 54. Of the Inflammation of the Liver. 151

*lets and Vinegar simple, of each two ounces : Divide it into four Doses, and let the Sick take every other Morning : then make an Epithem, Liniment, Unguent. or Plaister thus ; Take of the Juicy of Endive, Succory, Sorrel and Plantain, of each half an ounce, of the Oyles of Roses, Wormwood, Camomel and Myrtles, of each one ounce, Vinegar half an ounce, boyl it to the consumption of the Juices, then add of the three Sanders in powder, of each one Scruple, with wax sufficient make an unguent, and anoint the Region of the Liver. If the pain and Feaver decreaseth, you must add to the former Oynment such things as dissolve & mollifie, as well as cool : as the Flowers of Camomel and Melilot, Barley-meal, the Roots of Marsh-mallows, Calamus Aromaticus and Cypress, the Leaves of Mallows, Violets and Agrimony, the Seeds of Annise, Fennel, Fenugreek and Flax. Or with these Simples you may make a Fomentation.*

If the Inflammation be not discussed, as it seldom can, it tends to Suppuration, otherwise to a Gangreen. The Imposthume for the most part is compleat in twenty days, it is very dangerous, and few escape thereof : but if it be little, and onely in one part of the Liver, and the Matter white which comes forth by Urine and Stool, the Sick escapeth ; if it be in the outward part of the Liver, it may be opened by an actual Cautey, and if the Matter which cometh forth be white, the Patient escapeth. After an Imposthume is broken, there remaineth an Ulcer, if the Patient continueth, the Ulcer is hard to cure, and bringeth the Patient into a Dropsie or Marasmus. But sometimes sharp, cholerick and corroding humours in the Liver produce an Ulcer without inflammation : This Ulcer is discovered by the signs following ; pain in the right Hypochondrion, mattery and bloody Stools, and pain in the Bowels as in the Dysentery ; onely here the weight and pricking about the Liver maketh a distinction : sometimes pieces of the Liver have been voided by Stool : If the outward part of the liver be ulcerated, the Urine is mattery, without any disease in the Bladder or Reins : the colour is yellow, sometimes small Pimples in the face, a stinking Breath, loathing Flesh, and the Sick fainteth often. An Ulcer in the Liver is accompanied ( for the most part ) with an Hætick Feaver ; for the most part death lodgeth not far from it : that which followeth an Imposthume and Inflammation is more dangerous than the other. If it tends to Suppuration, it is hardly cured, yet you must proceed thus ; Take of the Emplaister of Diachylon magnum, and Melilot, of each one ounce, Gum Ammoniack dissolved in Vinegar half an ounce, Oyl of wormwood and wax, make a Plaister and spread it upon Leather in the form of an half Moon, and apply it to the region of the Liver. Make use also of mollifying Cataplasms. Give inwardly Chicken-broath, and boyl therein

Marsh and common Mallows, Figgs, &c. When the Imposthume is broken, make use of the Medicines prescribed for the cure of an Ulcer in the Stomach, give him to drink Whey, or Barley-water and Honey of Roses: If the Suppuration be outwardly and after the opening thereof, the Matter is filthy, red and stinking, Death must perfect the Cure; but if the Matter evacuated be white and concocted, there is hopes of recovery.

## CHAP. LV.

## Of the Obstruction of the Liver.

**E**μροπαξίς, or the obstruction of the Liver, is a Disease Organical, a preternatural straitness of the Branches of the *Vena Porta*, and *Vena Cava*, as also the whole substance of the Liver, which hinders the distribution of Blood and Nourishment, by reason of a preternatural Humor which shutteth up the passages. The quantity or quality of the Humours may be the cause of Obstruction: plenty of Humors cause Obstruction in the Cavity of the Vessels, which by fulness are so distended that they cannot contract themselves to send forth the Matter. The quality of the Humors is gross, tough and clammy Excrements sticking to the passages, and are more thickened by the heat of the part, viz. Flegm, which easily groweth thick and clammy; Melancholy which is cold, thick and droffy: Choler staying long in the Liver, grows thick, and sometimes the thickness of the Blood may cause Obstruction, sometimes gross Vapours may cause Obstruction, as in the Cholick. All things which make thick and clammy humours, as a cloudy and thick Air; Meats that are astringent, cold, of gross juyce, hard of Concoction, being immoderately eaten, or more eaten than the Constitution of the Body can well dispense with, as Beef, Bacon, Pork, and Fish dried in the Smoke; Cheese, Pease, Beans, &c. Pears, Quinces, Medlars, Services and Mushrooms; Bread not well baked, muddy Ale, and astringent Wine. A cold distemper of the Liver, which cannot well concoct the Chylus, but turns it into a salt, tartarous and mucilaginous Matter, may be the cause of Obstruction. Distempers of the Stomach, by reason of which it cannot well concoct, but beget crude Chyle, which the Liver cannot well order, may be the cause.

*Diag.* In this Distemper the Excrements are not natural, but are moist, white, chylous or bloody; the Urine white, thin and watry: when the Patient walketh fast, or up a Hill, he breatheth with difficulty, the Face pale, the whole Body lean and dull; a Sense of weight



## Chap. 55. Of the Obstruction of the Liver. 153

in the Hypochondria, especially after Meat, and though the sick hath eat Meat light, and little in quantity, yet he seemeth as if he had overgorged himself. Sometimes the Hypochondria is extended, and a dry Cough. The Causes are thus known; If the Pain be heavy, extended and fixed, gross Humors are the cause; sharper pains and more moveable declare wind: If cold Humors be the Cause, there is more weight, the Face is pale, no Thirst nor Feaver; a thick and cold Diet preceded: the contrary signs declare hot Humors to be the cause, Choler maketh the Face yellow and blood-red.

**Prog.** An Obstruction newly begun may be easily cured, but an old, hardly. If the Obstruction of the Liver be not removed, it breeds many dangerous diseases: In a word, it may be called the Mother of all diseases. That which comes of crude and flegmatick Humors is worse than that which comes of wind.

You must begin the Cure with universal Evacuations, suitable to the nature of the disease, the strength and constitution of the Patient. If Blood abound, open the Liver-vein, but beware lest you cool the Body too much: then you must make opening Broths thus; Take of the roots of Smallage, Parsly, Fennel, and Asparagus, of each one ounce, Agrimony, Maiden-hair, and Polypody of the Oak, of each one handfull, the seeds of Anise, Parsly and Fennel, of each one dram, boyl them in Chicken or Mutton-broth, and strain it: Every Morning give the Sick a Porrenger full, dissolving first therein Cream of Tartar one dram, Salt of Wormwood and Tamarisk, of each half a scruple: Or every other day infuse in his Broth half an ounce of Senna, and give it as before. Baths and Fomentations made of softning and opening things are good; Take of the Roots of Marsh-mallows, Lillies, and Briony, of each two ounces, the middle Rind of Tamarisk, the Bark of Caper-roots, the Roots of Sea-holly, Cypress and dwarf-Elder, of each one ounce, the leaves of Marsh and common Mallows, Camomel, Mints, Germaner, Penitroyal, Violets, and Wormwood, of each one handfull, the Seed of Flax, Fenugreek and Juniper-Berries, of each one ounce, the Flowers of Broom, Elder, Camomel and Melilot, of each one handfull, boyl them in Chalybiated water, and (if you please) add one part of White-wine, and foment the Region of the Liver; or with a greater quantity make a Bath. Your wit (if you have any) will teach you how to make Unguents, of the same Ingredients to anoint the part after fomenting. It is good to have in readines an Opiate that openeth Obstructions, strengtheneth the Stomach, Liver and other parts; Take of the Conserve of Wormwood two ounces: the root of Elicampane, and Citron Pills candied, of each one ounce, Candied Nutmegs half an ounce, one Myrabolan candied, Confectio Alchermes two drams, Diarrhodon Ab-batis one dram, Salt of Wormwood and Tamarisk, of each one Scruple, Saffron,

Saffron and Amber greece, of each half a scruple, with Syrup of the five opening Roots make an Opiate; Of which let the Patient take the quantity of a Walnut every Morning.

In this case Steel-Medicines are of excellent use, and well approved of by Galenists as well as Paracelsians: Sometimes the powder may be given alone, or of it may be made several sorts of medicines, as steel-wine, Syrups, Opiats, Pills and Lozenges. Some infuse it in white Wine or Claret, and drink thereof: many wayes are steeld-Wines prepared, I shall onely prescribed that which my self have found effectual, and leave every man to his liberty to prepare it as he sees good. Take the powder of Steel prepared with Vinegar, three ounces: the Roots of Dwarf-Elder, two ounces; the Root of Elicampagne and Sea-Holly, of each one ounce: the yellow Sanders and Epithimum, of each one ounce: the Flowers of Chamomil, Broom and Rosemary, of each half an ounce: (it will not be worse if you add two ounces of Senna, and half an ounce of Rubarb) the best white-wine, three Quarts: Let them infuse in a Bath twelve dayes, twice a day you must shake them: Let the Patient take two or three ounces every morning as long as need requireth. Likewise may Pills, Opiates, and Syrups be prepared of the infusion and extract of Steel. But this remember, That after all medicines made of Steel, must much Exercise be used, to make the strength of the medicine to go to the parts obstructed. Quercetan commendeth the compound powder of Aron to open Obstructions: two drams taken in a morning in some convenient Liquor, for several dayes: See the Fourth Book. But of all medicines, to open Obstructions, those made of Vitriol, Tartar, and Steel claim the preheminnence; if Doctor Duncie have not the administering thereof.

## CHAP. LVI.

### *Of the Schirrhus of the Liver.*

**T**HIS Disease is a hard Tumor in the Liver without Pain: it is either perfect or imperfect; the perfect is without Pain or Sense: that which is imperfect hath some pain. This is bred by crude, viscous and clammy Humors sent from other parts, or bred in the Liver by evil concoction. The imperfect Schirrus is caused by immoderate use of discussing, or repercussive Medicines; or things which by cooling and binding do thicken the matter, and keep it from dissolving.

The Signs are, a Hardness in the right Hypochondrium, and a great Heaviness

Heaviness  
going as in  
Scurvy is in  
the good ul  
there is a  
to be. To  
is incurable  
difficulty.  
is caused by  
both which  
To cure  
antecedent  
Obstruction  
Rheumatism  
and Gout  
tish, or  
dram; Dis  
Pills, of wh  
dayes, but  
the steeld  
Likewise the  
use of no me

The Ju  
Body.  
black proce  
of the yellow  
Cavities  
Fatt, fro  
Obstruction  
the Choler  
whole Body  
A leone  
passage in  
is carried  
by gross Ph  
stones bred

Heaviness, especially when the Breath is fetched, neither Fever nor pain, as in the Inflammation, or at least but little pain; when the *Schirrus* is imperfect, the Face is pale and greenish, because there is no good Blood produced by it. The whole Body decayeth, because there is no Sanguification, nor Distribution of Nourishment as ought to be. To the Prognostick, *Galen* saith thus; an insensible *Schirrus* is incurable: that which is sensible is cureable, though with much difficulty. A *Schirrus* turns to the Dropsie incurable; sometimes it causeth the Jaundice; and sometimes it cometh in the Jaundice, both which is very dangerous.

To cure it in the beginning of the Disease, you must take away the antecedent Cause, as you are taught in the preceding Chapter of Obstructions, all the Medicines there mentioned are proper for this. *Riverius* much commendeth these Pills following: Take of the best *Aloes* and *Gum Ammoniacum* dissolved in *Vinegar*, strained, and again made thick, of each half an ounce; *Mercurius Dulcis*, (well prepared) two drams; *Diagridium*, one dram, with *Oxymel* of *Squills*, make a Mass for Pills, of which, take half a dram in the morning, for twenty or thirty dayes, but sometimes rest, and in the intermediate dayes, make use of the steeled and other medicines, mentioned in the former Chapter. Likewise the Fomentation and Unguent there prescribed may be made use of to mollifie this Tumor.

## CHAP. LVII.

## Of the Jaundice.

**T**He Jaundice is a spreading of a yellow Colour over the whole Body. There is a twofold Jaundice, the yellow and the black; the black proceeds from the Spleen, and is rare. I shall here speak only of the yellow Jaundice. This Disease comes from three principal Causes:

First, from an evil Disposition of the Liver, as an Inflammation, Obstruction, *Schirrus*, or Weakness thereof, that it cannot separate the Choler from the Blood, and by that means it is carried over the whole Body.

A second Cause is the Obstruction of the Gall, which hinders its passage into the Guts, and so remains in the blood, with which it is carried to all parts of the Body. The Gall is obstructed, either by gross Phlegm, or Choler abounding, and sometimes by little Stones bred therein,

The



The third Cause is the Malignity of the choierick humors, which consisteth either in the great Quantity which Nature cannot regulate, nor separate from the Blood: or fills the Vessels so full, that it cannot contract it self to expel it. Or else it consisteth in the evil Quality of the Humor, which, by corrupting the rest, hinders their due Evacuations, which Nature perceiving, striveth suddenly to cast it forth: as it sometimes happens in choierick Feavers, after the taking of Poyson, or after the biting of some venomous Creature.

The signs of the yellow Jaundice are a yellowness of the body, especially the whites of the Eyes, and the Balls of the Cheeks: choierick Vomiting, and Hiccoughs, Laziness, Itching of the body, and bitterness of the tongue. If it come from a distemper of the Liver, there preceded an Inflammation, Obstruction, &c. If from an Obstruction of the Gall the belly is bound, and the Excrements white, the Urine yellow or reddish, which will dye a new piece of Linnen Cloth. If it come from the malignity of the humour, both the Urine and the Excrements are high coloured, especially after a putrid Feaver; now if the Feaver remain, the Jaundice is Symptomatical; If, when the Jaundice appears, the Feaver ceaseth, the Urine and Excrements be of their natural colour, the Jaundice is critical. Poyson taken and venomous bitings the Patient can declare. They, who in a Feaver have the Jaundice before the seventh or critical day, are in great danger; the contrary if it happen on a critical day. The Jaundice coming upon an Inflammation of the Liver is dangerous, because the Disease commonly ends in an Imposthume: if upon a Schirrus, it is no less dangerous, because that ends in the Dropsie. If it come from an Obstruction of the Gall, it is most easie to cure, because the Passage is near the Guts, except stones breed in the Passages be the cause, which, by reason they cannot be dissolved, are counted incurable.

For the Cure, If it come from distemper of the Liver, have recourse to the foregoing Chapters: if the Jaundice be critical it needs no Cure. If from the Obstruction of the Gall, to cure it, take away the Obstruction, which may be done, by the Medicines mentioned in the Chapter Of the Obstructions of the Liver. Yet lest I should seem to omit any thing needful; I shall apply a Medicine or two proper to the disease. If the body be plethorick, Phlebotomy may be profitable. Afterwards evacuate the Humours with medicines that principally purge Choler: Take of the Electuary of the Juice of Roses, and the Electuary of the Prints solutive, of each three dram: Rhubarb in powder, one dram: Saffron half a scruple; with Sugar make a Bolus, give it once or twice, as the Patient stands in need thereof. Then make a Decoction thus: Take the Roots of Smilage, Nettles, and Madder, of each one handful: the Leaves of Colandine, Cleavers, Fumi-

*Chelidonium*

ons, which  
not regul-  
ally, that it  
in the evil  
under their  
ply to eat  
after the  
ecture.  
the body,  
cks: chow  
body, and  
the Liver,  
man Ob-  
nts white;  
of Linen  
the Urine  
etric Fea-  
tical; If,  
and Excre-  
Posion u-  
who in a  
ays, are in  
the Janu-  
peccate  
schirous  
come from  
the Pul-  
the cause,  
table.  
have re-  
al it needs  
it, raise  
mes men-  
Yet let I  
decide or  
theatomy  
medicines  
the force of  
ams: Al-  
er make a  
reol. Then  
ster, and  
ing, Femi-  
1072

## Chap. 58.

## Of the Dropsie.

157

corry, wormwood, Centaury, and the Tops of Saint John's wort, of each one handful: Cinnamon, and Shavings of Ivory, of each two drams: the white dung of an Hen, and the dung of a Goose, of each two drams: tie it up in a Ragg, and with it a scruple of Saffron; make a Decoction in white wine, (or if you please, in Fumitory, Wormwood-water, or the like) to a quart. Let the Patient take a quarter of a pint fasting, and gently exercise himself. Of these and Ingredients of the like Nature may any form of Medicine be prepared. Whilst inward medicines are administred, foment or anoint the Region of the Liver, as you are taught in the foregoing Chapters.

## C H A P. LVIII.

## Of the Dropsie.

There are three kinds of Dropsies, the first is called in Greek *Ἀσκίτης* *Ascites*, the second *Τυμpanίτης* *Tympanites*, the third *Ἀνασάρκα* *Anasarca* or *Λευκοπλεγματιά* *Leucoplegmatia*. *Ascites* is a swelling of the Belly, caused of a serous humour, and salt, (as Water it is cold, as Salt it is hot, infecting the mouth of the Stomach, hence cometh a Fever and Thirst,) and not onely the Belly, but sometimes the Cods, Thighes, Legs, and Feet: and sometimes it begins in the Legs and Feet, and ascends upward.

It is the Opinion of most Physitians, That all Dropsies have their original from a cold distemper of the Liver, which cannot make Blood, but Water, Phlegm, and Wind. This Opinion is undeniably true in *Anasarca*, but in *Ascites* and *Tympanites* it is questionable, although sometimes a cold distemper may be the cause thereof. The Experience of Modern Physitians hath put the business out of doubt, who have found the Liver sound in distlected Bodies, who dyed of the Dropsie. And if the Liver should breed watry Blood, what reason can be given that the Water should be sent to the Cavity of the Belly onely, and not to other parts, and breed *Anasarca*? A Dropsie may be caused by a hot distemper of the Liver caused of Feavers, much Wine, or hot Meats, which doth disperse the native heat, by which means, the Liver, Spleen, and Kidneys become less active, and not able to draw the Water, nor cast it forth by the Ureters: the like may be said of a cold distemper. Some external Cause may hinder the Attraction and Distribution of the Water, as namely, the drinking of much cold Water, or hot Wine, or any thing that

that doth diminish or disperse the native hear.

The Dropsie *Tympanitis*, hath its Name from *Tympanum* a Drum; because the Belly soundeth like a Drum; and is much stretched out. This Stretching hath its original from Wind shut up in the Cavity of the *Abdomen*, and sometimes in the Cavity of the Guts, as *Platycus* observed. This Wind is bred by crude and thick, phlegmatick or melancholy Humors, which being stirred by heat, and made thin, become thick and flatuous vapours, which are hard to be dissolved. Nor doth Wind alone cause a Dropsie, but with it a mixture of Water, *Ascites*. *Anasarca* is bred of a flegmatick humour spread throughout the whole Body, and maketh every part to swell and be white: a cold distemper of the Liver is the cause; when the Liver, instead of making good Blood, produceth such Humors. The Cause of this Disease may be imputed to all such things as cool the Liver too much, and hinder its Concoction, as a Diet too cold and moist, the stopping of the Terms or Hemorrhoids, all Obstructions and Tumors in the Liver, much bleeding, or any preternatural Evacuation.

You may make the Diagnosticks thus; In *Ascites*, the Belly is great and broad, press the Sides and you may hear the Water make a Noise: when the Patient turneth in his Bed, his Belly swayeth to that side: the Thighs, Legs Feet and Cods swell, but the upper parts decay: the Urine is little in Quantity, thick in Substance, in colour red: In the increase of the disease, the Patient breatheth with much difficulty, by reason of the abundance of Water which lyeth upon the *Diaphragma*, especially when he lyeth down; therefore the Patient (for the most part) is forced to stand and sit: the safe humour swimming in the Stomach, causeth a continual Thirst, and a lingering Fever. In the *Tympany* the Belly soundeth like a Drum, is big, but less burthen some; when the Patient lyeth upon his Back, his Belly remaineth hard and extended, nor doth it sway when he turneth himself: the beginning of this Dropsie (for the most part) is accompanied with pain about the Navel and Reins. In *Anasarca*, not only the Belly and lower parts, but the upper parts also swell; if you thrust the Swelling with your Finger, it doth pit and leave an Impression: the Flesh is soft and loose, and the Skin pale and earthy: they have a lingering Fever, breathing difficultly, and the Urine is thin and white.

To the Prognostick, I say, Every Dropsie is hard to be cured, the older the Patient is, and the longer the disease hath continued, the more perillous. *Anasarca* is least dangerous: *Ascites* and the *Tym-*



*Tympany* are sometimes one more dangerous than another, according to their Causes: *Ascites* coming from a Tumor or Ulcer of the Liver or any of the internal parts, it is more dangerous than a *Tympany*, *et è contra*. If a Dropsie come upon an acute disease, it is evil. If the Liver, being full of Water, discharge it self into the *Omentum*, the disease ends in Death. If in the beginning of a Dropsie, ( the Patient being strong, and free from Tumor or Ulcer in the Liver or any internal part ) the Water floweth into the Belly and causeth a Flux, the Patient is cured, if the contrary happen, expect a contrary effect. This I gather from the Words of Hippocrates; *In the beginning of a Dropsie, if there come a Flux of the Belly, without want of concoction, or crudity, it is prevented, the less Urine is voided the worse, because the drink runs not to the Reins, but to the Belly, It is a very hopeful sign, when the Patient voideth more Urine than he drinketh, and the Belly groweth less. Imposthumes or spots in the Legs of Hydropical men, are for the most part fore-runners of death. If a man who hath been cured of the Dropsie fall into the same again, it is very dangerous. If a melancholy body have a Tympany, he seldom escapes; especially if he piss by drops. If the Hydropical person eat his meat and digest it well, and be not sick after, have no cough nor pain, his tongue not rough nor thirsty: if he be in a natural order without physick, and medicines work easily with him: if he be not faint, and his Urine change according to his diet, he may easily be cured.*

For the Cure, you must consider if the disease hath its original from Obstructions, Tumors &c. And seek the beginning of your Cure out of their proper Chapters. Afterwards you must labour to evacuate the matter, whether it be in the *Abdomen* or whole Body, first make an Apozem thus: Take of the roots of Parsly, Smallage, Fennel, Elicampagne, Bruscus, Dawwort, and Madder, of each one ounce: The Leaves of Agrimony, Wormwood, Maidenhair, the tops of St. Johnswort, and Centaury, of each one handful: the inward bark of the roots of Capers, Ash and Tamarisk, of each four drams; Liquorish one ounce: the seeds of Fennel, Parsly and Juniper berries, of each half an ounce: the flowers of Broom, Beans and Elder, of each one pugil: Jalap root, two drams; boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water, wherein steel hath been quenched, to a pint and a half: strain it, and add to the Liquor one ounce of Senna, cover it and let it infuse six hours, strain it and dissolve therein of the Syrup of Harts-tongue one ounce: and the Syrup of Succory, with Rhubarb three ounces: Clarifie it with the whites of Eggs, and aromatize it with two drams of Cinnamon, or yellow Saunders; give it four mornings. Afterwards once a week give this powder, Take of Senna, Jalap, Mechoacan, Turbith, Gum, and Hermod. Et. of each one dram;

Cream

Cream of Tartar, and Salt of Wormwood, of each two drams; Cambogia half a dram; Diamber, Diarrhodon abbatis, and Fennel seeds, of each two scruples: make a fine powder, and infuse one dram in a quarted of a pint of White-wine all Night, and let the Patient take it in the morning. Of these and such like may be prepared medicines of all forms. Some commend the juyce of Flower-de-luce roots, taken with Honey or Manna, the dose is three ounce; and Platerus in his Observations doth highly extol it. Chymists do much commend the extract of black Hellebore, *Mercurius vitæ* and *Diaphoreticus*, *Mercurius dulcis*, *Antimonium Diaphoreticum*, and such like: but let the Physitian beware how he gives medicines of this nature, except his Patient be strong; the like Caution let him observe in giving of purging medicines, especially such as purge with violence. But rather let him (if his Patient be weak) give discutient and Diuretick Clysters, thus, Take of Mallows, Marsh-mallows, Chamomel, Pellitory of the Wall, and Mercury, of each one handful: the seeds of Anis, Sweet Fennel, Caraway, Dill, and Bay-berries, of each two drams: the flowers of Broom and Melilot, of each one pugil, boyl them in Posset-drink or Mutton broth to a pint, dissolve in the strained Liquor, Oyl of Chamomel, Dill and Rue, of each one ounce: *Diacatholicon* (or *Diaphænicon*) of each one ounce: (and if you see good, and half an ounce of *Benedicta Laxativa*) and make a Clyster. You must principally give such Medicines which purge by Urine: the steeld-wise prescribed in the 55. Chapter is very good; in the preparing of it, you may add (if you see occasion) any of the aforementioned ingredients, which provoke Urine. The Spirit of Vitriol, Tartar and Salt is much commended, if it be administered in some Diuretick decoction. The Salt of Wormwood and Juniper profiteth much. Or you may make a Lee of the Ashes of Juniper and White-wine, giving five or six ounces thereof, which Lee alone hath cured some Dropsies saith *Mathiolus*; the same I have known my self. Bleeding is prohibited, and upon good grounds too, unless the disease come from stoppage of the Terms or Hemorrhoids, bleed not then, unless it be in the beginning of the disease, and the Liver in its natural conditions. Issues, Blisters, and Sarrifications are likewise forbidden, because they Grangrene for the most part: yet in the beginning of a Dropsie, the lower parts being exceedingly swelled, I made an Issue in the Leg, out of which an incredible quantity of Water issued, and the Patient perfectly Cured. Among Evacuations, Sweatings are not the least profitable; especially in *Anasarca*; but in *Ascites* and *Tympanites* the Liver being dry, besides the difficulty of procuring it, it rather hurteth then profiteth. All the time of the Cure forget not to strengthen the Liver, that you may hinder the encrease of water, as well as purge it; have recourse to

the 55 Chapter, of the Obstruction of the Liver. *Hollerius* commendeth this Opiate : Take of Currance cleansed, half a pound ; boyl them in Sack till they be as thick as a pultis, beat and straine them, then add of the Conserve of Rosemary-flowers, Citron peels Candied, and Cinamon, of each one dram : the powder Aromaticum Rosatum, Diamargaritosa Calidum, and Diacinnamon, of each two scruples : Lignum Aloe s, half a dram ; Saffron half a scruple, mix them and make a soft Electuary. Then make a fomentation for the Belly with these, or Herbs of the like nature : Agrimony, Danewort, Camemel, Calamint, Elder, Mallows, and Marsh-Mallows, Marjerom, Melilot, Broom, Pennyroyal, Rue, Snakeweed, Southernwood, Tamarisk, Wormwood, and the like, the seeds of Parsly, Dill, Cummin, Fennel, Bay, and Juniper-berries : foment the Belly with Spunges dipt in the decoction of these, or lay the herbs themselves in a bag hot to the Belly : Afterwards anoint the belly with the Oyl of Dill, Camemel, Rue, Flowerdeluce, and the like. Or you may make Unguents, Cataplasms, or Emplasters. This harmless Cataplasme I have found profit much ; Take of Wormwood, Chamemel, Mayweed and Danewort, of each two handfuls, bruse them in a stone Mortar, then boyl them in Vinegar and Honey, then with Bear and Barley-meal, and Cow-dung dried, of each a like quantity, make a Cataplasme.

*Galen* commendeth a Cataplasme of Snails bruised with their shells, and laid upon the Navel, and there keep it till it falls off of its own accord. Radishes bruised and laid to the Belly and Reins, work by Stool and Urine.

To conclude, if the body be strong, you may use strong purgers in your Cataplasms ; but if the body be weak forbear. In *Anasarca* you may often and strongly purge watry and flegmatick humors : In *Ascites* and *Tympanites* more seldom and gentle. In *Ascites*, order your internal and external medicines principally to purge water : In *Tympanites* let them be Carminative and discussive. In every of them have a special respect to the Liver ; and if it be too hot (as it sometimes happeneth) give cold things mixed with warm openers ; Let their meat be of the driest, and let them shun sweet-meats as a Plague. For drink, let them abstain from it as much as can be, and drink none but what is made with Wormwood, Tamarisk, Elecampane, Juniper, &c. or let them only hold it in the mouth to cool and aswage their Thirst ; let them chew Mastick, for it draweth water from the Stomach.



## C H A P. LIX.

## Of the Obstruction, Inflammation, and Tumor of the Spleen.

**T**HE Spleen is subject to Obstruction as well as the Liver, or rather more, because it draweth cruder blood : when thick humors stick in the substance of the Spleen, it maketh an Inflammation and Tumor. If the humors grow thick and hard, it breeds a *Schirrus*. If the Tumor be *flegmatick*, it is called *Oedema*, which chanceth to them, who live upon cold and moist food, or live in a moist Ayr. But if it be soft, loose and puffed up, it is called an Inflammation or puffing of the Spleen. The causes of the Obstruction, Inflammation, and Tumor of the Spleen, are the same with them of the Liver : Sometimes the affect seizeth on both together.

They are distinguished by their signs : the Obstruction of the Spleen is distinguished from the Obstruction of the Liver, by the situation of the part. If the Spleen be obstructed, there is heaviness and pain in the left *Hypochondrion*, especially after running, riding, or any more than ordinary exercise ; if you handle the *Hypochondrion*, there is resistance, the face is blewish, and signs of melancholy appear, the disease is of long continuance, and if it be not speedily cured, it turns to a *Schirrus*. The Cure is performed the same way as the Obstruction of the Liver is ; only you must add things, which particularly respect the Spleen, and purge the Melancholy humor.

The Inflammation of the Spleen likewise hath the same conjunct and antecedent cause, only it is especially caused by melancholy Blood. The Diagnostick signs are different, viz. the Patient hath swelling, pain, heaviness, and beating on the left side under the ribs, thirst, blackness of the Tongue, loathing of meat, a constant Fever, troublesome lying on either side, especially the right, sometimes the Tumor is in the shape of the Spleen : Sometimes fills the left *Hypochondrion*, and if the adjacent parts be inflamed also, it extendeth below the Navel. If only Melancholy Blood cause the Inflammation, the Tumor is harder, the colour black, and many times the Urine : If choler be mixed with melancholy blood, the Thirst is greater, the Fever stronger, and worse every third day ; the mouth bitter, and the Urine red : great want of sleep and doting. If *flegm* be mixed, the former symptoms are lessened.

The Prognostick is the same with the Inflammation of the Liver, only it is less dangerous, for as much as the Liver is the nobler part. If it endeth not in death, it endeth by some critical Evacuation, as

by

Chap. 6.  
by Stool, U  
and turns  
signs said  
appeareth  
be perform  
Inflammation  
some things  
as I kind  
Sometimes  
the spleen  
easily disti  
lick by re  
Anguish  
place, but  
overs the wh  
minutive, en  
same Nature  
Wormwood  
of the Oyl  
Application  
there be no

This Dis  
Tumors,  
much, whic  
Arteries, an  
mentations  
the Brain, F  
shall mentio  
evil joyes, a  
nels, becau  
cause Crudi  
Much Stude  
reason of mi  
men, and (a  
Stoppage of  
The Diag  
parts affecte

by Stool, Urine or Bleeding at the left Nostril, or else it grows hard, and turns to a Schirrhus. Which may be known by the causes and signs laid down in the Chapter of the Schirrhus Of the Liver, only it appeareth on the contrary side. The Cure of this and the former may be performed by the Medicines laid down in the Chapters of the Inflammation, Obstruction, and Schirrhus of the Liver, only make use of some things that especially respect the spleen, and purge melancholy, as I hinted before.

Sometimes the Spleen is much pained by wind, which stretcheth the Spleen and its membranes, but is without fever or hardness. It is easily distinguished from the former griefs, but hardly from the Cholick by reason of the nearness of the Gut Colon; but you may distinguish them thus, the pain of the Spleen is weighty and in one place, but of the Cholick is stretching, sharp, moveable, and runs over the whole Belly. The Cure must be wrought by Medicines carminative, emollient and discussive, given internally, or Clysters of the same Nature, with Fomentations and Liniments made of the Oyls of Wormwood, Lillies, Chamomil, Capers, and such like, adding a little of the Oyl of Spike: and if the pain cease not, some commend the Application of a Cupping-Glass; but we well advised first whether there be no Defluxion or Inflammation.

## CHAP. LX.

### *Of Hypochondriack Melancholy.*

**T**HIS Disease hath its Original from melancholy and adust Humors, which are bred by the Distemper of the Spleen or Stomach, which, by reason of their Crudity, stay long in the Veins, Arteries, and other Passages, which cause great and grievous Fermentations or Workings, from whence noysome Vapours ascend to the Brain, Heart and Midriff, which cause divers Symptoms, which I shall mention hereafter. The antecedent Causes are, all Meats of evil Juyce, and of hard Digestion; long continued Passions and Sadness, because they disperse the Spirits, and hinder Concoction, and cause Crudities; which being burnt by heat, turn to Melancholy. Much Study, Watching, and want of Exercise may be the Cause. by reason of much Retention of Excrements; hence it is, that learned men, and such who sit much, are troubled with this Disease. The Stoppage of the Terms or Hemorrhoids may be the Cause.

The Diagnostick signs of this Disease are many according to the parts affected: Sometimes the Patient spitteeth or vomitteeth much, be-

cause the stomach concocteth ill, and turneth the Nourishment into watry, sharpe, slow, or clammy substance, which not being drawn away by the Guts, lie in the stomach, and sometimes discharge themselves as aforesaid. Sometimes the boyling of these Humors in the stomach causeth flatuous Vapours, which stretch the Stomach, and assist the Heart, and cause swooning: These Vapours cause a Noise beneath the Ribs, hence it hath been called the Windy Disease. Sometimes the Wind reacheth to the Kidneys, and causeth great pain there; which make the Patient thinketh he hath the stone. He is often costive, because the clammy humors (bred by evil Concoction) stick to the Guts: sometimes the sharpness of the Humors causeth the Belly to be soluble. There is great heat in the Hypochondria: so that the Face will grow red and hot from those Vapours. Sometimes the Urine is thin, because thick and tartarous Humors stop the passages; sometimes thick, red and troubled, and hath a thick tartarous Sediment, and sometimes stick to the bottom of the Urinal like sand, which causeth a suspicion of the Stone; but this dissolves between the Fingers like Salt, and that which is bred in the Reins is hard. The Vapours ascending produce many symptoms, as Palpitation of the Heart, a distempered pulse; if they ascend to the Tongue and Palate, it causeth great Thirst; if to the Lungs, difficulty of the breathing; if to the Membranes of the Brain, Head-ach; if to the Brain it self, Dimness of sight, Noise in the Ears, Giddiness, Fear, and Melancholy Phantasies; if they be very sharp, they sometimes cause the Falling-sickness, and if they settle in the Nerves, Convulsion: if they be stupifying, they cause Numbness, the Palsy, Apoplexy, &c. If the Vapours be hot and dry, they dry the Brain, and cause Watchings, troublesome Sleep, and frightful Dreams. Note that all these symptoms are not to be expected in one and the same Patient, but more or fewer, according to the variety of the peccant Humors.

Prognosticks are; A continual pain and giddiness of the Head in a Hypochondry doth threaten an Epilepsy, Apoplexy or Blindness, and the like. Thick Urine is better than thin, for thin Urine is a sign that thick Humors are detained in the Body. Vomiting Flux of the Belly or Hemorrhoids, if it be moderate and continue not long, is a hopeful sign, judge the contrary if it continue long. For the most part, this Disease is of long continuance, and seldom cured; therefore it hath been called the Scourge and Disgrace of Physicians.

The Cure of this Disease consisteth in four things: First, in opening Obstructions: Secondly, in amending the Distempers of the Bowels: Thirdly, in evacuating the peccant Humors: And lastly, in strengthening the affected and vital parts. But to forbear tediousness, and so avoid needless Repetitions, I refer you to the Chapters foregoing, especially



especially Of the Obstruction of the Liver and Spleen. Take this general Rule, keep the Body alwayes soluble, by Medicines which the Patient may use before Meat, charging them of ten; as often as need shall require let the Patient be purged, let him make use of Broths, Decoctions, and Drinks that have a Faculty to open Obstructions; as the Juyce of Wormwood, or Wormwood-Wine, adding thereto Tamarisk, Agrimony, Borrage and Bugloss, Burnet, Sanders, Rose-mary-Flowers, and the like. *Montanus* much commendeth *Venice Turpentine*, because it looseth the Belly, cleanseth and warmeth the Stomach, provoketh Urine, openeth the Obstructions of the Liver, cleanseth, and doth not heat it. Steel-Wine, and other Medicines made of Steel, which you may find in the Chapter Of the Obstruction of the Liver, powerfully openeth Obstructions, especially the Extract of Steel; in the Administration of which, I have found more than ordinary Success; but let Medicines of this Nature be administered by a skilful and careful Physitian: The Decoction or Infusion of *Lignum Nephriticum* doth open Obstructions safely and pleasantly. And some do much commend the Decoction of the Root of Sweet Bryer for the Patient's ordinary Drink: Whilest you use internal Medicines, Externals are not to be neglected, viz. Fomentations, Oynments, &c. such as are prescribed for the Obstruction of the Liver and Spleen; choose the coolest of them, and apply them to the Hypochondria. And because in this Disease the Stomach alwayes suffereth, seek the Remedy in its proper place. Or if the Vapours ascending from the Hypochondria trouble the Heart or Brain, and cause Swooning, Palpitation, Trembling, Convulsions, Head-ach, or the like, have recourse to the Chapters preceding, which treat of those Diseases.

## CHAP. LXI.

## Of the Scurvy.

**T**He Scurvy is nothing else but an Hypochondriack Disease, but having a peculiar degree of Malignity arising from the Putrefaction of Melancholy, it hath more Symptomes than in the Hypochondriack Disease.

**Diag.** All the Symptomes mentioned in the foregoing Chapter, are common to the Scurvy. Peculiar Symptoms are these, Redness, Itching, Putrefaction, bleeding and stinking of the Gums, Mouth and Teeth, which are also (sometimes) black and loose. Spots in the Legs, first red, afterwards purple, black or blew. Straitness of the Breast, and shortness of the Breath, occasioned by thick Vapours arising

sing from the Hypochondria to the Midriff, or to the Sweet-Bread, causing a Swelling or Tumor, and consequently compressing the Diaphragma. The body is heavy and lazy, especially the Legs, and grievous pain there and in other parts; as in the Toes, Fingers, Soles of the Feet, Ancles, Thighs, Belly, Arms, Shoulders, and the like. The urine is various, as in the Hypochondriack Melancholy: The Pulse is weak and unequal: Some have the Head-ach, and a Feavorish heat in the Night, which vanisheth by a Morning Sweat. Some have the Tooth-Ach without manifest Cause: Sometimes the Vapours ascending (being astringent) contract the Gullet, and the Patient feareth strangling: A stinking breath is common to *Scorbutick* persons. Tumors in divers parts, sometimes hard, sometimes soft like Bladders, and sometimes like the stinging of Nettles. And lastly, an *Atrophy*, Consumption and general decay of the whole body.

That I may more perfectly discover the Symptomes of this Disease, I shall here lay down some other, which are common to other Diseases, and shew you how to distinguish them. Sometimes the Scurvy causeth pains in the Joynts, which must be distinguished from the pains caused by the French-Pox thus: In the French-Pox, the pains are between the Joynts, and by long continuance cause Knots there; the Symptomes of the Pox appear, as Running of the Reins, Bubo, &c. or the Patient hath acted with some unclean Woman. But in the Scurvy, some of the preceding Symptoms appear, or at least the Patient is of a melancholy Constitution. This must be distinguished also from the *Arthritis*, or Joynt-Gout, which is fixed, or at least seldom changeeth the place; but in the Scurvy it is very moveable, running from one Joynt to another, and sometimes for a while vanisheth. In the same manner is the Bastard-Palsy (which the Scurvy causeth) distinguished from a true one, which is constant; but in the *Scorbutical* Palsy, he that in one day could not walk or stand at all, can the next day walk with little or no help. Sometimes it causeth a Flux of the Belly, like a *Diarrhea*, but differeth from it in this, that the Excrements are thicker than in the former and in greater quantity, exceeding the quantity of the Meat taken. Sometimes the Excrements are mixed with blood, but differeth from the *Dysentery*, because there is no pain of the belly, and the blood is thick, sent thither by the Meseraick Veins. Sometimes the *Scorbutick* pains are in the sides, imitating the *Pleurisie*, but is much different, because the Fever (if any) is weaker; there is no difficulty of Breathing, no Cough, Spitting, nor constant pain. Lastly, you must distinguish these pains from the pains of the Stone: for the urine is sometimes red, like Blood; as if the Kidneys were wounded by the Stone, and sometimes black, both which come from a Scurvy salt Matter in the spleen, or parts adjacent.

Prog.

Chap. 61.  
Prog. The  
Melancholy Hum  
gout, becau  
times acce  
produce  
In the C  
in the Cor  
the weak  
comes for th  
gress, Wa  
Wormwoo  
and have a  
these whic  
Carduus, C  
of all liver  
Tamaris;  
Observe thi  
heats, you  
add Endive  
Oranges,  
like may be  
Lomit.

The ma  
fecul  
the efficien  
and at leng  
crete, and G  
scimus have  
which is a  
this they  
Cause to  
man eat  
turned into  
the Reins  
Joyce be  
stony facul  
lately en

## Chap. 61. *Of the Stone in the Kidneys.* 167

*Prog.* This Disease is very hard to be cured, because the Melancholy Humor is so far predominant. Many times it is very dangerous, because it bringeth the Dropty, Consumption, &c. And sometimes acute Diseases, as the Apoplexy, Swoonings, and the like, which produce sudden deaths.

In the Cure of the Scurvy, you must follow the method prescribed in the Cure of Obstruction of the Liver and Spleen, beginning with the weakest first, with which you must make use of specifical Medicines for the Scurvy; of which the chief are, Dutch and Sea Scurvy-grass, Water-Cresses, Brook-Lime, Horse-Radishes, Fumitory, Wormwood, Celandine the less, &c. Those which are of less Efficacy, and have a faculty to correct and prepare the melancholy Humor, are these which follow, Agrimony, Alarum, Betony, Burrage, Bugloss, Carduus, Ceterach, Elicampane, Germander, Hyssop, Maidenhair of all sorts, Polypody of the Oak, the Bark of Ash, Capers, and Tamarisk; the Flowers of Elder, Dodder of Time, and Tamarisk. Observe this general Rule, if the Patient be feavourish, or subject to heats, you must give the hottest of them in a smaller quantity; and add Endive, Sorrel, Succory, the Juyce of Citrons, Lemmons and Oranges, and the spirit of Sulphur and Vitriol. Of these and such like may several sorts of Medicines be formed, which (for brevity sake) I omit.

### CHAP. LXII.

#### *Of the Stone in the Kidneys.*

**T**He material Cause of the Stone in the Kidneys, is a phlegmatick, feculent, thick, slimy, and tartarous Humour in the Urine: the efficient Cause is heat, which drieth and hardneth the Matter, and at length turneth it into a stone; this is the Opinion of Hippocrates and Galen, and most modern Physicians. The Hermetick Physicians have found a certain Juyce, which they call *Succus Lapidiscens*, which is a certain Humour, naturally proper to turn to a stone, and this they say is the material Cause of the stone; and the efficient Cause to be *Spiritus Lapidiscens*, a stone-making spirit. So that if a man eat or drink any thing wherein the stony Juyce is, that Juyce is turned into a stone, if the Reins have a stone-making spirit. But if the Reins be free from this spirit, a stone is not bred, unless the stony Juyce be very predominate: on the contrary, if the Reins have this stony faculty, and the Food be free from this Juyce, the stone is scarcely engendered, unless the stone-making faculty be very predominate.



minate. Many Histories shew, that stones come from a stone-making spirit, or breath out of the Earth, which hath turned the bodies of Men, beasts, and other things into stones: *Riverius* upon this subject (in his last Edition) quoted *Aventius Annal. Barar. lib. 7. An. 1343.* who saith, That above fifty men, with many Cows, were turned into Stones. *Ortelius* tells the same story of whole herds in *Russia*. And *Camerarius* reporteth, That in the Province of *Chilo* in *Armenia*, at the blast of a South Wind (which happeneth four times in a year) whole Troops of horse have been turned into Statues of stone, standing in the warlike posture, in which they were before. The Antecedent Causes are many, the stomach being not able to Concoct well sendeth a crude Chyle to the Liver: A hot Liver doth bake the chilous Matter, or a cold Liver maketh crude Blood; the Spleen weak or obstructed doth not sufficiently purge the drossy blood; these do cause even the blood, or crude Juices fit to make a stone. Likewise the Reins, besides their conjunct Cause, may be an Antecedent Cause in two respects, *viz.* their temper and Form: First, their Temper being hot doth violently draw the Crude Matter, and thicken it. In respect of their Form, the emulgent Veins may be looser, and fit to receive the tartarous Matter into the Reins; and the Uretors so narrow, that the thick Matter hath no passage from the Kidneys. Lastly, all Food that produceth crude, thick and slimy Nourishment, doth afford Matter for the Stone, as Flesh or Fish that is very salt, or dried in the smoak, Pulse, Cheese, and all Milk-Meats, hard Eggs, Chestnuts, Pears, Quinces, Medlars, Rice, Wine thick and not well purged, standing Waters; all things which make the Liver and Reins too hot, as old strong Wine, Garlick, Onions, Pepper and Ginger; too strong Diureticks, which carry crude Matter too violently to the Reins; violent Exercise after Meat; inordinate Lechery, too much fulness or emptiness, and the like.

The signes of the Stone of the Kidneys are many, *viz.* a constant pain about the Loyns; whilst it is in the hollow of the Kidneys, the pain is heavy; when it gets into the head of the uretors, sharp and pricking, and so continueth; unless it get back again, or fall into the Cavity of the Bladder. The urine is sometimes bloody, by reason of the opening Corrosion of the Veins, or cutting of the tender Flesh of the Kidneys; sometimes it is thin, and little in quantity. Voyding of Sand and Stones is an evident sign of the Stone; but if the Patient voydeth gravel without stones, be not too hasty in your Judgment, but take the Caution given you in the 60 Chapter, *Of the Hypochondriack Melancholy*. The Thigh on the same side the Back is pained, become numb, because the stone doth oppress the Nerve, which is in the Muscles of the Loyns under the Reins, and goeth to

the

Chap. 62. *Of the Stone in the Kidneys.* 169

the Hip for its motion. The Sick loatheth and vomiteth often, by reason of the Connexion of the Kidneys with the Stomach; the Stomach (sympathetically sensible) endeavoureth to exclude that hurtful Companion. Be sure you make a distinction between the stone in the Kidneys, and the Chollick; have recourse to the 43 Chapter, where I have left a few rules.

This Disease is very dangerous, and bringeth many and sad Symptoms, as Inflammation, Exulcerations, great pains, long Watchings, Weakness, Feavers, suppression of urine, and Death it self. It is difficult to cure (if not incurable) in old men, saith *Hippocrates*, with whom *Experience* agreeth. If the pain hath continued long and violent, and the Sick grow externally cold with cold and faint sweats, Death is at hand. If the Stone be accompanied with an Ulcer of the Kidney, it is incurable, because those things which do break the stone, do exasperate the Ulcer.

The Cure of the Stone in the Kidneys consisteth in mollifying, enlarging or relaxing, and throwing the stone out of the ureters, to break the stone if it be too big for the passage; to take away the antecedent Cause, and to ease the pain, which you must do thus: first open the Liver-vein on the same side that is most grieved, draw as much blood as the Constitution of the Patient can well spare; then administer a mollifying and laxative Clyster: Take of Cummin and Marsh-mallows, Camomil, Penny-royal, Pellitory of the wall, and Violet-leaves, of each one handful; the seeds of sweet-Fennel, Flax and Fennugreek, of each half an ounce; boyl it in Posset-drink to a pint, strain it, and dissolve therein Cassia, Catholicon and Diaphanicon, of each three drams; the Oyls of Rue and Scorpions, of each one ounce; make a Clyster, and administer it. Likewise the Oyls of sweet Almonds, Camomil, Dill, Lillies and Violets are good to be used in Clysters of this Nature. This Clyster, or one of the same Nature, you must give twice or thrice in a week; and, in the days between, foment the Region of the Kidneys with a fomentation made of the aforesaid simples, or others of the like Nature, which I shall treat of, before I put an end to this Chapter. Afterwards anoint the part with the Oyls aforesaid: Or you may make a Cataplasim of white Bread sodden in white-Wine; and if you add any of the aforesaid Oyls, it will be the better. Afterwards lay a Plaister to the place; Take of the Oyl of Camomil and Rue, of each half an ounce; of Dill and sweet Almonds, of each two drams; Goose and Hens-grease, of each one dram, with wax and the Compound Melilot plaister, as much as sufficeth make a plaister, and apply it. In the mean time, you must not forget inward Medicines, which have a faculty to break the stone, to ease pain, and mollify and enlarge the ureters. The simples following are approved of, viz. the Roots of Asparagus, Birth-

Birchwort, Fennel, Butchers-broom, Filipendula, Couch-grass, Garden and Horse-radish, Madder, Marsh and common Mallows, Liquorish, Onions, Parsly, Knot-grass, ; the Leaves of Betony, Camomil, Penny-royal, Marsh-mallows, Pellitory of the Wall, Maiden-hair, Parsly peart, Filipendula, Saxifrage, Savin, Burnet, Goats-Thorne, Kidney-wort, Melilot, Golden-rod ; the seeds of Nettles, Parsly, Gromwel, Burdock, Winter-cherries, Bay, Ivy, and Juniper-berries, the four cold seeds, the Stones of Hips, Haws, Medlars, &c. Of these you may make Decoctions, Powders, or distilled Waters, and the like, the Description of which ( for brevity sake ) I will omit. *Quercetanus*, in his Dispensatory commendeth this following Powder ; Take of the inward skins of Hen's Gizzards, and their white Dung, of each half an ounce ; the inward skins of Eggs-shells dried and powdered, two ounces and an half ; Rupture-wort and Cinnamon, of each four Scruples ; the Stones of Medlars, two drams ; the Seeds of Annis and Fennel, of each one ounce, powder them, and give half a dram, or a dram in white-wine. Goats blood prepared is excellent, and the Waters distilled from it in Balneo Mariæ doth Wonders. And some do commend the Urine of a Goat, taken out whilst he is alive, and drunk, and the Entrails applyed. Chymists do highly extol their Salts, and Experience tells us, that if they be well prepared, and carefully administred, they work no small effects, viz. the salt of Bean Cods, or stalks of Camomil, Tartar vitriolate, Oyl of Vitriol, the spirit of Salt, Mercurius Dulcis, &c. *Zacutus Lustitanus* commendeth the natural Balsom, a few drops thereof taken with Oyl of Sweet Almonds. *Crato* had as good an Opinion of Filberts eaten, and confirms his opinion by Experience. Mineral Waters are good, for they do not only dissolve the slimy Tartarous matter, which breeds the stone; but also allay the hot Distemper of the Liver and Reins. Of all Diuretick medicines, Turpentine is the safest, given the quantity of a Nut with Sugar every Morning ; Diureticks taken very often (for the most part) hurt, by carrying the Humors from other parts to the Reins ; but Turpentine seldom or never worketh any evil effect. You may use it thus, Take of Venice Turpentine, washed with Saxifrage Urine, half an ounce ; Cassia newly drawn, six drams ; Rhubarb and Liquorish in powder, of each half a dram ; mix them, and make a Bolus. To conclude, give Clysters often, or, if you see it more convenient, purge the Body between your Diuretick Portions, for the reason before given : your best Purgations are Cassia Diaphænicon, Rhubarb, and such like. If the Liver and Reins are distempered by heat, make use of those medicines prescribed against the hot Distemper of the Liver. If Crudities in the stomach be the Cause, seek medicines out of the Chapters which treat of the Diseases of the stomach.



Chap. 63. *Of the Stone in the Bladder.* 171

mach. If you do carefully consider the Cause, or from what part of the Body the Reins fetch their stony Materials, and order your Medicines accordingly, with prudence and reason, by the blessing of God, you may find the Cure of the Stone not to be so difficult, as it is commonly adjudged. For my part, I have Cured several people, who have, been grievously vexed with this Grief; for which Mercy I do and shall praise God.

C H A P. LXIII.

*Of the Stone in the Bladder.*

I Shall speak nothing of the Cause of the Stone in the Bladder; the material and efficient Cause being the same with that of the Reins. This Disease happeneth to Children, oftner than to people of riper age; who are more subject to the Stone in the Reins, because Children eating much and often, their Urine is thick, and the expulsive faculty in the Reins is stronger in them than in men, and sendeth the Urine speedily to the Bladder; where (being long kept by reason of much sleep or play) the Urine scleth, and is retained till it by heat becometh a Stone, for the passage is narrow in Children, and the Urine not being very shap, doth not powerfully provoke the expulsive Faculty. *Fernelius* was of Opinion, that the Stone in the Bladder was alwayes first bred in the Reins, and falling from thence into the Bladder, and getting fresh Matter, there encreaseth, *Fern. lib. 6. cap. 13. page. 317.* Many times it so happeneth; but daily experience teacheth that many have the Stone in the Bladder, who never had pain in the Reins, especially Children.

The Knowledge of this Disease in the beginning is difficult; but when the Stone is grown great, is evident enough to the Patient's sorrow. The first signe is pain in the Neck of the Bladder, reaching to the end of the Yard, especiall after pissing. The Yard itcheth, and the Patient handleth it often: He feelth a great weight about the Neck of the Bladder, when the Stone is grown great, the Urine suddenly stoppeth, and he is in pain like a Woman in travel; his Yard standeth often, and he maketh Water with most ease lying upon his back, because then the Stone falleth out of the Neck of the Bladder. When he hath need to make Water, he is also much provoked to go to stool, by reason of the consent of the Sphincter Muscles of the Anus and Bladder, being moved by the Branches of the same Nerve. Many signs more I might insert, but these I think sufficient for the ingenious; To be fully satisfied, the best way is to make use of the Catheter.

This

This Disease is alwayes exceeding painful, and no less dangerous; if the Stone be like Flint, it can never be dissolved; if soft or brittle, it may be dissolved by the long use of strong Medicines: but few there are that have patience enough to make use of so many Medicines. The Cure is not altogether so difficult in Women as in Men, because the passage in them is wider. In the year 1656. I cured a Woman, who was a long time grieved with the Stone, and intended to venture upon the last and terrible Cure by Cutting: within the space of a Moneth (having first dissolved part of the Stone by Medicines) she voided a stone (without the help of manual Operation) in bigness two Inches, in length an Inch and an half, without prejudice to the ureditory parts: she was then Aged 63. and lived several years after to praise God for so good a deliverance.

For to perfect the Cure, you must do as you are taught in the foregoing Chapter, so that I need not here repeat any thing, only lay down the Medicine so much commended by *Huratus Augenius*; it is thus prepared, Take of Sows or wood-lice prepared, a dram or four scruples; *Aqua vite*, two scruples; the Broth of red Cicers, nine or ten ounces; take it in the Morning fasting. *Sennertus* also commends it, and this Medicine likewise, Take of Salt of white Tartar one ounce; Parsly-water, one pint; mix them, and strain them with a brown Paper. If, after the use of Medicines, you find the Neck of the Bladder wounded, or much pained by the roughness of the stone, make a Decoctio on thus; Take of the Roots of Marsh-Mallows, Fennel, Couch-grass and Cammock, of each one ounce; Liquorish, two drams; Camomel and Saxifrage, of each one Pngil; Winter-Cherries, twenty; red Cicers, four ounces; Raisins of the Sun, two ounces; the four great cold Seeds, a dram and an half; French-barley, four ounces; boyl them gently in the distilled water of Saxifrage, Cammock and Parsly, of each half a pint; when it hath boyled a while, add half a pint of white-wine, and let it boil till half be consumed: to the straining, add six ounces of the Syrup of Marsh-mallows; drink three or four ounces in the morning. To the Religion of the Bladder must be applyed mollifying and asswaging Fomentations: If all Medicines fail, and the Patients pains unsupportable, necessity requireth the dangerous Operation of Cutting. Let the Physician prepare the Patients body by purging, Bleeding and Diet, according to the Constitution and Condition of the Patients body; and let the Patient prepare his Soul for God.

CH A P. LXIV.

*Of the Inflammation of the Reins and Bladder.*

**T**HIS Disease is a Tumor in those parts, caused by the flowing of Blood or Choler unto them; the Causes of this Inflammation are natural, unnatural or preternatural; Natural, when there is a natural hereditary Infirmitie in the parts, or great heat originally, which violently draw the Humors thither. Causes not natural, are Gluttony, Drunkenness, much Venerie, great passions of the Minde, violent Exercise, Stoppage of some usual Evacuation, as the Terms or Hemorrhoids, all things which cause Repletion or evil Concoction, and drive the Humors to the inward Bowels. Things preternatural may be the cause, as a Stroak, Wound, or Bruise upon the Reins or Bladder, constant Feavers: the matter of the Pleurisie or Empyema carried away by the urine: heat or stoppage of the urine, the Stone, or Exulceration of the part may cause an Inflammation.

The Inflammation of the Reins is known by these signs, a weighty and beating pain about the part, which extendeth it self to the adjacent parts, the Patient cannot help himself, nor lie otherwise than upon his back; if he doth sneez or move his body the pain increaseth, he hath a Numness in his Leg on the same side, he maketh water with difficulty, he hath a constant sharp Feaver, with Watchings, Doings, and dangerous Symptomes: he vomiteth Choler, Flegm and other Humors; the urine is first thin and yellow, afterwards thick and red.

If the Bladder be inflamed, the Patient is vexed with a sharp Feaver, Watchings, Vomiting, &c. as aforesaid. The Share becometh hard, and hath vehement pain, he hath (almost) continual provocation to go to Stool, as in the Disease *Tenasmus*.

*Prog.* The Inflammation of these parts do threaten continual danger of Death; Convulsions, Dorage, Watchings, cold Sweats, are the Messengers of Death. If the Inflammation suppurate, and the Imposthume break, and the Matter be evacuated by the urine, there is hopes. If the Hemorrhoids bleed, there is hopes that the Inflammation will cease.

You must begin the Cure with a mollifying and cooling Clyster; to the Decoction for the Clyster (prescribed in the Chapter of the Stone in the Reins) add of Cassia and Diaprunes Lenitive, of each half an ounce, Syrup of Violets one ounce, the Oyl of Violets two ounces: Make a Clyster, then open the Liver-vein on the same side the Inflammation is; if the Bladder be inflamed, open the Liver-vein on the right Arm,



Arm, draw as much blood as your Patients strength will bear; and if you open the inferiour Veins, it is a good derivation: then give the Clyster again, and as often as need requireth; but remember to give it in a small quantity, least it oppres the Tumor. Use Cupping, and Scarrifying Frictions and ligatures to the extreame parts, to draw the Humors outwards. You must allay the heat of the blood by cooling Juleps, in which use no *Diuretick* Simple, lest it carry humors to the part and increase the inflammation: in the declination of the Disease, *Diuretick* Medicines may be given; you may make a cooling Julep thus: Take of the Distilled water of Endive, Lettuce, Plantane and Purslane, of each four ounces, Syrup of Pomegranats two ounces, the Syrup of water-lillies and Violets, of each one ounce, Oyl of Virgial as much as sufficeth to give it a grateful relish; mix them for four Mornings and Evenings Draughts. Or you may make an Emulsion of the Seeds of Sorrel, Lettuce, Purslane, Poppy, Almonds, Pine-Nuts, and the like. The great cold Seeds are *Diuretick*, and must not be used in the beginning of the Disease, for the reason before given. Nor ought you at first to purge till the Declination, then you may profitably purge with Medicines which are gentle, as Manna, Cassia, Rhubarb, Tamarinds, Diaprunes lenitive, Syrup of Roses, &c. Outwardly you may apply Cataplasmes, Liniments, unguents that are cooling, repelling, and (if the Inflammation be in the Bladder) astringing, when the Defluxion is stopped use Softners and Dissolvers. If the strangury, or any other dangerous Synaptoime appear, converse with their proper Chapters. If the Tumor tend to Suppuration, which you may know by the increase of the Fever and Symptomes, trembling and vomiting, you must help Nature with mollifying Cataplasms, the Chapters of Inflammations of other parts will advise you. If the Tumor appear outwardly, you must open it with a Cautery, or Incision-knife: if it break, and the Matter fall into the Abdomen, it brings sudden death, or a Hectick Fever. If the Tumor grow hard and the Fever gone, it breeds the Dropsie, evil Habit, or some such Disease, and is incurable, for the most part; you must deal with it as with the Schirrus of the Liver.

## C H A P. LXV.

## Of the ulcer of the Reins and Bladder.

**T**HIS Disease is caused either from an Imposthume broken there from sharpness of the humors, or from a Stone which doth corrode them.

This

## Chap. 65. Of the Ulcer of the Reins, &c. 175

This Disease is known by the voiding of much Matter with the Urine. To know whether the Reins or the Bladder be diseased, take a few Rules; If the Ulcer be in the Reins, the pain is there, the Matter is more concocted, more in quantity, and more mixed with the Urine, making it appear like Milk, which standing, setteth to the bottom; sometimes much blood is voided, and pieces of flesh, which sometimes stops the passage. When the Ulcer is in the Bladder, contrary signs appear, the pain is near the Privities, the Matter is less in quantity, and not well concocted, but of divers colours, and stinketh; sometimes Matter is voided without Urine: if the Ulcers be old, callous and hard, snotty Flegm is voided, such as is voided, if there be a Stone in the Bladder; for the most part little skins, like Scales or Bran, are voided.

As all inward Ulcers are dangerous, so are these much more, because the continual Flux of Humors, with the urine, to the part, doth nourish the ulcer. The violence of the pain causeth Watchings, and a Consumption of the whole Body. If the ulcer be taken in time, and the Patient young, it may be cured, else not.

The Cure must be performed by evacuating the peccant Humors, by cleansing, drying, and healing the ulcer. You must purge the humors which flow to the part affected with gentle Medicines, such as are prescribed in the Chapter afore-going. If there be Repletion or Inflammation in the part, let Phlebotomy be used: Evacuate the humors by gentle Purgers, mentioned in the Chapters afore-going. *Mercurius Dulcis*, doth cleanse and heal the ulcer. Turpentine is a good cleanser; it is good for the Patient to vomit often. After due Evacuations, you must use Cleansers, as the Milk of Cows, Goats or Asses, which are very good, and Cleanse with their wheyish part, and heal with their cheezy, but give it not in a Fever. Let the Patient drink Water and Sugar, thin Hydromel, or Barley-water: In the Hydromel if there be a Fever, boyl the cold Seeds, Mallows, Liquorish, &c. Waters that spring from Allum and Iron Mines are good, for they correct the heat, and cleanse the ulcer. The Decoction of China, Guajacum, Sarsaparilla, and the like, is good to dry up the Humors, to purge the crude Matter in them that have the French Pox, and have no Fever nor Flux of blood: But lest the Bowels should be inflamed, give cooling Broaths at Night. After the use of Cleansers, (you may see by the urine when the ulcer is cleansed, viz. when it appeareth white and cleane without any dreggy or filthy Matter,) then you must give astringing, glutinating and healing Medicines: Take of Conserve of Roses four ounces, Bole armoric, Terra Sigillata, red Coral, and Sanguis Draconis, of each two dram, the Seeds of Lettuce, Puslane and Plantain, of each one dram, red Roses and  
shavings

Shavings of Ivory, of each two scruples, with Syrup of Comphry make an Opiate. Or you may make of it a Mass for Pills with Venice Turpentine, or (if that cause pain) with Juice of Liquorish. Chymists do much commend *Antimonium Diaphoreticum*, *Mercirius Dulcis*, & *Diaphoreticus*. To allay the vehemency of the pain, you must sometimes mix Anodines with your Medicines, as *Laudanum*, the Syrup of Poppies, and the Emulsion of the cold Seeds. Outwardly to ment the Region of the Kidneys, thus: Take of Camomel, Mallows, Melilot, Pellitory of the Wall, and Violets, of each one handful: the Roots of Marsh-mallows, and water-Lillies, of each two ounces: the Seeds of Flax, Pomegreck, and winter-Cherries, of each three drams: make a Decoction and Foment the part. Then apply this Liniment, Take of the Oyl of Violets and sweet Almonds, of each one ounce and an half: Oyl of Roses one ounce; of the Musilage made of the Seeds of Marsh-mallows and Pomegreck, of each two ounces: Saffron one Scruple; make a Lintment. If the Ulcer be in the Bladder, you must make an Injection twice in a day, with new Milk Whey, Hydromel, or Barley Water with Honey of Roses, to cleanse; afterwards add Astringers and Driers, as the white Troches of *Rhafs* or of *Gordonius*: or boyl in Whey or Barley-water the Roots of Comphry, Allum, Mirrh, Tragacanth, and the like.

## CHAP. LXVI.

## Of extraordinary Piffing.

**Διαβήτης**, *Diabetes* is a quick and plentiful making of Water, after which followeth violent Thirst, and a wasting of the whole Body. The Cause of this Disease is a hot Distemper of the Reins, which draweth Water violently from the Veins, which causeth a great Thirst after drink which as soon as it is taken, is carried to the Reins; where burthening the retentive Faculty, and provoking the expulsive, it is soon sent to the Bladder. Some attribute it to cholerick, sharp, and salt Humors in the Kidneys, which draw Water thither; as such humors which stick to the Tunicles of the Stomach in Fevers, cause Thirst. Others will not admit of this Opinion, because the Kidneys onely suffer in this Disease; and that Choler, and other burnt humors, are first bred in the Liver. They say there is a venemous Quality bred in the Kidneys. *Galen* himself is of this opinion, that divers kinds of Poysons may breed in the Body of Man. In *Lybia* there is a Serpent, called in Greek *Διψαχός*, *Dipsachos*, (which name the Greeks give this Disease, from the unquenchable Thirsts



Thirst, with which it is accompanied ) which Serpent, if he biteh any man, infecteth him with such a Poyson, as begets an unquenchable Thirst.

The Signs of this Disease are clear from what hath been said, viz. An unquenchable Thirst, an extraordinary Pissing, and voiding the Drink as soon (almost) as it is drunk ; and a decay of the whole Body.

This Disease is deadly, if it be not taken in the beginning, and the Patient young, for it brings a Consumption.

If you judge the Patient curable, you must labour to allay the hot Distemper of the Kidneys ; to correct their poysonous Quality, to thicken the humors which flow to them, and to strengthen them. First, give mollifying and asswaging Clysters, and purge, if you see occasion, as you are taught in the Chapter *Of the Inflammation of the Kidneys*. Gentle Vomits do evacuate and draw the humours from the Uretors. If nothing forbid, open a Vein in the Arm.

To correct the distemper and thicken the humours, make a Julep, thus : Take of the distilled water ( or the Decoction ) of Plantane, four ounces ; of Lettuce, Poppy, and Purslane, of each two ounces : the Syrup of Mirbles, Comphry and Quinces, of each one ounce : the Syrup of Poppies, half an ounce : the Spirit of Vitriol, twenty drops ; mix them and make a Julep. If you will have a medicine more astringent or binding, thus : Take of the seeds of Plantane, Purslane, and Coriander prepared, of each one ounce : the Flowers of red Roses, Pomegranates, and yellow Mirabolans, of each half an ounce ; Nutmegs half a dram : Coral and Pearl prepared, burnt Harts-Horn, Bole-armenick, and the Roots of Tormentil, of each one scruple : make them into powder. Or, if you please, make them into a soft Electuary, with the Syrup of Myrtles, Comphry, or Quinces. The milk of Asses, Cows, Goats or Sheep is good, especially if Flints be often quenched therein.

Sweating is a good Remedy, if it be provoked by outward means, or with China, Sassa, and such mild Medicines, for it drives the watry humour outward : but beware of strong Medicines, lest they purge by Urine, and increase the Distemper. Outwardly foment the Loyns with things which cool and bind ; as the roots of Sorrel, Plantane, Pomegranate-peels, Sumach seeds, &c. boiled in Vinegar, afterwards anoint with the Unguent of Roses, Sanders, and Comitiff.

## CHAP. LXVII.

## Of involuntary Piffing.

**T**HE Disease consisteth in the hurting of the retentive Action of the Bladder. Some are subject to this Distemper, while they are awake, which is the worst. Others are subject to it sleeping only, which is not so bad, because then the animal Functions are less exercised. There are two causes of this Distemper; First, the Weakness and Looseness of the Sphincter Muscle of the Bladder. Or Secondly, the exquisite Sense of the Bladder, and the sharpness of the Urine, (which stirreth up the expulsive Faculty) with consent of the Will. The first Cause is apparent in sucking Children, weak people, and such whose vital Heat is decayed, and the Body oppressed with cold and moist humors. The other Cause you may discover in those, whose Bladder nor Sphincter is no ways distempered; but they imagine (when the quantity and sharpness of the Urine stirreth up the expulsive Faculty) that they are pissing against the Wall, and so get a custome of it, which cannot be cured by Medicines. The Sphincter Muscle may become weak or loose by Youth, old Age, decay of vital Heat, by the Palsie; in Women, from Diseases of the Womb, or hard Labour, cutting for the Stone, or any Wound there, or deep Ulcer.

This Disease is easily known, and the cause thereof is as easily discovered; if it come by Wound, Ulcer, old Age, or the like, it is apparent. If it come by consent of the other parts, Diseases of those parts are obvious as the original: If neither of them appear, consider the cold and moist Temper of the part, which is known by the internal and external causes, and the Effects upon them depending, as Softness of the Body, Whiteness, and Looseness of the Nerves about the privities, Childhood, Age, evil phlegmatick Concoction, and such like.

In old Men this Disease is incurable, because the vital Heat cannot be repaired. In Children Nature worketh the Cure, when they grow elder, by drying up the superfluous Humidity, and knitting the Muscle; but if a man continue so till the Age of twenty or twenty five, he is incurable. If involuntary Piffing come to a man sick of an acute Fever, Death is at hand.

If this Disease come by a Wound or Ulcer, or any other manifest Disease, the Cure Depends upon the removing of them; otherwise the Cure is wrought by amending the cold and moist Distemper, and the looseness of the Sphincter Muscle. First, you must purge the cold and flegmatick humors; add to your phlegm-Purgers such Medicines,

which

which purge and leave a binding Quality behind, as Rubarb, Myrabolans, and the like. Then give Medicines that knit the parts and dry the humors: Take of the Roots of Comphry, and Cypress, of each half an ounce; Cypress-Nuts, and Myrtles dried, of each two drams: Coriander-seed prepared, Red Coral, Amber, and Shavings of Ivory, of each one dram: the seeds of Plantane, Rue, and Acorn Cups, of each two scruples; powder them, and with the Syrup of Comphry make an Opiate, and give the Quantity of a Chesnut Morning and Evening; or drink half a dram of the powder in red Wine. Sweating Medicines are much commended. Things proper for the cure of this Disease are, the Brain and Stones of a Hare burnt: the Throat of a Cock; Snails and Egg-shells; Mice fried or dried to powder; Hogs-Hoofs powdered; Agrimony and the Gizzards of Hens in powder. Apply Medicines to the Privities that are hot, strengthening and astringing. Let him drink the Decoction of the inward Bark of an Oak, of Sloes, and such like; and let him avoid drink to bedward. You must allay the Symptoms which may accompany this Disease, as Feavers, Thirst, Watchings, Consumptions, &c. by the Remedies laid down in their proper Chapters.

CHAP. LXVIII.

*Of the Stoppage of the Urine and Strangury.*

THE Stoppage of Urine and the Strangury, are Diseases, which differ only in degree; the first is called by the Greeks *ἰσχυρία*; the other *Στραγγυρία*. *Iscuria* is when the Urine is totally stopped: when little is voided, then it is called *Stranguria*. The first is caused by an Obstruction in the Nerve, which helpeth the expulsive Faculty of the Bladder, by the Palsie, or some sleepy or stupifying Disease. A cold Distemper of the Bladder, dulling the Sense thereof, may be the Cause. Sometimes an Inflammation or Tumor in the Muscle of the Bladder may stop the passage, the Stone, some thick humor, clod of Blood, or the like. Sometimes by long holding of Water, by which the Bladder is so stretched that it cannot contract itself to open the passage. Sometimes the Bladder is empty, and no Urine cometh to it, this is called a bastard *Iscuria*, and may be caused by some hurt in the attractive or expulsive Faculty of the Reins. The attractive Faculty is hurt by some Stoppage in the Reins, or emulgent Veins. The Reins may be obstructed by the Stone, thick Flegm, or the like; the emulgent Veins, by abundance of Blood or



Water. Sometimes the watry humour is spent, as in Feavers; or sent to some other part, as in the Dropsie; by which means the attractive Faculty of the Reins is hindered. The expulsive Faculty of the Reins is hindered by the Stone, Flegm, or clods of Blood.

*Diag.* The Disease is easily known; the Causes thereof may be obtained. If it come by long holding the Urine, the Patient is able to inform you. If there be a stoppage in the part, the use of the Catheter or searing Candle, and the ingenuity of the Artist will discover the Nature of the stoppage. If the passage be stopped by the Stone, the Symptoms of the Stone have gone before: If a Caruncle, there hath gone before a *Gonorrhoea*, or an ulcer in the passage of the Yard. If clods of Blood stop the passage; the Patient hath formerly voided blood, and clotted blood will stick to the Catheter.

The *Strangury* is thus known, There is neither Weight, Tumor, or Extension about the Privities, but rather an Empunctus: the attractive or expulsive Faculty of the Reins is obstructed as aforesaid.

Prognosticks are thus made; This Disease is ever dangerous, if it continue above seven days, it is deadly. The same judge, if the Patient hath Hiccough or *Tenasmus* accompanying this Disease: or if it came by a Wound or Blow upon the Back-bone; or if his Breath stink of Piss;

The Cure of both these consisteth in removing the Causes. If it proceed from the fulness of the emulgent Veins, bleeding is good: If from Diseases of the Reins or Uretors, seek the Cure out of the Chapters that treat of the Pain, Inflammation, or Stone in the Kidneys. If it depend upon the Inflammation of the Bladder, see the 64 Chapter. If upon the Stone fastned in the Neck of the Bladder, lay the Patient upon his back with his Thighs lifted up, move him hither and thither till the Stone fall out of the passage: If that will not do, make use of the *Catheter*. If the Stone lieth in the passage of the Yard, bathe the Yard in warm Milk or Oyl, and labour to get it out with your fingers: if it will not come out, bind the Yard on each side, and make an Incision on the upper-side of the Yard. If a Caruncle stop the passage, Medicines which are proper to take it away, must be conveyed to the part with a Wax-Candle. If Phlegm obstruct, purge it with medicines convenient, and when you see occasion, give such as provoke Urine. The Chapters of the Stone of the Bladder or Kidneys will direct you how to prepare them, as also Clysters, Fomentations, unguents, and the like.

CHAP. LXIX.

*Of the Scalding of the Urine.*

**Disvela.** *Dysuria* in Greek, is a Disease, which Modern Writers call, *Scalding of the Urine*: it differs from *Stranguria* in this, That more Water is made, and with far more pain. Any thing that can wound the Sphincter-Muscle, or passage of the Bladder, may be the Cause. The usual Cause is either a mixture of sharp Humors with the urine, or sometimes the sharpness of the urine, caused by the eating of hot and sharp Meats, or by the hot distemper of the Bowels, Liver, or other parts: or from evil Concoction in the Stomach or Liver, by which the Blood is not freed from salt and tartarous Humours, which being sucked to the Kidneys, is sent to the Bladder, and causeth pain. Filthy Matter coming from an Ulcer in the Reins or Bladder may be the Cause; he who is troubled with a *Gonorrhœa* or *Running of the Reins*, is seldom free from scalding urine. To conclude, the Stone or large Gravel may be the Cause.

The Knowledge of this Disease is evident, the Signs of the Causes are easily gathered. If it be caused by the Stone, Inflammation, or *Gonorrhœa*, it is known by their proper Signs. If from sharpness of urine, by the mixture of Humours, the urine will be thin, and high coloured; or in it will appear a mixture of Choler, Phlegm, or Matter; the Patient hath eaten hot things, or else hath some hot Distemper.

This Disease is not very dangerous unless it continuë long, and ulcerateth the Neck of the Bladder: Sometimes it is hard to be cured, especially if the Patient be old.

The Cure must be wrought by taking away the Cause: If a mixture of sharp humors make the Urine sharp, first make use of Phlebotomy, which is good to correct the hot distemper of the Liver and other parts, make use of this Evacuation as often as the Patient's Constitution will bear, and the Distemper require; then, to derive it from the part affected, open the lower Veins. Then purge with Cassia, Manna, Rhubarb, Mirabolans, Tamarinds, and such things which purge gently: if you give it with the Decoction of Plantane, Mallows, Lettuce, Purslane, and the like, it will be the better. A gentle Vomit is much commended as a good Revulsion. Cooling Clusters are good. Inwardly the Whey of Goats milk, or Mineral Waters that cool, are good for ordinary drink. Or this Julep: Take of the Roots of Marsh and common Mallows, of each one ounce; Lettuce, Endive, Purslane, and Violet leaves, of each one handful: Jujubes and

Sebestens, of each one ounce : of the four great cold Seeds, a dram : the flowers of Violets, Roses, and water-Lillies, of each one Pugil : boyl them in Spring-water to a pint and an half ; strain it, and add of Ju-jubes, Violets, and Poppies, of each one Ounce and an half ; Oyl of Vitriol twenty drops : make a Julep for four Doses, to be taken Morning and Evening. If there be no Fever, give Milk by itself. The Troches of Winter=Cherries is good. If the pain be very great, let the Patient, when he maketh water, put his Yard into warm milk, or a Decoction of Mallows, and other cooling Herbs. Or inject Milk, Plantane-Water, or an Emulsion of the cold Seeds into the passage. Baths and Fomentations made of cool Herbs are good ; and if the Privities be anointed with *unguentum Populeon*, the Oyl or Unguent of Roses, Oyl of Lillies, and the like, it profiteth. If the Liver, Reins, or other parts by their Heat be the Cause, use Medicines that are good to cool them. If the Liver be too hot, bleed the Hemorrhoids, or make an Issue in the right Leg. If it come from the Stone, Inflammation, or Ulcer of the Bladder or Kidneys, cure them according to the Rules in their proper Chapters ; but the cooling Medicines before mentioned are good to allay the Symptoms.

## C H A P. LXX.

## Of Pissing of Blood.

**T**Hough Blood may come from divers parts of the Body to the passage of the Urine, yet I shall here speak only of that Bloody urine, which is made from the defect of the Reins or Bladder.

The usual Causes are, much sharp blood which corrodeth the Veins, or plenty of blood which bursteth them : Sometimes a Stone in the Reins or Bladder, being moved by Riding or violent Exercise, by its roughness teareth the part. A Fall or Stroak, vehement Motion, lifting or carrying may break a Vein. Sometimes the Weakness of the Reins being not able to divide the urine from the blood, may cause this Disease.

This Disease is apparent to the Senses, for when blood is mixed with the urine, it appeareth like Water wherein Flesh hath been washed, with Clods of blood at the bottom : if it staves too long in the Bladder, it looks black. The place that is pained shews the part affected. If it come from the Reins, it is more mixed with the urine, than if it come from the Bladder. If it come from the Bladder, it is in a lesser quantity. If it come from the Stone in the Kidneys, or Bladder,



Bladder, the Signs mentioned in their proper Chapters will appear. If it come from Repletion or Sharpness of Humors, the Abundance of Blood, Choler, Melancholy, or such Humours appear in the Body. If it come by a Blow, Fall, violent Exercise, &c. the Patient is able to inform.

This Disease, if it be violent and continue long, is very dangerous; for sometimes the Patient falleth into a Consumption, sometimes into the Dropsie: Sometimes it causeth a stoppage of urine, and sometimes an Ulcer breedeth in the place from whence the Blood floweth.

If Blood or sharp Humours abound, begin the Cure with blood=letting; after a while, for derivation, let the Hemorrhoids and the Saphena or Anle-Vein be opened. Then purge the cholerick Humours with those medicines that are prescribed in the 30 Chapter Of Spitting of Blood. After you have purged sufficiently, give things that knit the Veins and stop blood. For this purpose give four or five ounces of the Juyce of Plantane, and a scruple of the Troches of Amber, or of Gordonius, Morning and Evening. *Forestus* in his Observations doth much commend Sheeps-milk, six ounces, with one dram of Bole-armenick, is the Dose. The Decoction of Knot-grass, Purslane, Horse-tail, and Comphry Roots, Plantane, Pomegranates, Quinces, and the like. Likewise the powder of red Coral, Blood-stone, *Sanguis Draconis*, *Terra Sigillata*, given with the water or juice of Plantane is good. Give Juleps to allay the Heat of the Blood. Apply such things to the Loins as cool and astringe, thus: Take of the Roots of Bistort, Comphry, and Clowns-wound-wort, of each one Ounce; Horse-tail, Plantane, Purslane, Knot-grass, and Shepherds-purse, of each one handfull: Pomegranate-peels half an ounce; Sumach, Myrtle-Berries, and Hypocistis, of each two drams: Acorn-cups, red and yellow Sanders, of each one dram; red Roses, three pugils: boyl them in Smiths-water, and Vinegar, therewith foment the Reins. Then anoint the Loins with *unguentum Comitissa*, and *Refrigerans Galeni*; and if you would have it bind more, add the juyce of Plantane, or such like, *Sanguis Draconis*, &c. Then wear a thin plate of Lead about the Reins, pricked full of holes. Let the Patient's ordinary drink be Beer, in which is tunned Mastich-wood sliced and cut small, Plantane, and the Herbs before-named. If the Liver be distempered with Heat, confer with the 53 Chapter. If the Stone or Gravel be the Cause, use no strong Diureticks, because they provoke the Flux, but that which I have known very effectual in this case, I shall here commend, and put an end to the Chapter: Take of the four greater and lesser cold Seeds, of each one dram; Quince-seeds half a dram; the seeds of Marsh-

Mallows,

Mallows, white Poppy and winter-Cherries, of each one scruple; make an Emulsion with the Decoction of Marsh-Mallows, and give two, three, or four spoonfuls in the Morning; and if you add a little Oyl of Vitriol, it will be the better. Venice Turpentine made into Pills with the powder of Rubarb half a dram taken in the Morning doth gently cleanse the Reins.

## C H A P. LXXI.

## Of the Green-Sickness.

**T**HIS Disease is called by some, the Virgins-Disease, the White-Feaver, the white Jaundice, but vulgarly the Green-Sickness. It is an evil habit of the Body, proceeding from the Obstruction of the Veins about the Womb, Liver, Spleen, and Mesentery, causing a heaviness and unweildiness of the whole Body, difficulty of Breathing, panting of the Heart, and Head-Ach, a desire after Food that is evil, and a loathing of good. The Veins about the Womb being obstructed, that Blood which Nature hath ordained to go thither, having not free passage, runs upwards, and oppresseth the Heart, Liver, Spleen, Diaphragma, stops the Vessels, and destroys the natural Heat; hence it cometh to pass, that the Stomach and Bowels cannot concoct well as they ought to do, so Crudities are dispersed throughout the body, and make an evil habit. Sometimes, by this means, the *Hypochondria* is swelled, which depressing the *Diaphragma*, causeth shortness of Breath. This gross blood being carried in the great Artery to the Heart, which, lest it should be suffocated by it, labours for its deliverance, and often moving of its Arteries causeth a Palpitation and beating of the Temples. The Stomach, by this means being filled with Crudities and Excrementitious humours, causeth a Loathing of Food, and desire after such things which ought not to be eaten, as Salt, Chalk, Coals, Ashes, Oat-meal, Wheat, Tobacco-Pipes, &c. which Disease is called *Pica Malacia*, and we have spoken of it in the 35 Chapter of this Book. This Obstruction is caused many wayes, as drinking of cold drink to Bedward; eating raw or unripe Fruits. Some go to Feasts, and upon a full Stomach dancing and sporting all Night, disturb the natural Frame of the body, and want Rest: others sleep too much, and sit long at their work, as Seamstresses, Bonelace-makers, and the like. By these and the like means, Concoction is hurt, the natural Heat is extinguished, and the Body filled with crude Excrements, and thick slimy Humors, which cause Obstructions.

This

This Disease is easily known, and you may know the diseased, if you do but view their Faces, which are pale and white; sometimes of a Lead-colour, blew or green, the Face and Eye-lids, the Legs and Feet swelled: The whole Body is unweildy and lazy. When the Body is stirred by Exercise or Walking, especially going up a hill or steep place, there followeth Palpitation of the Heart and shortness of Breath, beating in the Temples, and great Head-ach: behind, if the Womb be obstructed: before, if the Hypochondria be afflicted; there is great loathing of wholesome Meat, and desiring the contrary: the Pulse is swift and quick, as in a Fever, and when the Disease comes to the height, the Terms are stopped.

This Disease continueth a long time, yet is seldom dangerous; sometimes, by long continuance, it breeds Corruption in the natural parts, Dropsies, Feaver, Consumptions, which end in Death. If the Veins of the Womb onely are obstructed, a Husband will cure her. Women, that have a long time been in this condition, bring forth weak and sickly Children, and sometimes they are barren.

This Disease is cured by opening the Obstructions, evacuating the filthy Humors, and strengthening of the parts. The Obstructions are opened, by such Medicines as are mentioned in the cure of the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen; you may add to them such things which respect the Womb; as Mugwort, Fetherfew, Penny-royal, &c. If the Spleen be obstructed, and such things which are proper for that, as Caper-bark, Ceterach, Spleen-wort, &c. Open the *Saphæna* or Ankle-vein; but first, if the Maid be full of Blood, open a Vein in the Arm. Then purge often with such Medicines as are prescribed in the Cure aforesaid: and make use of such Medicines as powerfully open Obstructions there prescribed. *Zacutus Lusitanus* doth much commend the Conserve of Mugwort given thirty dayes together, drinking after it a little of the distilled Water of Savin, in which *Rhubarb* hath been infused. The Salt of Mugwort is very good, and *Fæcula Brionie* mixed with the Conserve, hath an effectual and powerful operation. If the Obstructions are stubborn, and not easily opened, make a Bath thus; Take of the Roots of Marsh-mallows, *Briony*, Elder, and Lillies, of each two pound; Balm, Fetherfew, Mallows, Mercury, Madder, Mugwort, Nep, Penny royal and Violets, of each three handfuls; the Seeds of Flax and Fenugreek, of each two ounces; boyl them in a sufficient quantity of Water, and let the Patient bathe her self in the morning and Evening two dayes, and let the Decoction be renewed the second day. The next day open the Vein under the Ankle, if the Terms be stopp'd, (as for the most part they are in this Disease) then give Medicines that powerfully open Obstructions: when you find that the Obstructions are opened, which you may easily perceive by the decay of the

afore=



aforenamed Symptoms, then you must discuss the peccant Humours that remain in the Veins and other parts of the Body, by Sweats; for which you must use the Decoction of Guajacum in cold constitutions; or of China and Sarsa in those that are hot. In the mean while every fourth or fifth day, give a purge to cleanse the Body of the crude Humors, which cannot be sent forth by Sweat.

## CHAP. LXXII.

## Of the Stoppage of the Terms.

**M**enstruum Suppressio, or the Terms stopped, is when a Woman of ripe Age hath little or no Evacuation of Blood by the Womb, once in a moneth; yet gives not suck, nor is with Child. Divers Diseases of the Womb may cause this Suppression, viz. A cold and dry Distemper, which thicketh and bindeth the Womb. A hot and dry Distemper dryeth the part: Inflammation, Tumor, Ulcer or Erosion of the mouths of the Vessels in Abortion; or Tumor in the adjacent parts by compression, may cause this Stoppage. The Vessels of the Womb may be obstructed by thick and phlegmatick Humors, or they may be compressed by a Tumor in the parts adjacent. The cause may be in the Blood, when it offends in Quantity, Quality or Motion; in Quantity, when there is too much Blood, which doth so dilate the Vessels, that they cannot contract to expel it; too little, when the Body hath not enough for its Nourishment. It offendeth in Quality, when the Blood is thick, slimy and viscous, by some cold Distemper of the Liver, or by the mixture of such Humors with the Blood. It offends in Motion, when it flows some other way; as by the Hemorrhoids, by urine, the Nose, Vomiting, and by Spitting, and many other wayes. *Riverius* saith, that he saw a Maid which had a sore Head, which opened once a moneth, and bled plentifully; and I knew a Maid in the same Condition at the time of writing hereof.

External causes are, taking Cold in the time of the Flux, eating things of a very hot Nature, by which the substance of the Liver is dried, or Food that is cold, thick and astringent, especially at the time of Purgation, eating too much or too little, by too long retaining of Excrements; by bleeding at the Nose, or any unnatural Evacuation by Vomit, Seige, urine or Sweat. To these add the external Causes mentioned in the Chapter aforegoing, *Of the Green-Sickness*.

This Disease is known by the Patient's Relation, but it is convenient

Chap. 71.  
ent to distill  
common to  
thus stoppage  
Child.  
more the S  
with Child  
who are wi  
it is not fo  
expert Mi  
these the  
Child, be  
More pa  
known by  
and it may  
the parts a  
by abund  
plethoric  
On the bl  
of the bee  
posterior  
The Su  
most said  
come by  
straighten  
struct the  
The C  
cual, ab  
the lower  
about the  
Terms.  
on, use R  
the cause  
plethoric  
passage  
struction  
Rule in  
such thi  
Take of  
the Joye  
three in  
of great  
things in  
Cure of

## Chap. 72. Of the Stoppage of the Terms. 187

ent to distinguish between this kind of Suppression, and that which is common to Women with Child. They who have their Menstrues thus stopped are pale and more discoloured than those who are with Child. They who are in this Condition, the longer it continues, the more the Symptoms encrease; the contrary you shall find in Women with Child. They are likewise more sad and melancholy than those who are with Child: In those the lower Belly, though it swell, yet it is not so hard nor proportionable to the Womb. And lastly, an expert Midwife may distinguish it by the mouth of the Womb; for in these the mouth of the Womb is not so close shut as in a Woman with Child, but rather hard and painful.

More particularly, the Stoppage of the Vessels of the Womb are known by a pain in the Loins, especially when the Terms should flow; and if any thing issueth, it will be white, or blackish and slimy. If the parts adjacent be obstructed, the Veins in the Thighs and Arms, by abundance of blood are swollen; especially if the Woman be fleshy, plethorick, and hath sed high. Or else the Woman wanteth blood: Or the blood is corrupted, which you may perceive by the evil habit of the body, and some Disease of the Liver. If the blood hath a preposterous motion, or flow some other way, it is manifest.

The Stoppage of the Terms is very dangerous, and many (I had almost said all) Diseases may come thereof. It is least dangerous, if it come by reason of too much blood. It is worst, which cometh by streightness of the Vessels, or crude and slimy Humours, which obstruct them.

The Cure consisteth in this generally; If too much blood be the cause, abate the quantity by Phlebotomy, first in the Arm, then in the lower Veins. Then, by Fomentations, soften and relax the parts about the Womb, and give such purges as do properly provoke the Terms. If you find that want of blood is the cause of the Obstruction, use Restoratives in the first place; and whatever you find to be the cause of Extenuation, let that be removed; and if you find a preposterous motion of the blood, labour to expel it, and drive it to the passage of the Womb. But seeing that (for the most part) this Obstruction is in the Veins of the Womb, you may follow the same Rule in cure, prescribed in the Chap. Of the Green-Sickness, adding such things which more especially respect the Womb. Purge thus, Take of Aloes, three drams; the Mils of Cochy Pills, one dram; with the Juice of Savin (or Syrup of Muzwort) make twenty Pills; and give three in the morning every third day: Emollient Clysters are likewise of great use. After Phlebotomy, and sufficient purging, give such things as powerfully open Obstructions, such as are prescribed in the Cure of Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen; to these add Medicines made

188 *Of the Immoderate Menstrual Flux.* Book II.

made of the Roots of Asparagus, Parsly, Fennel, Smallage, Maddir, Elicampane, Birth-wort, Angelica, Cyperus : the leaves of Worm-wood, Calamint, Camomil, Origan, Southern-wood, Mugwort, Penny-royal, Hyssop, Hore-Hound, Rue, Motherwort, Sage, Fetherfew, Maiden hair, Nep and Savin : the seeds of Smallage, Parsly, Fennel, Juniper, Bayes, Annis, Cummin, Nettles, and such like ; of these may be made Decoctions, or distilled Waters, Syrups, and the like, which I omit, fearing my Book will swell to a far bigger Volume then I intended. Of these, and such like, you may make a Bath for the Patient to sit in, afterwards anoint the Share and parts about the Privities, with the Oyl of Dill, Rue, Lillies, &c. You may, likewise, make dry Suffumigations, with Castor, Storax, Galbanum, Cinnamon, Frankincense, Bdellium, Benzoin, Lignum Aloes, Cloves and Mace. Or you may make Pessaries with the mass of Coehy pills and Honey, and the Juyce of Mercury. Or with Hiera Picra, and Benedicta Laxativa, with the Honey and Juyce aforesaid : but this remember, that Pessaries must be applied to married Women only. If the Disease be inveterate, let issues be made in the Legs, and after the Menstrual Flux is obtained, let them be dried up again.

CH A P. LXXIII.

*Of the Immoderate Menstrual Flux.*

**M**enstruum Fluxus Immodicus, is when the monthly Terms do exceed in quantity, come too often, or stay too long. This is caused by an opening of the Veins, either by Abundance, Heat, sharpness or thinness of the Blood, or by some Blow, Fall or Wound : to understand the Cause more fully, have recourse to the 19 and 30 Chapters, *Of bleeding at the Nose, and spitting of Blood.* This Disease it self may be known by the Patient's information, and the symptoms which follow, viz. decay of Strength and Appetite, an ill habit of the Body, by reason of ill Digestion, swelling of the Legs and a leady coloured Complexion. To know the Causes, observe that a thin habit of the Body, with a Diet which doth encrease thin and wheyish blood, or you may perceive the thin & wheyish Humors in the blood, which cometh from the Patient: this sheweth that the blood soakerh through the Veins. If the Coats or Ends of the Veins be broken, the Patient hath had some Wound, Bruise or Fall, or used some immoderate Labour, Exercise or Venery ; hath endured too great Heat or Cold : or she hath had a bargain in Child-birth, a Miscarriage, or been handled by an unskilful Midwife. If there be an Exulceration in the Womb



# Chap. 73. Of the Immoderate Menstrual Flux. 189

Womb, by which the Veins are eaten thorough, the blood droppeth by little and little, with pain and sharpness: the Patient's Body is afflicted with sharp and cholerick Humors; the blood which issueth is at first matterish, wheyish, blackish or yellow: If it increase, the ends of the Veins come with the blood, and the Flux encreaseth, and is hard to be stopped.

Prognosticks are: All long and lasting Issues of blood are dangerous, especially those of the womb: that which comes by soaking thorough the Veins, though it continueth longer, yet the blood and Spirits do not so much decay, therefore it is not so dangerous. On the contrary, the breaking of the Veins cause more danger, because of the sudden issuing of blood, yet is sooner cured, because the Patient hath strength and store of blood. But of all the other, that which comes from Exulceration is most dangerous, because some part of the Veins is perished, which letteth out the blood in great abundance, and is very difficult to be cured. If she grow weaker, and the Issue more violent, there is danger of death: in elderly Women it is hard to be cured.

Since the Cure must be performed in the same manner (almost) as is prescribed in the 51 Chapter, *Of the Immoderate Flux of the Hemorrhoids*, I shall say the less. First open a Vein in the Arm, and let her bleed much by degrees. Use Frictions and Ligatures, and fasten Cupping-Glasses to her dugs, as Hippocrates adviseth: Purge with the same medicines prescribed in the Chapter foregoing. Also Vomits are good, for they draw the blood upwards; and Hippocrates treating of Womens Diseases, doth much commend them. Then make use of this Powder, much commended by Johannes Michael Paschalius, and is thus prepared: Take the shells of two new laid Eggs burnt: Frankincense, Mastich, of each half an ounce: Pearls and red Coral prepared, and Amber, of each two drams: Hematites and Emerald of each half a scruple: Barley-meal fine sifted, two pugils: the whites of four Eggs, and chalybeated water, enough to make the powder into two Cakes: bake them in an Oven so hard, that they may be beaten to powder: give of this powder half a dram, or a dram in the morning in Broth made of Sheeps-feet, or Calves-feet. The Juice of Plantane, Yarrow, Nettles, Shepherds Purse, Knot-grass, Comphry and Horse-tale, is very good, or a Syrup made of all or either of them is much, and upon good grounds commended. Milk, in which red hot Steel hath been quenched, allayeth the sharpness of the Humors, and stayeth the Flux. Spicknard in fine powder inwardly taken, or applyed to the womb upon a little Lint, hath been much approved of. Mineral waters, which receive their Tincture from Vitriol, Iron or Allum, do remove the Cause, and strengthen the part. The Chymists do much commend the

the Tincture of Coral and vitriolated Steel. Before you go farther, take this necessary Caution, that you do not altogether give strong astringents, but sometimes Medicines which strengthen the Liver, and somewhat bind. Outwardly foment upon her Loins, share, and about the Privities, with a fomentation made of the foregoing Herbs. Then anoint the parts aforesaid with the Oyl of Myrtles, Mastick and Quinces; or make an Oynment more astringent, adding Frankincense, Dragon's Blood, sealed Earth, Bolearmenick, and the like. *Unguentum Comitisse* is very powerful in this Distemper: Afterwards apply a Plaister to the Navel and Loins, *Emplastrum ad Herniam*, *Hystericum*, or *Emplastrum de Mastich*, either of these, or all three are very effectual. Likewise dry Fumes, Pessaries and Injections for the womb may be prepared of the aforesaid Herbs, and other astringent Simples. When she is cured, you must endeavour to prevent the Disease for the future, by the Rules prescribed in the 51 Chapter, *Of the Immoderate Flux of the Hemorrhoids*.

## CHAP. LXXIV.

## Of the Whites.

THIS Disease is called the Flux of the Womb, the Woman's Flux, and the Whites; and it is an Excrementitious Humor flowing from the womb; sometimes white, and sometimes watery, sometimes mixed with yellow, green or black, according to the nature of the Humor. Women are subject principally to this Distemper, and sometimes Maids, though some have affirmed the contrary, and condemned them as unchast; yet according to the Opinion of the wisest Physicians, the purest Virgins may have this Infirmary, and their opinion is confirmed daily by Experience. These Humors are bred in the whole Body, or in some particular part, or in the womb it self. They are bred in the whole Body, either by ill Diet, or a vicious habitual Distemper. The particular parts may be in the Brain, Stomach, Liver or Spleen: These Humors may be bred in the womb, by a cold or hot Distemper therein; the cold maketh it unable to digest its Nourishment, and the hot Distemper corrupteth it; hence cometh this Excrementitious Humor. Child bearing, Abortion, Contusion, Inflammation, Imposthume, or Ulcer in the womb may weaken the part, and dispose it to breed and receive such Humors.

This Disease is known by the relation of the patient; from what part it cometh, is thus known: If the whole Body send this Humor to the womb, the whole Body appeareth in an evil state, is weary and

and heavy, as if the Patient were weary with hard labours, and by this Flux her body is at present refreshed; the Hands and Feet are puffed up with great itching and stinging, if the humour be cholerick. If it come from some peculiar part, the Symptoms and Excrements proper to that part appear. If it come only from the womb, something hath happened, which hurt the womb, as a Fall or Blow upon the Back or Belly, immoderate carnal Embrace, especially if the woman be young, or any Disease of the womb. Signs that distinguish between this Disease and an Ulcer in the womb or Gonorrhæa, are these; If there be an Ulcer in the womb, that which floweth is more digested, mattery, mixed with blood and stringy, and cometh with pain; and the woman admits not of Copulation without pain. In the Gonorrhæa, the Matter comes in a small quantity, and seldom, and is of a shining whiteness. But if it be a Gonorrhæa, which is gotten by acting with an unclean person, then is the Womb ulcerated, the Urine sharp, and many other malignant Symptoms.

This Disease is not dangerous, but it is hard to be cured; for it is hard to divert the humours from this Channel, it being the Sink of the Body, through which the superfluous humours of a healthy body are every month evacuated. That which is blewish, green, black, and stinking, is worse than that which is pale, white, and doth not stink. This Disease is seldom cured in old Women, because they abound in phlegm. Lastly, by its continuance it may breed great Evils, as Barrenness, Falling out of the womb, evil habit in the whole body, and Consumption.

To Cure the Humour offended, it must be purged with convenient Medicines; and because phlegm for the most part is the humour peccant, purge with such Medicines as principally purge phlegm, with which mix such as purge the humour mixed. Vomits (if the patient be strong) are good, because they empty the Stomach of excrementitious humours, and do powerfully revel the humours from the womb. After sufficient Evacuations, let the Patient take sweating Decoctions made of *Lignum Vitæ* and *Sassafras*, if the patient be phlegmatick: of *China* and *Sassa*, if he be cholerick or melancholy. Also Sweat procured by sulphurous Baths, is kind. Milk wherein steel hath been quenched is very good, and it will be more powerful if a little Bolearmenick, Sanguis Draconis, and Terra Sigillata be given with it. Among a multiplicity of Medicines which are astringent and proper for this Disease, I shall insert but one or two. *Zecheus* doth highly commend this following Electuary: Take of Gum Arabick, and Gum Traganth, of each two drams: Coral of both sorts, Egg-shells burnt, Hart-horn, Dill-seeds, Amber, of each four scruples: Honey of Roses, as much as will make it into an Electuary: give half an ounce in the morning



Morning, and fast two hours after it. This Julep I have found of great virtue: Take of the distilled water of Plantane, red Roses, Oak leaves, and Knot-grass, of each four ounces; infuse therein a whole Night, of the Flowers of Comphy, Bugloss, and red Roses, of each one pugil, strain them out, and make it sharp with Oyl of Vitriol; with the Syrup of Comphy and red Roses, make a Julep for four or five Mornings Draughts. Whatever part sendeth phlegmatick Matter to the Womb, you must seek its Cure from its proper Chapter. To conclude, the Medicines prescribed in the former Chapter are good in this Distemper: Outward Remedies, as Fomentations, unguents, Fumes, Pessaries and Injections, such as are prescribed in the Chapter aforesaid, are useful here.

## C H A P. LXXV.

## Of the Mother.

**T**HIS Disease is Called the Hysterical Passion, *utri Strangulatio*, by the Greek, *Πνιξ ὕστερον* we call it the Mother and Strangling of the Womb. It is caused by the Seed, menstrual Blood, or other excrementitious Humors retained besides the intent of nature in the Womb, and there putrefied and corrupted breedeth venomous and malignant Vapours, which arising, doth afflict divers parts of the Body. Now these Vapours do not alwayes afflict, but when they are stirred up by some Causes; (the most noted are, sweet odours, sweet meats eaten, anger, terror, and grievous passions of the mind): these and such like bring Women subject to this Infirmary into their Fits, wherein their breathing is impaired, sometimes (to appearance) abolished, the body becomes cold, their Speech gone, and pulse intercepted, so that they lie for dead, and sometimes have been laid out for burial, and yet have revived. Sometimes these Choaking Fits are not so extrem, yet it is accompanied with other hysterical Symptoms; as Vomitings, Ravings, Convulsions, Swoonings, and the like. Sometimes the Patient feeleth her self, as it were, choaked by an halter or rope; this is caused by abundance of Vapours and Winds ascending from the Womb (sometimes seconded by hypocondriack Melancholly) which Vapours compressing the Diaphragma and Lungs, hinder Respiration, and the patient feeleth her self as it were strangled. Others will have it proceed from the nature of the malignant Vapours, whose property is to cause Suffocation. Sometimes she loseth her Breath without pain or sense of Strangling, by reason of the stupefactive power of these Vapours which taketh away the vital Action

from

from the Heart, and so hindreth Respiration : For Nature having ordained the drawing of breath to cool the heart, and the heart is extremely cooled by these venomous Vapours, having no need of the cold Air, breathing ceaseth : for the vital Spirits being destroyed, the Animal, which are made of them must needs lose their function ; We may also say, that these venomous and stupifying Vapours do fly and assault the Brain, and hinder the Influx of the animal Spirits, whereby the motion of the Diaphragma and the Muscles which serve for Respiration are hindered. Likewise the Womb being filled with these stantuous Vapours, doth ascend towards the upper-parts, as it were, by a convulsive Motion, which causeth a Compression of the Midriff and Muscles of Respiration. Sometimes these sharp and Malignant Vapours ascend to the Head, and disperse themselves into the membranous parts, and cause divers pains, pricking and smarting, and sometimes stretching and swelling ; sometimes they cause pains beating like the pulse. Sometimes the Falling-Sickness cometh from the Womb, by reason of sharp and malignant Vapours, which having gotten a powerful Acrimony, do sharply smite the nervous parts. These Vapours assaulting the Heart, the Heart labourerth to expel them ; hence ariseth Palpitation : Likewise it causeth a great Puffation in the Back. The Stomach doth oftentimes suffer much by this Distemper according to the nature of the humours afflicting, or part of the Stomach it gets possession of ; as want of Appetite, or a depraved Appetite, that is, desiring Food which Nature disdains, as Coals, Chalk, &c. Loathing of Meat, Vomiting, Belching, Hiccough, and pain in the Stomach. If in the Womb menstrual Blood is retained, it floweth back by the Veins into the Liver, from thence shed abroad into the whole Body ; hence cometh swelling, Feavers, and other Diseases. If it flows back to the Spleen, Swelling, Stopping, Melancholy and hypochondrical Diseases are bred. Lastly, Women have pains in their Loins, Thighs, and other parts, which are caused by these Vapours conveyed from the Womb. Therefore, to know this from other pains, mark well the signs of this Disease.

Much may be gathered from what hath already been said, remember this, you must not expect all the Symptoms in one, but some in one, and some in another ; the Breathing faileth, sense of Strangling, coldness of the Body, the Pulse ceaseth, and the like, which I have mentioned before. There goeth before the Fit a Noise in the Belly below the Navil, Belching, inclination to Vomit, Weariness, Strengthening, the Face pale and wan. As it gathers strength, it bringerth Suffocation or Choaking ; afterwards the vital and animal Actions are depraved, diminished, and as it were abolished ; the Womb may be felt in divers parts of the lower Belly gathered round like a

Ball, tossing and tumbling to and fro. When the Fit begins to be over, a moist Humor floweth out of the Womb, the body beginneth to be warm, they have a colour in their face, they open their eyes, they sigh, they begin to move, and so by degrees are freed from the Fit.

Signs of the Causes are thus known; If the Seed corrupting in the Womb hath been the Cause, there hath preceded those things which might gather together or encrease Seed, and corrupt it in the Womb; as flourishing age, high-keeping, and an idle life, Sanguine Complexion, and ripe for Generation; or one formerly accustomed to the Actions of Generation, and left it off: if any such fall into this Disease, and have their monethly purgation well, you may judge that Corruption of Seed is the Cause. If it come from the putrification of menstruous blood, the Menstrues are stopped, or come not down well, and the Woman wanteth no carnal Embracements. If evil humours be the Cause, the Woman enjoyeth carnal Exercise and hath her monethly purgation, but her body is full of evil humors.

Prognosticks we make thus: This Disease is seldom mortal, but of long continuance; the Patient is in great danger, if it continue long, because Respiration being so often hurt, there is danger that the native heat be suffocated. Young Women when they come to bear Children for the most part they are cured; old women are seldom or never cured. To women with Child it is very dangerous, and threatneth miscarriage: To Women lying in, as dangerous by reason of their weakness. It is good for a Woman to sneeze in the Fits, for it signifieth strength of the Brain, and it disperseth the Vapours from the Brain.

I shall lay down a few Rules: First, to give present ease in the Fit: Secondly, to give perfect Cure. First, lay her down in such a posture, that her Neck and Shoulders may lie high, her Thighs and Privities low, shooting downwards, that so the Womb may be the better reduced. Let her lower parts be rubbed, and bound so hard as to cause pain. And if her Fit be inveterate, apply Cupping-Glasses to her Hips and Share: If she swoon, rub the bottoms of her feet with Vinegar and Salt, and coarse Clothes. Hollow in her Ears, and bend her Fingers, and if need require, apply Epispastick Cataplasms to her feet. Put strong and stinking things under her Nose, as Leather and Feathers burnt, Brimstone fired, Asafatida, Castoreum, & the like. But take this caution, carefully to distinguish between this Disease and the Falling-sickness, for in the latter such smells are hurtful. The Warts that grow upon a Horses legs being dried and powdered, and a Fume made thereof under the Patient's Nose is very good in the time of the Fit. The smoke of Tobacco blown into the Mouth and Nostrils is likewise of great efficacy to free the Woman from the fit. Whilst you do

this,



this, you must apply Musk or Civet wrapped up in cotton-wool to the Womb. Then blow this powder into her Nose; Take of white Pepper, Mustard-seed, P. Ulicio. y and Castor, of each one scruple; make it into a very fine Powder, and blow some up her Nose: if you judge it not strong enough, add a little white Hellebore or Euphorium: Or let her Nose be anointed with Oyl of Amber. If the fit be of long continuance, give her a laxative, carminative or wind-expelling Clyster: if one doth it not, give another. Afterwards give another made of Vinegar and Water, and let her drink a little Vinegar and water. Apply Emplastrum Hystericum to the Navel, or a plaister made of Galbanum, Caranna, Asiatetida & Tachamahacca. If you find the sick troubled with plenty of Wind and Vapours, bathe and foment the belly with Fomentations made of emollient, carminative and discussing herbs and seeds. If the Sick be a married Woman, let her have carnal Conjunction with her Husband as soon as ever the Fit is over. If that cannot be had, that is, if she be a Maid or Widow, let a Midwife tickle the Neck of the womb with her finger, anointed with the Oyl of Musk, Cloves, or the like, that so the offensive Sperm may be avoided. You may in the Fit, give Pills made of Asiatetida, Castor, Fæcula Broniæ, Myrrh, and the like; and if the fit be violent, give Pillulæ Fartivæ. Oyl of Amber given three or four drops in some convenient Waters are very good. The After-Birth of a Woman that lieth in of her first Child, dried and powdered, and a dram given in some convenient Liquor, is excellent. *Quercitanus* his powder made of Elder-berries, taken a dram in Wine, is very good.

For the Cure, you must consider whether the Woman be with Child or not, and be careful how you administer stinking Medicines for fear of Abortion, but rather outward medicines than inward. Whatever part of the body suffer by this Disease, either Brains, Heart, liver, &c. take care to free and strengthen the part, seek the means in their proper Chapters. The Patient must once in a month be purged with such medicines as principally regard the humor offending, adding thereto things that are hysterical. If the body be full of blood, open a Vein, or bleed the Hemorrhoids, if Nature requireth it. After general Evacuation, make use of swearing Decoctions, or let the Patient frequent sulphurous Baths. These Pills are much commended: Take of the Troches of Agarick, one dram and an half; Hiera of Colloquintida, one dram; the Seeds of Carrots, and Agnus Castus, of each one scruple; Myrrh, Castoreum and Diagridium, of each half a scruple; Venice Turpentine, as much as will suffice to make all into a Mass; let her take half a dram, or two scruples twice or thrice in a Month. Or Pillulæ Fartivæ taken half a dram once in a moneth doth very much cleanse the Womb. Then make use of this Syrup, much com-

mended by *Mercatus*: Take of the Juice of Mercury, and the cream of Carthamus seeds, of each six ounces; the water of Scorpion ra, seven ounces; Sugar, as much as will make it into a syrup, while it boyls, add of Confectio de Hyacinthos, of Alchermes, and a Powder of the Eleſſuary de Gemmis, of each two drams; let the Dose be two or three ounces. Aſſafetida and Caſtor made into Pills with Honey, have a peculiar property againſt theſe fits: many uſe the former with good ſucceſs, tied up in a thin ragg or ſarcenet, and hung about the Neck: and for this purpoſe the Liver or Fleſh of a Wolf, or the pizzil or ſtones of a Fox dried and hung about the Neck with a ſtring, reſting upon the Navel; vitriolated Steel, or the ſalt thereof, given with Sugar, from two to twenty grains, according to the ſtrength of the Patient, is much commended for opening Obſtructions, and cooling the Womb. Eight dayes before the expect her monthly purgation, let the Woman ſit in a mollifying and reſolving Bath, that ſo the humours may be reſolved, and flow forth with her Courſes. Laſtly, Iſſues made in the Thighs are good, for they derive and turn aſide evil humours from the Womb.

## CHAP. LXXVI.

## Of the Inflammation, ulcer, and hard ſwelling of the Womb.

**T**His Diſeaſe is a ſwelling of the Womb, which is cauſed by blood mixed with Choler, or other humors flowing to the part, vehement Exerciſe, or immoderate Copulation; ſome blow or fall upon the part: Meats that are ſharp and fretting, or ſuch things as naturally offend the part, as Cantharides or Peſſaries that are of a ſharp nature, Abortion, hard labour in Child=bed, or a violent handling by an unſkilful Midwife.

The ſigns of this diſeaſe are Swelling, heat and pain about the Region of the Womb, the body feveriſh. If the inflammation be in the Neck of the Womb, the pain is felt towards the Groin; If in the former ſide, the Bladder ſuffereth: if in the hinder ſide, the ſtrait Gut will be ſenſible thereof, and the pain is violently felt about the Loyns. If either ſide of the Womb be inflamed, the Thigh and Groin on the ſame ſide will be heavy and pained. If you conſider the Conſtitution and preſent Temper of the Patient, you may eaſily gueſs what Humour offends. If it be purely blood, the Symptoms are more mild; if Choler be mixed it is more vehement; if Phlegm or Melancholy, the Diſtemper is more fixed and laſting, but the pain is not ſo vehement. If the Inflammation impoſthumate, and

gathers

gather Matter, the pain and Feaver encreaseth, and the Patient hath shaking Fits, and most of all about the Evening. Sometimes it turns to an Ulcer, which is known by avoiding of stinky-Matter or Quitter out of the Womb. If it be party-coloured, greenish or lead coloured, stinking, and cometh away with great pains, it is the worse. If it depend upon the French Pox, or Gonorrhæa, their Symptoms will declare the same : Sometimes the Inflammation turns not to an Imposthume nor Ulcer, but to a painless hard swelling, called a *Schirrhus*, which is thus known; the Feaver and pain ceaseth, and the Swelling remaineth : there is hardness, heaviness, and sense of Weight, bearing down when the woman Randeth.

As to the Prognostick, I shall say a word or two to either of them : An Inflammation of the Womb is a dangerous and deadly Symptome, especially if the whole Womb be inflamed. If a Woman with Child suffer Inflammation of the Womb, the Child dieth, and probably the Mother followeth. Ravings, Hiccoughs, Coldness of the Hands and Feet, and cold Sweats, are the Messengers of Death. If it imposthume, and turn to an Ulcer, it ought not to be slighted, because the Womb is of exquisite sense, and hath a fellow-feeling with the painciple parts of the Body. If the ulcer turns cancerous, hollow, or fistulous, it is seldom or never cured, but vexeth the Patient miserably all her life-time. An ulcer in the neck of the Womb is most easily cured, because Medicines may be applied to them immediately. A *Schirrhus*, or insensible hard Swelling is seldom cured, because the natural heat is so weak in that part, that it can hardly discuss such an hard and almost stony-Substance : If it be not cured, it soon brings a Dropsie ; and if it be tempered with with over- and moist Medicines, it turns to a Cancer.

The Cure you must prosecute thus: First, in the Inflammation of the Womb give a cooling Clyster, then open the Basilick Vein on the same side the Womb is inflamed ; if all the Womb be inflamed, repeat your Phlebotomy, afterwards open the lower Veins. Rubbings and Bindings are good, and Cupping Glasses fastened to the Loins and Back. Purge the Humour offending with such things as purge gently : Then give cooling Juleps or Emulsions to allay the heat and sharpness of the Humours ; mix therewith Narcoticks to give ease and rest ; if the Patient be tired out, apply cooling Liniments and Cataplasms : In Liniments, use the Oyl and Oynment of Roses, Galen's cooling Oynment, Ceratum Santalinum, and such like ; and with the Oyl of Roses, white Bread and Milk, make Cataplasms, adding the Juyce of Henbane, Night-shade, Plantane and Sorrel ; and instead of the white Bread, the Meal of Barley,

Flax



Flax and Fenugreek-Seed : Of such cool Herbs make Injections and Pessaries. But use not cooling and repelling too long, lest the Tumor be fixed and hardened ; but rather use softning and dissolving Medicines with repelling, such as these, *viz.* Marsh and common Mallows, Mugwort, Melilot, Camomil, Fenugreek. If the Patient be subject to be coltive, give gentle purgers, or mollifying and cooling Clysters. If the pain be very violent, make Injections with new milk, and a little Opium : and make Pessaries of Philonium Romanum, and a little Cotton, and apply it. If it tends to Suppuration, apply a Cataplasmi made of the aforementioned softning Herbs, fat Figs, yelks of Eggs, Saffron, Oyl of Lillies and fresh Butter. When it is broken, we must endeavour to purge out the Quitter, and cleanse the Vicer. You must often purge with gentle medicines, as Senna, Rhubarb, Tamarinds, Mirabolans, Agarick, Catholicon, and such like, that the evil Humours may be delivered from the Womb ; for such who are easie to Vomit, a gentle Vomit is very profitable. Make a vulgarary Drink to cleanse and heal the Vicer : Take of Agrimony, Burnet, Ma wort, Kunt=Grass, Plantane and Yarrow, of each one handful : Chib-a-root half an ounce, Rha=Ponticum one ounce, Currance and French Burley, of each two ounces ; boyl them in Chicken-Broth, and let the Patient take somewhat more than a quarter of a Pint Morning and Evening. Venice-Turpentine washed in Mugwort-water, or in the Water of any other Herb respecting the Vicer, is good to cleanse and heal it. If the humors be sharp and painful, inject the Emulsion of the cold Seeds, Goats-milk, or (for want thereof ) Cows-milk, with the juyce of Shepherds purse, or any of the herbs aforementioned. To dry and fill up the Vicer, make a Decoction of the aforementioned herbs, or of the like nature, made in Water wherein steel hath been quenched, or in Plantane-water : add thereto Acacia, Hypocistis, Sanguis Draconis, Bolearmonick, fine Starch, Aristolochia rotunda, great Comphry, &c. Unguentum Egyptiacum, de Plumbo, de Ceruso, and de Apo, are very good in Injections ; and the Oyl of the yelks of Eggs stirred in a leaden Mortar is much more commended. If the Vicer in the Womb come by reason of the French Pox, a Fumigation made of Cinnabaris or Minium, taken into the Cavity of the Womb, hath a peculiar property to cleanse and heal the Vicer ; the same vertue hath Quick-silver Oynments.

If it come to a Scirrhus Tumor; you must purge the melancholy and rebellious humors, and give steeld and such Medicines, which powerfully open Obstructions of the Womb or other parts. Then you must prepare emollient and resolving Medicaments to be applied outwardly ; as the Fomentation, and Cataplasmi mentioned in the 56 Chap. Of the Scirrhus of the Liver. Likewise the Liniment there prescribed,

Chap. 7.  
scribed, ma  
great deal  
Tumor bee  
to a Cancer

There  
lise  
whic  
Lemph  
tained in  
certain Bl  
Liver or Sp  
are (s  
mours are  
womb are  
in the  
use of cold  
immediat

This D  
this and  
crusts a  
the swelling  
is not due  
Wind and  
Secondly  
if Wind be  
a Sound  
the Diast  
much, W  
beeing  
wary wi  
gy, wh  
will be  
phlegm  
Dilecti  
thus ; i  
therchi  
Blood,

scribed, may serve here for an injection. To conclude, you must use a great deal of care, diligence and industry in this Cure, lest that the Tumor become harder, or ( which is most dangerous ) degenerate into a Cancer.

CHAP. LXXVII.

*Of the Womb swelled by wind or Water.*

**T**Here is a twofold Dropsy of the Womb, one from Wind, which is like that sort, called *Tympanites*; the other from a watry and wheyish humor, answering to *Ascites*. Some add a third answering to *Leucophlegmatia*, which is seldom seen. This Wind or Water is contained in the Cavity of the Womb, or in the Membranes thereof, or in certain Bladders. It is caused by the weakness of natural heat in the Liver or Spleen, from which parts, Wind, Phlegm, or wheyish humors are sent to the Womb; or by the weakness of the Womb, those humours are collected. Causes which weaken the natural heat of the womb are many, viz. cold air heedlessly taken into the womb, or staying in the cold, or padding in cold water whilst the Courses flow, the use of cold meats and drinks; add to these, abortion, hard labour, immoderate flux of the Terms; all diseases proper to the Womb.

This Disease is best discovered by signs which distinguish between this and the universal Dropsie of the Belly. The Womb-Dropsy causeth a swelling, chiefly in the lower Belly; in the other Dropsie, the swelling is in all parts: in this the Body decays not, nor there is not such a Thirst and Driness of the Tongue as in the other; and Wind and Water sometimes bursteth out at the mouth of the womb. Secondly, to distinguish between the sorts of these Dropsies, consider, if Wind be the Cause, the lower part of the Belly being struck, giveth a Sound, thence is a pricking pain in the Belly, which reacheth to the Diaphragma: the Womb riseth like a Globe towards the Stomach, Wind bursteth out of its Neck, and the Patient is subject to belching, and when she breaketh Wind, she findeth some ease. If a watry wheyish humor be the Cause, the part appeareth soft and flaggy, with a noise of Water, and great heaviness. If from Phlegm, it will be more soft; and the parts adjacent, as well as the womb, have a phlegmatick Swelling. Thirdly, you ought to consider, whether this Disease hath its original in the womb, or by consent of other parts thus; if there appear Symptoms of the whole Body, or some part thereof to be misaffected, viz. if there be long Feavers, or a Flux of Blood, Distillations from the Head, weakness of the Stomach,

Swelling of the Liver and Spleen, and other stubborn Diseases in those parts, judge that the Womb receives its Distemper from some of these parts. On the contrary, if the Body and all the parts are in good health, saying some particular Disease of the Womb, then judge that the disease hath its original in the Womb. Fourthly, to know whether the Wind or watry Humour be in the Cavity of the Womb, or in little Bladders; take these two Rules, that if it be in the Cavity of the womb, it maketh a greater Swelling, and more water flows out at the Neck of the Womb. Secondly, if little Bladders of Water come forth, it is an evident sign that the Water or Wind is not contained in the Cavity of the Womb. Fifthly, this Womb-Dropsie is easily distinguished from the Tumors of the Womb caused of Blood or Choler, because there is no Fever, nor pain in the touching of it: it differeth likewise from a Schirous Tumor, for it is not so hard as not to yield to the finger. Sixthly, it is very convenient to distinguish between this Disease and a woman's being with Child: when a woman begins to be big with Child, the bigness of the Belly buncheth out, in this Disease it is depressed and flat: in the first, the Woman's Dugs do swell, in the latter they become extenuated and smaller. Women with Child, after a while grow better and better: but in this disease they grow worse and worse: Again, the Child is manifestly perceived to stir. Lastly, you must distinguish between this disease and the false Conception *Mola*, thus; in *Mola* Women find a great heaviness in their Wombs, and when they turn to lie on either side, it rolls like a stone to that side: again they that have conceived with *Mola* (for the most part) have a violent flux of their terms, every third or fourth month; and lastly the Dugs swell, and sometimes have milk in them, which things never happen in this Womb-dropsie.

Sometimes this disease cometh not to the height, but proveth an inflation: if it continueth, if the humour be void of putrification, though it continueth long, yet it is curable; nay, sometimes it floweth out of its own accord. If wind or water be in the cavity, it is evacuated with more ease, than if it be shut up in Bladders. If the humor be malignant and sharp, it produceth the like Symptoms, and is dangerous, for the most part deadly.

You must begin the Cure with Phlebotomy, if the disease hath its original from the Terms, and the Body be plethorick, otherwise it will much hurt, because natural heat is much weakened thereby. Then you must give such things as have power to purge, open, provoke Sweat, and move the Courses: you need go no farther than to the 58 and 71 Chapters, treating Of the Dropsy and Green-sickness. Give a gentle Vomit twice a week, if the Woman be easie to vomit. The heat of the Stomach must be cherished and maintained by

by Medicines  
that part 3  
Humors die  
of the Boes  
Leaves of D  
lamine, Ro  
Thine; the  
and Juniper  
is be a wine  
towards o  
Southern  
the humors  
quintile, &  
apply it. N  
Disease pro  
to the Thigh

Some  
down to  
things that  
the womb,  
leaving life  
in Child-be  
violent draw  
the expulsi  
a dead Chi  
may be the  
of the m  
long Distur  
prevails  
ing receive  
moist Nat  
will breed  
This Di  
the Sense;  
Looseness of  
life, Cause  
Ruptures the



## Chap. 78. *Of the falling down of the Womb.* 201

by Medicines prescribed in the Chapters treating of the Diseases of that part ; and the womb must be strengthened, and the peccant Humors dissolved by Fomentations or Baths, made of the Decoction of the Roots of Briony, wild Cucumber, and horse Radish : the Leaves of Dwarf-Elder, Mercury, common Elder, Origanum, Calamint, Rue, Sage, Worm-wood, Marjerom, Mugwort, Penny-royal, Thyme ; the seeds of Annis, Fennel, Broom, Carrots, Cummin, Bay, and Juniper : the Flowers of Camomil, Melilot, and Rosemary. If it be a windy Dropsie, a dry Fomentation will be much better. Afterwards anoint with the Oyl of Nard, Rue, Worm-wood, Dill, and Southern-wood. Give frequent Clusters, and Injections to evacuate the humors contained in the womb : then make Pessaries of Colocynthida, Elaterium, Mechoacan, and such like, with Honey, and apply it. Nitrous and Sulphurous Baths do profit much, and if the Disease proceed from humors falling to the part, let Issues be made in the Thighs.

### CHAP. LXXVIII.

#### *Of the Falling down of the Womb.*

Sometimes the Womb loseth its natural Scituation, and falleth down to the water-gate, sometimes out to the very Thigh. All things that may cause a Rupture or Relaxation of the Ligaments of the womb, may be a cause of this grief, as a Blow, Fall, dancing, leaping, lifting, carrying, violent sneezing, or coughing, (especially in Child-bed, or being big with Child) Tenasmus, hard Travel, a violent drawing the Child out of the womb, or of the after-birth, or the expulsive Faculty of the womb, being violently provoked to expel a dead Child, after-birth, or the Mole, and many such like Accidents may be the cause of the breaking of the Ligaments, and falling out of the womb. A Relaxation of the Ligaments may be caused by a long Defluxion, by Crudities, the Whites : external Causes may be prevalent, as bathing in cold water ; the Southern or moist Air being received into the womb, soon after a lying in, Meats of a cold and moist Nature : to conclude, all meats, drinks, and actions, which will breed Flegm, or cause its Deflux into the womb.

This Disease needs no Signs to discover it by, it being apparent to the Sense : The Causes may be thus distinguished. If it come by Looseness of the Ligaments, it cometh by little and little, the pain is less, Causes, moistening the womb have preceded. If it come by Rupture, there is a violent pain ; sometimes blood starteth out, and such

such causes, which have been able to break the Ligaments, have preceded.

If the womb fall down by a Rupture of the ligaments, it is incurable. That which comes by a Relaxation of the ligaments is not very dangerous, but troublesome to the Patient, it hinders her walking, conception, and monthly Purgation. In young Women it is easier restored to its place, than in elderly. The womb coming not far out, and if taken in time, the Cure is far more easie than if the contrary happen. Sometimes grievous and violent pains do attend it, and threaten Death. Sometimes the Air corrupteth the womb, and it becomes gangrenated, so that there is a Necessity that it be cut off.

You must begin the Cure with such Medicines that may discharge the Guts and Bladder of their Excrements, that they may not hinder the Reduction of the womb. Then let her lye upon her Back with her Thighs wide asunder, and draw up her Knees, and let her with her own hands, or by the help of a Midwife thrust the womb inwards, or (that you may drive it in farther and hurt less) make a Pessary of linnen cloaths, and with it thrust up the womb; first anoint it with the Oyl of Lillies, and if it be swelled, use a Fomentation of *Althea*, common Mallows, Fenugreek, and the like. Before you repose the womb to its place, anoint it with the Musilage of Comphry Roots, or Infusion of Gum Tragacanth, or any thing that is of a glewing Nature. When it is up, let the woman lye with one Thigh over the other, and put up toward the Neck of the womb, a little wooll wetted in red Wine or Rose-water, wherein *Acatia* and *Hypocistis* hath been dissolved. *Rodericus à Castro* adviseth the Physician to come with a red hot Iron, and to make as if he would thrust it into the womb. *Avenzoar*, and *Zacutus Lusitanus*, after the use of all means and devices, by this Stratagem reduced the womb: that is, having laid her down as before said, and one held down her Thighs, and another her Breast, then put her into a great fright, by setting Mice or Frogs to ran up her Legs and Thighs; by this fright the womb hath been reduced into its proper place, for by this means, Nature contracteth her self for fear, and draweth the womb with her: Then lay a plaister against Ruptures, on the Region of the womb and Groins: and have a cure that you keep the Body that it be not co-strictive nor too soluble. To conclude, all the Medicines external and internal prescribed against the immoderate flowing of the Menstrues are here good: but beware you use them not when the Courses should flow; and, lest by the frequent use of such medicines, they should be hinderd, your Patient being young, and having her Courses monthly, be sparing in the use of them; but rather let her wear a Truss.

## C H A P. LXXIX.

## Of Barrenness.

**B**arrenness or Sterility is an impotency of Conception; the principal causes thereof are four; First, when the Woman doth not conveniently receive the Man's Sperm into her womb; and this happeneth by divers causes, viz. If the woman be too young, and the Neck of the womb too strait for the man's Yard; the same happens to elderly Virgins, because not exercised in actions tending to Generation, their genital parts become flabby, withered, and so streight that they cannot easily admit of the man's Yard; some are lame and crooked that they cannot lye in a fit posture; some have a cold Distemper in the Womb, that they are dull and have no delight in the act: or Others are very fat, which causeth a Streightness in the passage; or their Bellies being big hinder their due conjunction with the man. Want of love between a man and his wife is a great cause. Diseases in the womb or the adjacent parts hinder the Reception of the Seed.

The second Cause of Barrenness is when the woman doth not retain the Seed of the man in her womb, for sometimes the womb is moist and slippery, and full of Excrementitious Humours, by which means the Sperm doth easily slide back again; and the Orifice of the womb is so loose and flabby, that it cannot contract it self to hold the Seed: or it may be so slack, that it cannot contract to do its Office, and the slackness may be occasioned by a breaking of the Fibres of the womb one from another in hard Labour, or Abortion: To say all, the Whites or any moist Distemper of the womb may be the cause of Barrenness.

Thirdly, want of sufficient Nourishment of the womb to cherish the Seed may be the cause of Barrenness; and this comes to pass by any Distemper of the womb that doth corrupt the Seed: a cold Distemper extinguisheth; a hot Distemper dissipateth the Spirits in the Seed: a moist Distemper hindreth the Seeds coming to its due Thickness; and a dry Distemper consumes and drinks up the moisture of the Seed. Some say, Witchcraft and Charms may be the cause: certain Meats and Poysons, many things are antipathetical to Fecundity, as Vinegar, Mints, Water-Cresses, Beans, and such like: Jet, Glow-worms, Saphires, Smaragds, the Matrix of a Goat or Mule, malignant Diseases may corrupt Seed and hinder Conception, as stinking Ulcers, the French-Pox, Leprous Infections, and the like.

The



The fourth thing that hinders Conception is when the woman wants fit materials for the formation of the Embrio, and to augment the same; and this chiefly dependeth upon want of seed and menstruous blood; and this defect happeneth to those that are too young or too old, the determined and approved age is from 14 to 50. Likewise the materials may be ill disposed through evil diet, which cannot breed blood or good Seed: Diseases weakening Nature may cause the same. Add to all these Causes a disproportion or unsuitableness between the man's Sperm and the woman's, that is, when the man and the woman are of one Complexion, by which means the seed of either of them partake of the same excess; that is, that they are either too hot or too cold: hence it cometh to pass, that the same Woman who could never have a Child by her Husband, after his Death hath Children by another man, and a man by another woman. Sometimes a man and woman live ten year or more together, and have no Children, and afterwards the woman conceiveth and bringeth forth, and this cometh to pass by the change of Temperature caused by years.

I should now lay down the Signes of all these causes, but most of them are evident to the Senses; and the rest, he who cannot discover, hath not a Head besitting a Physician: therefore, to abbreviate the work, I shall leave it to the search of the Ingenious, and trouble the Reader with a few Rules, left by the Ancients, to try whether a woman be naturally barren or no, *Hypocrates* adviseth to wrap the woman close in Blankets, and burn some Perfume under her, and if the Smell proceed through her Body, to her Mouth or Nostrils, then certainly she is fruitful. The same Author adviseth to put a Clove of Garlick peeled into her womb, or Galbanum, and if the smell come to her Head or Mouth, judge that she is fruitful. *Amatus Lusitanus* to try whether a woman be fruitful or no, giveth a Dram of Hares Runnet dissolved in warm water to the woman, being in a Bath of hot water, fasting; and if the woman findeth pains in her belly, he judgeth her fruitful; and if she hath no pain, he judgeth her barren. Some steep Barly in the Urine, and if it shoot within ten dayes, they judge the woman fruitful.

Before you try these uncertain Conclusions upon the Woman, examine the Man, and see if the fault be not in him. It is known thus, If the Man be unable to raise his Yard; if he want Sperm; if he hath a swelling in his Stones; or if he have the Running of the Reins, he is not fit for *Venus's* School. If the man be of an effeminate spirit, if he have no Beard, if he be long casting out his Seed, and taketh little delight in the act, and the woman in the act feeleth his Seed cold, be sure the man is unfruitful; Or Causes, which may make the Seed unfruitful, have preceded,

*Prog.*

*Prog.* The  
greatest hopes  
and never con-  
ceived by  
Woman  
may conceiv-  
Members, in  
In the Cl  
be removed  
time; in  
her genital  
curable by  
the Body  
too corpulent  
If any Distur-  
the Distur-  
Stemper of  
such as is  
caused by  
and a contin-  
let the wo-  
man or Hy-  
nation; li-  
St. John's  
efficacy.  
womb and  
cause, wh-  
You must  
in the harm-  
the womb  
could Exce-  
woman de-  
dram, m-  
alone with-  
Sage when  
band, it is  
ly Putge-  
might be-  
or two of  
made thus  
rion candi-  
essence:  
and prefer

*Prog.* Those that conceive not by reason of tenderness of age have great hopes to live to have better success : but if she live above forty and never conceived, she hath little reason to hope. If Barrenness be caused by Fatness, or any Distemper or Disease whatsoever, if the Woman can procure Leanness, or have her Distemper removed, she may conceive. But if Barrenness be caused by evil shape of the Members, it is likely to continue.

In the Cure, you must endeavour that whatsoever hindreth may be removed. If tenderness of age be the cause, let her wait the time ; in the mean while, let her refuse carnal Embracements, lest her genital Members be spoiled. If it be caused by age, that is incurable by weakness of Nature, you may endeavour to strengthen the Body and revive the Spirits, but it is difficult. If the Body be too corpulent or too manly, you must extenuate, moisten, and cool. If any Distemper of the womb hinder Conception, labour to remove the Distemper. If a hot distemper be the cause, cure it as a hot Distemper of the Liver. If driness be the cause, use a restorative Diet, such as is prescribed in the Chapter *Of the Heelick Fever*. If it be caused by witchcraft, next to fervent and devout prayers to God, and a confident despising and slighting of Charms and witchcrafts, let the woman wear the Pizzle of a Wolf about her, or the Adamant or Hyacinth Stone, which are much commended against Fascination ; likewise Sea-Onions, Sea-Holly, Sagapenum, Rue, and St. John's Wort, ( which some call the *Devil-Driver* ) are of great efficacy. But for the most part a cold and moist Distemper of the womb and of the Body, being accompanied with the Whites, is the cause, whose particular Cure you may find in its proper Chapter. You must purge the cold Flegmatick Humors, you must make Issues in the Arm, Neck, or Thighs, and give such things as strengthen the womb. Some things there are, which have a peculiar vertue to cause Fecundity and remove Barrenness, *viz.* The After Birth of a woman dried and beaten to powder, and given to the quantity of a dram. The Stomach of a Boar-Pig and the Liver, which was farrowed alone without any more in that Litter. Half a Pint of the Juice of Sage taken a quarter of an hour before the woman enjoy her Husband, it is best for her to take it soon after she hath had her monethly Purgation. Rejecting the multiplicity of Medicines which I might here insert, I shall content my self and the Reader with one or two of the best of them, and first, an excellent Eleatuary may be made thus : Take of the Roots of Eringo, and Dogs Stones called Saryrion candied or preserved, of each one ounce : Green-ginger candied, half an ounce : Pin and Filbert kernels, and Pistachios, of each six drams : one preserved Nutmeg : the Seeds of Rocket and Water-Cresses, of each

two drams : Ashes of a Bulls Pizzle, the Reins of the Sea-Scinagos, and Shavings of Ivory, of each one dram : Confection of Alchermes, three drams : the Powders Diambria and Diamyschu. Duce of each one ounce and an half : Ambergrece half a dram : with Syrup of preserved Citrons, make an Elecfuary : and let the woman take the quantity of a Chestnut to Bedward, twice or thrice in a week, and drink a glass of Sack after it. Quercetanus doth much commend this Decoction following : Take of the Stones of a Ram prepared with Wine and dreyed : the Matrix of a Hare, prepared in the same manner : Mace, Cinnamon, Cloves, white Ginger, and Seeds of Ammens, of each two drams : Saffron a dram and an half : Hazl-nut kernels, and Pistachios, of each three drams : boyl them in a quart of Muscadine, till a third part be consumed : then let her take three or four ounces of it, for three dayes together, three hours before Meat, then let her upon the fourth day have Genial Embracements with her Husband. Likewise external medicines, as Pessaires, Injections, Fumigations, such as have power to cleanse, dry and strengthen the Womb, may be applyed : the afore-going Chapters will direct you.

## C H A P. LXXX.

## Of Miscarriage.

**A**Bortion or Miscarriage is the bringing forth of a Child, either dead or alive, having not attained to the just Term of growth, which it ought to have had. The Causes are either external or internal : the external Causes do either kill the Child, deprive it of its natural Nourishment, or loosen the bands, by which the Child is fastened in the womb. Things that kill the Child are, the Stink of a Candle, or such abominable Smells, such things as are antipathetical to the Womb, and provoke the Course, strong Purges, or the Child may be killed by violent Commotions of the Mind, as Anger, Sadness, Terror, &c. and many times things longed for and not obtained, kill the Child. If the Mother undergo Penury or Famine, or lose much blood, the Child wanteth Nourishment. The Bands, by which the Child is fastened to the Womb, may be loosned by violent Exercise, dancing, running, riding, being jumbled in a Cart or Coach, by some fall, lifting, or carrying : any thing which causeth a violent motion of the Belly, as Coughing, Sneezing, Vomiting, Convulsions, &c. or immoderate Copulation. Internal causes of Abortion may be attributed to the Humors, to the Child, to the womb. Humors offend in excess or defect ; in excess, in a plethorick and



and full constitution, when more blood flows to the womb, than is requisite to nourish the Child, and flows to the Veins, so the Courtes flowing provoke the expulsive Faculty, and drive forth the Child. Defect of Humors fit to nourish spring from such causes which destroy the Nourishment, or draw it from the Child, as long fasting, loathing, and vomiting up of all Food, immoderate bleeding at the Nose, Womb, or Hemorrhoids, or a Looseness, or any thing that makes the Body lean or weak.

The Causes attributed to the Child are, if the Child be over great, if there be more than one, for the womb over-laden doth exclude the Child before the fit time : Likewise if the Child be dead, Nature desires to be rid of it. In respect of the womb, if it be any diseased or defective, that it cannot open as the Child groweth bigger : or if it be moist or slack, it cannot contain the Child, but Abortion must necessarily follow.

Abortion when it happens is known : there are signs preceding it, which do foretel Abortion to follow : her Breasts grow little and flabby, she feels a heaviness about the Loins and Hips, she hath no appetite to eat, nor desire to stir, she hath a shivering by Fits, she hath Streightness of the Sides and Belly above the Navel, and a pain in her head : plenty of Milk flowing from the Dugs, shews that the Child is weak, and danger of Abortion. If pains about the Reins, Loins, and Share torment the woman, then know that Abortion is hard at hand : The same judge, if blood or water burst out and flow, and the Situation of the Child is changed from the middle of the Belly to the bottom : If any of these or the like Symptomes befall a woman with child after any external cause of Abortion, as Blow, Fall, &c. let the woman betake her self to her bed, and take such Medicines which prevent Abortion.

Prognosticks of Abortion are thus made : Women are more endangered by Abortion, than by a natural and timely Birth, because in a timely birth the Vessels & Ligaments are loosned and opened of their own accord, but in Miscarriage they are broken asunder : the like you may perceive between the stalk of ripe and unripe fruit. Woman many times become barren by Miscarriage, because the womb is rent, and its natural disposition much altered. Much bleeding seconded with Convulsions, Raving and Fainting is always deadly. If an Inflammation of the Womb follow Abortion, it is deadly. In young Women, who never bore Child before, it is worst, because the passage is narrower, and they more unaccustomed to pains. The bigger the Child is, the more the danger. Women who have moist and slippery wombs, do often miscarry and with little danger.

To prevent Miscarriage, you must before and after she is with Child, endeavour to remove all evil dispositions of the Body or womb, that may cause Miscarriage; if Blood abound upon a Vein, purge the peccant humours, strengthen the womb; but if the woman be with Child, beware how you bleed, except it be in the first moneth, and the body full of blood: and in this case, let purges be gentle, and often reiterated. To conclude, to strengthen the womb, fetch Medicines from the 73 Chapter.

# CH A P. LXXXI.

## Of hard Travel in Child-birth.

**H**ARD Labour is when more vehement Pains and dangerous Symptoms happen to Women in travel, and continue a longer time. There are divers Causes, some whereof may be assigned to the weakness of the womans Body, Leanness or Driness as well as Fatness of the body, her age, or Sickneses, as the Stone or preternatural Tumor in the bladder, or any Disease of the womb. Other Causes may be assigned to the Child, when its body or head is too big, when there are two, or when the Child is dead: or when it endeavours to come forth with his Feet, Hands, Back, Belly, or Breech forwards, &c. A cold and dry Air, and Northern-wind strengtheneth the Body, and driveth the Spirits inward, and is obnoxious to the Child's first entrance into the world. If the Air be more hot than ordinary, it is as bad as the former, for it dissipates the Spirits, exhausts the strength, and introduceth feavourish Distempers into the Bodies of Mother and Child. Meats of a hard digesture or astringing quality taken a little before the time of Delivery; Sleepiness and Sottishness; the Retention of Excrements, all vehement Passions of the Mind, want of an Expert Midwife, and women to assist the labouring woman, may be causes of hard Labour.

Hard Labour is easily known to the Woman her self, to the Midwife, and the Assistants. The time of a natural Birth ought to be accomplished in the space of twenty four hours; if the Woman continue a longer time, it is hard Labour. If her pains be weak and long before they return, and more about her Back than Privities, the causes may easily be known; many you may gather from the Relation of the woman in Travel, her Leanness, Weakness, Fatness, and Age, is perceived. Diseases of the womb and Bladder may be known by their proper Signs. The bigness and disorderly Posture of the Child is soon seen by an Expert Midwife. If the Child be dead, you may

know

Chap. 81. *Of hard Travel in Child-birth.* 209

know it by these Signs, The Breasts of the woman become flat and flabby, her Eyes hollow and troubled, her Face and Lips are of a pale and leaden colour, her Belly is cold, and there is a Sense of Weight : there is no motion felt, though you apply something wetted in the Decoction of Tansie warm to her Navel. When the Woman turns, the Child sways that way like Lead. If the After-birth come away before the Child, it is a Sign of the death of the Child. And if the Child cometh not away, it soon putrieth and stinketh ; and stinking moisture floweth from the womb, and her breath stinketh.

Hard Labour is dangerous ; for sometimes the Mother, sometimes the Child, and sometimes both do lose their lives. Sleepy Diseases and Convulsions, if they befall a Woman in Travel, death is at hand. If the woman be in Travel above three dayes, It is likely the Child will die. If the woman fall a sneezing in her Travel it is good, saith *Hippocrates*. If the Child be dead, the danger is exceeding great, especially, if it be not brought soon away, for it will cause Feavers, Faintings, Convulsions, dead Sleeps, and Death it self.

In difficult Labour, first all causes which hinder the Birth must be removed, if it be possible ; then such things as further the birth must be administred. An ounce of Oyl of sweet Almonds, and a dram of *Confectio Alhermes* given in Broth is good. Burn white Wine with a little Saffron and Cinnamon, afterwards dissolve a little Alhermes, this I have found very powerful to hasten the Birth. If you find this Medicine too gentle, make a Julep of more efficacy, thus Take of the Water of Mugwort and Vervain, of each two ounces : The Syrup of Maiden-hair, one ounce : *Confectio Alhermes*, half a dram : Dittany of Crete, and both Birth-worts, of each one scruple : Oyl of Cinnamon, five Drops, mix them, and make a Potion. Oyl of Amber fifteen drops, or the Extract of Saffron five grains may be either of them mixed instead of the Oyl of Cinnamon. Provoke sneezing, and open the lower Veins if need be. Then let the Midwife anoint the mouth of the womb with the Oyl of Lillies and sweet Almonds, and the like ; and foment the Belly with a mollifying Decoction : and in a dangerous case give a sharp Clyster.

Some things have a peculiar property to help the Birth, as the Stone *Ærites*, Loadstone, and Storax held near the Privities; the Eyes of a Hare taken out in the moneth of March and dried, use it as the Stones, and when the woman is delivered, take them away, lest it draw out the womb. Some commend the Gall of an Hen, applied to the Navel.

If the Child be dead, give the same things before-mentioned ; but it is convenient to make them stronger by adding Savin water and the Leaves of Savin dried, the Troches of Myrrh and Castor. Then



foment the Privities and Share with a mollifying Decoction, to which add Briony Roots, and the Roots of wild Cucumer, round Birth-wort, and the like. And put up a Pessary made in this manner: Take of the Roots of round Birth-wort, Orris, black Hellebore, Coloquintida and Myrrh. of each one dram : Galbanum, Opopanax, of each half a dram, with Ox-Gall, make a Pessary and apply it. If all this will not do, you must implore the help of the Chyrurgion.

If the After-birth be retained, you must endeavour to expel it by such medicines as expel the dead Child : to which add these which are said to have a specifick property, the Stones of a gelded Horse, dried and powdered, and given as much as will lie on a three pence, two or three times as need requireth, is commended by Gesnerus and Augerius. Some commend the juyce of an Onyon given in Wine, or an Onyon held in the Womans mouth between her Teeth, and the juyce squeezed out and swallowed, and a Draught of White-wine drunk after it : Or 20 or 30 drops of the Oyl of Juniper drunk in Wine ; or the juyce of Lovage taken in Rhenish Wine.

If her Purgations flow immoderately, that you fear the death of the woman ; or in case her Purgations be supprest, which may cause dangerous Symptoms, have recourse to the Chapters treating of those Maladies.

Many women are much troubled with after-pains, which do much affl & them, and these pains are caused either by the Thickness, or Sharpness of the Blood, or by Wind. If the Blood be thick, you may know it by its clotting : if thin, by its Tenuity or yellow colour : If the blood be thick, give this Julep : *Mugwort-water two ounces ; Syrup of Violets, and oyl of sweet Almonds, of each half an ounce.* If the Blood be sharp, add to the former the Musilage of Quince-Seeds drawn with Violet-Water, half an ounce. If Wind be the cause of these Pains, which you may know by its motion from one part of the Belly to the other, then give inwardly and apply outwardly carminative Medicines ; Take of the Seeds of Carrots, one dram ; of Annis, Nutmeg, and Cinnamon, of each a scruple, make them into fine Powder, and give it half at one time in wine. Foment her Belly with the Decoction of Bawm, Bay-Leaves, Camomel, Calamint, Mugwort ; and the Seeds of Carrots, Caraway and Cummin, and lay on a Pultis made of boyled Onions, Camomel Flowers, the Seeds of Flax and Cummin beaten, and Barley-meal.

## CHAP. LXXXII.

## Of the Gout and Sciatica.

**A** *Pōpitis*, *Arthritis* in Greek; in Latine *Articularis Morbus*, is the Joynt-Sicknels, caused by an Influx of Humours into them, which causeth pain in the Membranes, Tendons and Nerves; Authors do commonly make four sorts of Gouts, according to the diversity of the Joynts affected, as *Χειρᾶρρα*, *Chiragra* the Hand-Gout, of *Χεῖρ*, a Hand; *Γόναρρα*, *Gonagra* when it is in the Knees, of *Γόνυ* the Knee; *Πόδαρρα*, *Podagra*, when it is in the Foot, because the Greeks call the Foot *Πῆς*; *Ἰσχίᾶρ*, *Ishias*, the Hip-Gout or Sciatica, of the word *ἰσχίον* the Hip. The immediate cause of the Gout is a wheyish Humor flowing to the Joynts; and by its Quantity stretcheth the sensible parts, or by its Sharpness twiceth them, and this Humor floweth not only from the Brain and Head; but from all parts of the Body. The cause may be attributed to all meats, which encrease raw and wheyish Humors; Meats of a gross Substance hard to be digested, and such as afford plenty of Excrements; Gluttony, Drunkenness, immoderate Venery, (therefore the Gout is called the daughter of *Bacchus* and *Venus*), long sleep and unseasonable Watchings, Fear, Sadness; continual care, and intermission of such Exercises or Evacuations as men have been accustomed to, and the like.

The beginning of the Gout is known thus; There is more exquisite and quick Sense in the Joynts than formerly: they are easily hurt, as by a new shoe, walking, the least touch against any hard thing. Commonly a Feaver ushers it in: and at its approach there is a kind of unusual heat felt in the Joynts; and a motion, as if some living Creature were therein: after which, followeth a tormenting pain in the Joynts, for the most part beginning in the great Toe and attended with Redness and Swelling.

The signs of the Causes or the Humours which are mixed with the wheyish Humors, are thus considered. If Choler be mixed with the wheyish humor, the Urine is thin, yellowish or red, the pain great and violent, the Feaver comes to the height, the part is swelled, is red or pale, but very hot, the application of cold things giveth ease: If Phlegm be mixed, there is a soft and loose swelling of the part, the pain not so violent; the Urine is thick and troubled, little or no heat; and hot things give ease. If Melancholy be the humor mixed, the Temper of the Body inclineth to Melancholy, there is a weariness felt all over, the part is of an obscure colour like Lead;

the pain deep, and the Urine thick and melancholy.

The Gout is no dangerous Disease, but it continueth long, and is attended with violent pain, for the most part to the end of a man's life, and sometimes it is a means of long life; because Nature doth drive the vitious humors to the Joynts, which if they should fall upon the more noble parts, would be a means of great Diseases, if not death it self. But in weak Bodies that are decayed by Sicknes or Age, that Nature cannot expel these humours to the Joynts, many dangerous Diseases are engendered. He that hath no knots in his Joynts, is inclinable to Labour, and is for the most part soluble, by a skilful Physician may be cured. An hereditary Gout is seldom or never cured. If the Veins of a Gouty person do swell with black blood, there is hopes that the Gout leaves him. If the Gout doth not return at its season it is dangerous, unless the matter be taken away by medicines, for it is an argument that Nature is weak, and cannot expel it.

The Cure of the Gout is to be performed by stopping the Flux of the humors into the Joynts, by removing the humors in the Joynts, & to abate the sharpness of the pain. If the Patient be full of blood and strong, let him bleed in a great quantity, or let him bleed often, till the plenitude of blood be sufficiently abated. Then let him be purged with strong Medicaments, which may evacuate the stirred Humour, and turn the cause from the Joynts. Whilst you are purging, let Oynments or Plaisters be applied to the Joynt above the part affected of an astringing and drying property, by which the humors may be intercepted, that they may not so much nor so forcibly fall into the Joynt. Let your Oynments be made of the Roots of Snake-weed and Tormentil, Boie-armenick, Sanguis Draconis, Pomegranate Rinds, Balaustins, red Roses, the Whites of Eggs, Vinegar, Oyl of Roses, of unripe Olives, and the like. If the Patient be strong and easie to vomit, give a gentle Vomit to carry away the humours in and about the Stomach; soon after vomiting purge strongly. Sweating medicines are very good to discuss the wheyish Matter; if a Fever be present, give Harts-horn with *Carduus*-water. In a Gout without a Fever, the Decoction of *Saxafras*, *Sassa*, and *China*, may be given; it is not amiss if the heat thereof be allayed, by boyling with it *Endive*, *Succory*, *Sorrel*, *Burrage*, *Bugloss*, and the like. The Waters of Bath do provoke Sweat, and do readily and profitably discuss the Matter contained in the Joynts.

*Forellus* commendeth the Decoction of the Root of the great Burdock, for this purpose. Likewise a Decoction of Elder, Bay-leaves, Sage, Rosemary, and such like, receiving the Vapour in a sweating Tub: Afterwards come to local medicines.

*Amatus*



*Amarius Lusitanus* doth commend the milk of a Goat milked warm upon the part affected; or you may make a Cataplasme with it and white bread, and the Musilage of the Roots of Marsh-Mallows, the Leaves of Henbane, Violets, and the like; and if the pulp of Cassia, and Venice-Treacle be added, it will be much more effectual. The distilled Water of Frogs Spawn is very good against the pains of the hot Gout, if the part be bathed therewith: with it you may mingle the Oyl of Calves-feet, or with the Flowers of Camomel, Melilot, Roses, Mullein, Mallows beaten, you may bring it into the form of a Pultis. Green Tobacco-leaves are much commended, and so is a living Whelp laid to the gouty part. When the pain rageth violently, use Narcoticks: as Plantane, Lettuce, Henbane, Houseleek, Nightshade, Mandrakes, Purslane, and Poppy-heads; but be sure you let them not lie on too long, for they are inimical to the natural heat, and to the Nerves.

Some do commend this Fomentation; Take Spirit of wine well tintured with Saffron, four ounces: Camphire one scruple: boyl them a little, and dissolve one dram of Opium, and bathe the pained part. The Oyl of Wax is good to ease the Gout, and the Oyl of mans Bones is preferred before all other, and it is thus made: Take the Bones of a man fresh and unburied, break them small, and let them lie in Oyl till they have drunk up as much as they can, then distil them in a Retort. The Root of Briony and Cuckow-pintle bruised and mingled with Cow-dung, is an excellent Cataplasme.

I might here fill a Volume with Receipts against the Gout; but passing by all, I shall only insert one or two out of *Quercetanus* his Dispensatory: Take Brine, Salt, and the Urine of a Boy, of each, equal parts; distil them, and dip linnen cloaths in the water, and apply them to the place affected, changing them often. Take green Elder-Leaves and Flowers, of each one pound: beat them in a Mortar, and macerate them in Aqua-vite, three days, then distil them till all be dry, use it as before. Take of rectified Spirit of wine, two pound; of the best Hony, one pound: distil them in Balneo Mari, from which will come two Liquors, the first waterish; the second strong and sulphurous: keep them by themselves. To the Faeces add of oriental Saffron whole, one ounce and an half; Venice Turpentine two ounces: Castor six drams: Tartar calcined white, half a pound: Salt dissolved, one ounce: Phlegm of Vitriol not separated from the Spirit, four ounces: Lye made of the Ashes of Vine-Branches, two pound: macerate them twenty four hours, then distil them till all be dry, keep this also by it self. To the Dregs remaining pour on the former water, which you kept, macerate and distil as before. Lastly, put all these waters together, and distil them in Balneo Mari, wet linnen Cloths therein, and apply it to the gouty place.

Riverius, lib. 10. Chap. 1. p. 378. prescribeth another, which he accounts inferior to none, which penetrates into the Roots of the Disease, and resolveth and attenuateth the salt, tartarous and stony matter in the Joynts; and he supposeth it to be that which the aforesaid Quercetanus reserves to himself, as his Master-piece to brag of; it is thus made: Take of unslaked Lime, four pound, slake it in River water as much as is convenient, and let it stand in a wine-Cellar the space of three dayes, that the Salt may be extracted the better: afterwards boyl it a little and strain it through Hypocrates Sleeve. In twenty Pints of this Liquor quench first Plates of Steel, then of Copper made red hot, seven or nine times; thirdly, ten ounces of Vitriol calcined till it be white; fourthly, half a pound of Antimony melted in a crucible; fifthly, half a pound of Litharge or Ceruse, heated in a Crucible; sixthly, white Precipitate once washed, one ounce and an half; lastly, Bress burnt and finely pondered, half an ounce: after all this, let the water stand in a Cellar the space of 10 dayes, afterwards boyl it and strain it, and apply it with linnen Rags. To raise Blisters upon the part, hath been found by experience to be very effectual. In the use of all Medicines, take special notice which do harm or hurt, for the Nature and Complexions of men are divers, and the Excrements bred in several men are of divers kinds. Hence it is, that the same Disease doth much differ in several persons; and what cures one; doth prejudice another: Therefore the Physician ought to have several Medicines in readines, and use those that Reason and Experience doth approve of.

To prevent its return. let the Patient bleed twice in a year, viz. at Spring and Fall; and purge four times in a year, and make use of sweating Drinks, and frequent sulphurous and nitrous Baths.

The Sciatica differeth not from the other Gout only in its Situation, which is in the Hip, extending the pain to the top of the Buttock, the Loins, and *Ossacrum*, and reacheth down to the Hip and Leg even to the Foot.

This peculiar Prediction belongeth to this Disease, that if it continue long, it putteth the Hip out of Joynt.

The Cure is performed almost in the same manner with the other Gout. First open the Vein in the Arm on the same Side, afterwards open the lower Veins on the same side, viz. *Vena Poplitea* about the Knee, or the Vein near the outward Ankle called the Sciatica Vein; if you open the Vein on the contrary side, it will not do amiss; bleeding the Hemorrhoid Veins by Leeches doth wonderfully help those that are Hip-gouty, for there is a great consent between those Veins. But be not too forward to let Blood, unless you find blood to abound. Then let the Humours be purged strongly by *Pilule Fœtides*, or *Hermadaestyls*, or the Powder of *Hermadaestyls* compound, but

but beware how you give the latter except to strong Bodies. *Mercurius Dulcis* with Scammony is much commended, and the Chymists do much esteem of Mercurial and Antimonial Purges; and many prefer Vomits before all. Then apply resolving Decoctions made of the Roots of Briony, Dane-wort, the Leaves of Ground-Pine, Mint, Marjerom, Sage, Savin, Rue, Rosemary, Pennyroyal, &c. the Flowers of Camomel, Melilot, and Mallows; the Seeds of Flax, Fennugreek, Bay and Juniper-berries, and such like, and foment the part therewith. Also Juniper-berries fried in a pan, (being first beaten) with Salt and Bran, and moistned with Canary Wine, and put in a Bag, and applied warm, with the aforementioned Ingredients Cataplasms may be made; and with the Oyls following let the part be anointed, viz. Oyl of Camomel, Dill, Nard, Orris, Rue, Scorpions, Tiles, Turpentine of Foxes, and the like; the Oynment of Marshmallows and Spanish Soap dissolved in Spirit of Wine.

This is much commended; Take a good quantity of Snails, bruise them well in a Mortar, then make Paste with them and Rye Flower, adding a little Spirit of Wine, and fasten it to a spit and roast it; a Liquor will drop from it, with which anoint the part, for it is of excellent vertue. Then lay on this Plaister: Take of Ship-Pitch and Rosin, of each two ounces; Gum Ammoniacum dissolved in Vinegar, and Emplastrum Diachylon cum Gummis, of each one ounce; Brimstone and Hermodactyls powdered, of each three drams; Turpentine three drams, and Wax sufficient: make a Plaister.

If the Disease do still continue, proceed to a Vesicatory; add to the former Mass for a Plaister, Cantharides their Wings taken off, Staves-acre, and Mustard-seed, of each one dram. In the whole course of the Cure, let not frequent Clysters be neglected. And if the Disease be old, make an issue in the Leg on the same side, on the outside of the Leg. If you find Symptoms of a Catarrh; which may occasion the Sciatica by a Defluxion of Humors, make an Issue in the hinder part of the Head, and use other means to correct the Distempers of the Brain. See Chap. 9. By this means hath the Sciatica been cured, when all other means failed. Sometimes the Matter causing the Sciatica, doth Imposthume; and after it is opened, there remains a filthy Ulcer, which, for the most part, pincheth the Patient away, and brings him into a Consumption; the Cure whereof belongeth to an expert Chyrurgion.



## C H A P. LXXXIII.

## Of one day Feaver.

**T**HIS Disease is called in Greek *Ἐφημερα*, *Ephemera*, in Latine *Diana Febris*, in English *One day Feaver*, because for the most part it finisheth in one day of its own Nature. It is caused by some internal cause, as some hot fiery Swelling on some part of the Body, or when some hot Excrements shut up in some part, do offend the Heart, by Retention of Excrements and Obstruction of the Vessels, by which the Pores of the Skin are shut, and Transpiration is hindered.

Or secondly, it is caused by external causes, as vehement motions of the Body or Mind, by which the Spirits are inflamed by being heated with the Sun or fire, by Surfetting, Drunkenness, especially with Meats and Drinks of a hot Nature.

By what hath gone before, you may know this Feaver; the Pulse is swift and great, and so he fetcheth his Breath; he is very hot, and his head aketh. He hath no shivering Cold, nor Weariness, unless it came by the heat of the Sun, or by cold.

You must give the Sick such things as are cooling and moistning, as cooling Broths, Barly Cream, Prisan Drink, small Beer and Sugar, Water and Sugar, or mix Syrup of Violets, Lemmons, or Maiden-hair, with his Drink.

If the Disease was caused by the heat of the Sun, give him cooling things, and lay him in a cooling Lodgings, and anoint his Temples with Vinegar of Roses.

If he took his Feaver being in the cold, proyoke Sweat: the like observe if the Pores be obstructed. If it come by over-eating and drinking, let him take a Clister; if evil humors abound in the Blood and Body, open a Vein and purge; if putrified humors lodge in the Stomach, vomit. If it continue above three dayes, it degenerates into a simple Synochus, putrid or Hectick Feaver.

CHAP. LXXXIV.

*Of the Feaver Synochus non-putrida.*

**I**F the Feaver aforesaid light upon a plethorick Body, or one who is gross and thick skinned, it turns to a simple Synochus.

It is known by the corpulent and swelling habit of the Body, high colour of the Face. He breaths with difficulty, he is much pained in his Head, and his Temples beat strongly: the Pulse is orderly, but quick and full. The Urine little differeth from its natural colour, yet a little thick and red, and the heat is not very violent. It lasteth to the fourth, and sometimes to the seventh day; if it ends not then, it degenerates into a putrid Feaver.

The Cure is to be performed by blood-letting, by cooling, and by opening the pores of the Body. Before blood-letting, if the Patient be collicive, and his Body foul, give an emollient and laxative Clyster. Then give cooling Juleps, made of the Decoction of Barley and cool Herbs, or with their distilled Waters, as of Endive, Succory, Sorrel, Bugliss, Borrage, and the like, with Syrups of Succory, Lemmons, Vinegar, Violets, Pomgranates, and the like, adding some drops of Oyl of Vitriol; or boil in the distilled Waters, Triacantaloon, or Diamargariton frigidum, lest the Waters encrease Crudities by their Rawness. Or you may make an Emulsion of Almonds, the great cold Seeds, and white Poppy-seeds with Barley-water, on the distilled Water of the foregoing cooling Herbs. Galen adviseth to give the Patient cold water in great abundance: till his colour fade, but beware this Cure, unless the Patient be strong, corpulent and not full of ill Humors, and that he take it in the height of the Fit. I confess I have seen many to cured, and have experimented it upon my own Body, but durst not advise it. Anoint the Liver and Loyns with *unguentum Rositum*, *Refrigerans Galeni*, or *Ceratum Santalinum*. Or make an Epithem of the distilled Waters of Endive, Succory, Sorrel, &c. the three Sanders, and Powder of Diamargariton frigidum. If the Disease end not quickly after bleeding, purge with gentle things that do not heat, nor much stirr the Humors, as Rhubarb, Cassia, Manna, Tamarinds, Syrup of Roses, Catholicon, and such like.

## CHAP. LXXXV.

## Of continual Putrid Feavers.

I shall describe the Causes and Cure of all putrid Feavers in one Chapter ; for though there are divers sorts, yet the Cure is almost the same in all : therefore, laying aside particular precepts, let the Judgement and Dexterity of every Physitian put a difference between them. I shall likewise wave many Nice Descriptions and Definitions of Feavers : First, as not beneficial to the young Student in Physick : secondly, as not besitting this Volume.

*Synochus putrida* is engendred of the same Causes as the simple Synochus, as the shutting up of the Pores of the skin, and Obstruction of the Vessels by much Blood, or clammy Humors ; by which means the Transpiration of fuliginous Vapours is hindered, and putrification is bred in the Blood.

A continual Tertian doth every third day afflict the Patient more than ordinary, and is caused by cholerick Humors putrifying in the *Vena Cava*. And it is caused by all things that may breed Choller, as violent Exercise, hot and dry Ayr, Fasting, Watching, Meats hot and dry, and a hot and dry Distemper of the Liver.

A Quotidian continuing, is a putrifying of phlegmatick Humors in the Veins ; and afflicts the Patient more than ordinary every day, and doth for the most part assail phlegmatick persons ; and because phlegm is not easily putrified, this kind of Feaver is seldom seen.

The continual Quartane is that which hath its Exacerbations or Fits every fourth day, and it is caused by the putrefaction of Melancholy in the *Vena Cava*, and is caused of any thing that breeds Melancholy and causeth it to putrify.

Of these Feavers, there are accidental differences raised from their distinct Symptoms. First, *Febris ardens*, or a burning Feaver which is accompanied with these Symptomes, viz. an ardent burning Heat, and unquenchable Thirst ; which is also divided into two sorts, a Legitimate, or bastard burning Feaver, a *Synochus ardens*, and *Ardens periodica*, and they differ one from another, only as the Choller causing them is more or less sharp, and nearer or farther from the heart. A second sort is, *Febris Colliquans*, a melting Feaver, which in regard of the greatness of the heat doth melt the fat and flesh, and sometimes the Blood, and dissolveth it by insensible Transpiration, Sweat, Urine or Stool. It is caused by a sharp, thin and cholerick Matter vehemently inflamed, unto which is joyned many times a malignanz

Chap. 8  
and pestilence  
which the Pe  
cholerick an  
unquenchab  
sharp hum  
and Cholera  
doth seek co  
here being  
become col  
hot. Four  
the Patient  
Stomach an  
Patient, by  
ally twent  
hath sort is  
away, and  
phlegm, or  
Stomach.  
sible of heat  
gliffy phleg  
sence of cold  
phlegm along  
gliffy and co  
and that wh  
hence come  
ter.

There are  
vers, which  
Inflammatio  
and of this k  
Pleuritic, Q  
Inflammatio  
be known  
Caution, the  
nor Symptom  
er is comm  
continual Fe  
Pleuritic ap  
and is an Ob  
of Physick.  
There are  
times happ  
pis, of a co



and pestilent quality. The third sort is called *Febris Horrificæ*, in which the Patient is troubled with shaking Fits; and it is caused by cholerick and phlegmatick Humors mingled together, which being unequally moved, stirreth up quaking; either because the thin and sharp humors do twitch the sensible membranous parts, or the inflamed Choller putrifying puts in motion the Crudities; or else Nature doth seek to shake off the crude undigested humors, by this means the heat being driven back to the Center, the extreame parts of the body become cold; and afterwards the heat coming forth again, they grow hot. Fourthly, there is another kind called *Assædes Febris*, in which the Patient is very unquiet, troubled, and restless, and is sick in his Stomach and vomiteth. The fifth sort is called *Alodes*, in which the Patient, by reason of putrification and malignity of humors, continually sweateth, by which the substance of the Body is wasted. The sixth sort is *Febris Syncopealis*, because the Patient often swoons and faints away, and is caused by thin, sharp and venomous Choller, or by phlegm, or abundance of Crudities, together with a weaknes of the Stomach. The last sort is *Epiæta Febris*, in which the Patient is sensible of heat and cold at one and the same time; and this is caused by glassy phlegm mingled with bitter Choller, the phlegm causeth a sense of cold, and the Choller of heat: or else it is caused by glassy phlegm alone, partly putrified, and partly void of putrefaction. For glassy and tough phlegm doth not quickly putrify, but by degrees, and that which is not putrified following that which is putrified, hence comes a sense of cold from the first, and heat from the latter.

There are yet other sorts of accidental differences of continual Feavers, which are called Symptomatick Feavers, which arise from the Inflammation and putrefaction of the humors in some of the Bowels, and of this kind are those Feavers which accompany the Frenzy, the Pleurisie, Quinzy, the Inflammation of the Lungs or Liver, and other Inflammations, Ulcers, or Imposthumes of the internal parts, and may be known by the defects of the parts which cause them. Yet take this Caution, that all these Feavers which accompany these Diseases are not Symptomatick, but sometimes essential, and preceed the Disease, as is commonly seen, that one may be sick three or four dayes of a continual Feaver, before any pain in the side, or Symptome of the Pleurisie appear, the same you may find preceeding the other Diseases, and is an Observation worth Note, and of great Moment in the practice of Physick.

There are other peculiar and extraordinary Causes which many times happen, of which *Zecharius* propoundeth an extraordinary Example, of a certain Infant, scarce two years old, who had a continual Feaver

Feaver, attended with grievous Symptoms, viz. Unquietness, Convulsions and Vomiting; the external parts were cold, and the internal parts burned with heat; for which cause they judged that some Malignity was joyned to the Feaver, which is seldome accompanied with such Symptoms: at length the cause was found to arise from Blood putrifying in the stomach, for the Infant being Tongue-tied, & a little before cut by a Chyrurgion, the Veins being cut, shed blood, which, for want of care, fell into the Stomach: after the taking of Oyl of sweet Almonds, it vomited clotted blood, then by the help of a Clyster, it voided more downwards, and the Feaver and its Symptoms ceased.

These Feavers are known to be continual by their Continuity, and the putrefaction is known by a more sharp and biting heat than ordinary; the pulse is great, quick and unequal, the *Systole* is quicker than the *Diastole*, because Nature doth more strive to expel the sooty Vapours, than to draw in cold Air. The Fit beginneth with a cold shaking, or some of these Symptoms, viz. Weariness, Watching, troubled Sleeps, difficult Breathing, pain of the Head and Stomach, plenty of Excrements, Yawning and Retching: when it comes to the height, these symptoms are heightened, and seconded with Giddiness, Raving, Hiccoughs, Heat-burning, Thirst, and Blackness, and Roughness of the Tongue: particular signs demonstrate peculiar differences. The *Synochus putrida* hath the same signs, which are proper to *Synochus simplex*, but more vehement. Signs of a Feaver from Cholera, are burning pain, the pulse swift and quick, and fiery and crude Urine, without Sediment at the beginning, cholerick Vomits and Stools, Thirst and Bitterness of the Mouth, Driness and Blackness of the Tongue, want of sleep, raving, and the like. A *Synochus putrida* differs from a *Synochus biliosa* in this, that the First hath Fits every third day, the other keeps the same Tenor.

A continual Quotidian is known by these signs, the heat at first is more mild, afterwards more sharp: the Pulse is not so quick nor great as in the former, the Urine is at first white and troubled, afterwards red and thick; little Thirst, no sweat unless salt phlegm abound, the Face is swelled, bloated, and of a red colour, and all signs of phlegm appear.

A continual Quartane is known by this, that the symptoms are not so violent as in the cholerick Feaver, and sharper than in the phlegmatick or quotidian. An appearance of cold, dry, melancholy symptoms, and the Fits invade the Patient more than ordinary every fourth day.

The burning Feaver is known by the signs of a Feaver proceeding from Cholera.

## Chap. 85. Of continual Putrid Feaver. 22 I

A melting Feaver is known by fat and oily Urine cholerick, fat, stammy, and stinking Stools, the Nose sharp, and a sudden Consumption of the whole Body.

I need not tell you how shivering, or tumbling and tossing Feavers are known.

*Eloides* is known by inordinate Sweats, abundance of Urine, and thick by reason of putrefaction; the stools shew an apparent wasting and the loss of strength doth manifest the same.

*Syncopalis Fibris* is known by the swooning Fits: *Epiala*, by heat and cold felt together; and Symptomatick Feavers, from the Diseases from which they proceed.

*Signa Prognostica*: *Synochus putrida* is not without danger. If signs of Concoction appear about the fourth day, the Disease will terminate about the seventh day. If Concoction appear not, and the Patient's Face is swelled, it will continue long. The redder the Urine is, the better, if Concoction appear; but with signs of Crudity it threatens death: white Urine is worst, and threatens death. Cholerick Feavers are acute and dangerous, and so much the more as the symptoms are violent and increased above the natural Temper of the Patient. A continual Quotidian continueth long for the most part, because of the thickness of the humors, the more Evacuations the better; beware lest it degenerate into a Cachexy or Dropsy. A continual Quartane is rare: sometimes the Quartane Ague degenerates thereunto, and is deadly for the most part. The melting, sweating, shaking, tumbling, swooning Feavers, are dangerous. Symptomatick Feavers are to be judged from the excellency of the part affected, the Nature of the Distemper, and the Validity of the Patient's strength.

Medicines in a cholerick Feaver ought to be cooling and moistning, in plegmatick and melancholy more warm and attenuate. Let the Air be cold and moist, let cool Water be sprinkled upon the ground, with Herbs and Flowers, let the covering of his Bed be light and thin. Let his Diet (if he eat any thing) be very sharp, thin and slender. Let his Drink be Barley water, and his Meat Barley Broths, Panadoes, and such like. If the Feaver be of long continuance, let the sick make use of a fuller Diet, viz. of the Broth or Flesh of Chickens, Hens, Capons, Partridges, Veal, Mutton, or Jellyes made with them. In his Drink or Barley water let cool herbs be boiled, and give it a grateful relish with Spirit of Vitriol. If the Feaver arise from hot and thick Choller, or if there be a Consumption of the Lungs, Inflammation of the stomach, bloody Flux, Ulcers of Kidneys and Bladder, or pissing of Blood; sharp things are not good, but rather such things as gently thicken, as Barley water with Syrup of Violets, or of dried Roses. Sleep is very good, and watching hurtful, yet overmuch



overmuch sleep doth overwhelm the natural Heat, and hinder Evacuation: which ought to be made, and nothing to be retained, which ought naturally to be expelled. First, Blood-letting doth diminish plenitude of the Body and Veins, pulls back the Humors which cause Obstruction, cools the Body, and makes it perspicable, keeps back Puffaction, and furthers Concoction. Therefore after the Patient hath had a Stool by a Clyster or otherwise, open a Vein, and bleed the Patient according to his strength and present state. But this observe, that you bleed not in the extremity of the Fit: when weakness or age will not permit a Vein to be opened, Cupping-Glasses must be applyed: Frictions must not be used, but in swooning Feavers. After you have let Blood once, twice or thrice, if you see occasion, come to purge the morbidick Matter: the Medicines for this intent must be Cassia, Manna, Tamarinds, Catholicon, Electuarium lenitivum, Diaprunum simplex, Syrup of Roses, and of Succory with Rhubarb. Some object against Rhubarb for its heat, Manna and Syrup of Roses, because it is sweet, and soon turned into Cholera; but being mingled with cool things, or given in cool Waters, they can do no hurt. If the Stomach is much afflicted, and the Patient is troubled with Vomiting, you must understand that Nature endeavours to cast out her enemy that way, and she ought to be assisted by a Vomit. The gentler sort, and such as are to be choiced for weak people, is the Oyl of Almonds or common Oyl given in Barley-water; you must give a pint at the least, or else it will hardly work the effect: Syrup of Vinegar or Oxymel given in the Decoction of Radishes, every day or every other day, give an emollient and refrigerating Clyster, such as Barley, Mallows, Violet-leaves and Mercury, Flowers of Camomil and Melilot, seeds of Dill and Fennel, &c. cooling Herbs are, Lettuce, Endive, Succory, Houfleeke a blade or two, Water-lillies; dissolve therein Cassia, Catholicon, Diaprunum simplex, the Honey of Violets and Mercury, Oyl of Water-lillies, Violets, &c.

If the Disease spring from Phlegm, leave out the cooling Herbs and dissolve in Hiera Picta, Diaphænicon, Honey of Roses and Mercury, Oyl of Camomil, Dill, or common Oyl. No absolute and perfect Purgation ought to be administered, till the morbidick cause be ripened and digested, which must be done by Juleps, thus: Take of the distilled waters of Endive, Succory and Sorrel, of each two ounces; Syrup of Lemmons and Violets, of each one ounce and an half; a little Oyl of Vitriol to sharpen it; make a Julep, and let the Sick take a spoonful or two often. Or you may make a Decoction of the Roots of Sorrel, Succory, Maiden-hair, Endive, Dandelion, Tamarinds, and such like, and make a Julep with the aforesaid Syrups, or Syrup of Vine-

gat

gat and Per-  
mise Juleps  
Lettuce, Pur-  
lets and Me-  
mix them  
tick caules  
a Decoction  
and the five  
Syrups of V  
If it proce  
rage and B  
of Ash, Ca  
mitery, Bu  
(according  
fical Breas  
said Ingre  
to cool and  
used for som  
Scammoni  
lectuarium  
Doses you d  
ture, make  
red and Wo  
Bugles, Vi  
are good, of  
dum, Diarr  
de Hyacin  
other Comp

A N He  
as the  
sea ce-  
or occupa  
heart, and  
Womb, or  
ternal or  
the other Fe  
Feavers, wi

gar and Pomgranates. If the Choller by its ſharpeſs cauſe a Flux, make Juleps which have a thickning quality: Take of the waters of Lettuce, Purſlane and Plantane, of each three ounces: the Symps of Violets and water-Lillies, of each one ounce: of red Poppies half an ounce, mix them, and make a Julep. If the Fever comes from a phlegmatick cauſe, you muſt give things more cutting and attenuating; as a Decoction of Agrimony, Maiden-hair, Betony, Carduus Benediſtus, and the five opening Roots, Liquoriſh, and Raiſins, ſuch like; and the Symps of Vinegar, Maiden-hair, and Bizantiuſ, and Spirit of Vitriol. If it proceed from Melancholy, make a Decoction of Ceterach, Burrage and Bugloſs, Maiden-hair, Fumitory, Dodder, ſcordium, the bark of Aſh, Capars, Tamarisk, and with any of their Symps, viz. Fumitory, Bugloſs, &c. make a Julep. Or with ſuch like Ingredients, (according to the Nature of the peccant Humor) you may make phyſical Broths, or Emulſions, and Almond Milks. Likewise of the aforeſaid Ingredients you may make Epithems, Oynments, and ſuch like, to cool and well temper the Liver. Altering and preparing Humors uſed for ſome dayes together, you may make bold to purge with Scammoniate Medicines, as Diaphænicon, Diaprunum ſolutivum, Electuarium de ſucco Roſarum, and Diacarthamum, and ſuch like, whoſe Doſes you ſhall find in the laſt Book. To ſtrengthen dejected Nature, make uſe of the Conſerve of Bugloſs Roots, the leaves of Sorrel and Wood-ſorrel, the ſtalks of Lettuce, the Flowers of Burrage, Bugloſs, Violets, Succory, Roſes, Pulp of Citrons. Theſe powders are good, of Coral, Pearls, Ivory, Harts-horn, Diamargariton frigidum, Diatriſantalon, Diarrhodon Abbatis, Conſectio Alchermes & de Hyacintho; with theſe may the Ingenious make Electuaries, or other Compoſitions according to Art.

## C H A P. LXXXVI.

## Of the Heſtick Fever.

**A**N Heſtick Fever occupies the ſolid parts of the Body, as well as the Spirits; it is an unnatural heat, of which the Patient is ſcarce ſenſible. This Fever is either primary, and begins of it ſelf, or ſecondary and followeth ſome other Fever. Some begin at the heart, and ſome at other parts; as, the Lungs, Liver, Spleen, Kidneys Womb, or other parts inflamed. The Cauſes of this Fever are external or internal; External Cauſes are all that may occaſion any of the other Fevers. The Internal Cauſes are burning and peſtilential Fevers, which do ſpeedily conſume the moiſture of the heart, or ſome

ſome lingering Feaver. An Inflammation, Ulcer, Putrifaction of any, of the inward parts, may cauſe an Heſtick Feaver.

An Heſtick Feaver is known eaſily, becauſe it is continual, without increaſing or decreaſing, ſaving a little after Meat; the Pulſe is little frequent and quick, the Arteries are hotter than the other parts; the Urine appeareth as of a healthy man, but after long continuance there is an Oyl ſwims on the top, and a Sediment like to Meal, which ſignifieth the waſting of the body.

An Heſtick Feaver may be cured, unleſs it be neglected till it come to the height, that is, when the Eyes are hollow, dry with dry Excrements, the Bones ſtick out, and the colour of the Face is gon, the Skin is dry, and the Midriff ſo contracted, as if the Patient had no Guts, then it is incurable.

If the Heſtick Feaver depend upon the Diſeaſe of any other part, the Cure muſt be directed to that Diſeaſe; and if it be joyned with any other Diſeaſe, reſpect muſt be had to that Diſeaſe. The Cure of the Heſtick conſiſteth more in due obſervance of Diet, than in Medicines. His Diet muſt be cool and moiſten, and ſoon nourish; as Chicken Broths, or Broths made of Hens, Capons, Veal, Kid, Mutton, in which boyl French-barley, Lettuce, Endive, Succory, Sorrel, Burrage, Purſlane, and ſuch like. The fleſh of young Hares, Pheasants, and young Partridges are good; Panadoes, Water-gruel, Barley-cream, Rice-pottage with Almonds, or the cold Seeds. Boyled meat is better than roaſted, and if the Patient eateth roaſted meat, let Oranges and Lemmons be his Sauce. For his Diet likewiſe may be prepared, Jellyes made of Capons, Knuckles of Veal and Mutton, Calves-feet, Sheeps-feet, and ſuch like, ſedding Herbs, or other Ingredients that are cooling, moiſtning and cordial. New laid Eggs boyled rear, are good; and of Fruir, Apples are much commended, eſpecially Pippins, becauſe they breed cold blood. For his drink, let him uſe Barley-water, with cooling Symps. Galen approveth of cold water, with which he ſaith, he hath ſaved many from the *Marasmos*, which is the Conſumption of the radical moiſture of the body, which commonly followeth this diſeaſe. Great care is to be uſed in the giving of cold water to decayed people, leſt the heat of the Patient ſhould be wholly extinguished. Motion and much ſtirring and labour is not good, yet a little Exerciſe before Meat may be allowed of: but above all Exerciſes, let him beware of the Under-ſheet. Let his ſleep be moderated; if he be coſtive, provoke a ſtool by a Suppoſitory, or gentle Clyſters. Purges are not to be allowed of, becauſe the Body hath more need of repairing than weakning: yet if the body be full of Excrements, you may venture to give gentle Purgers, as Caſſia, Manna, &c. Cooling and altering Juleps, ſuch as are preſcribed in the



Chapter before going, the Patient make use of ; but let him beware of the too frequent use of them, lest they diminish his heat too much. Such Epithems, Unguents, or Oyls mentioned in the foregoing Chapter, are good to temper the heat of the Liver. Lastly, such Medicines mentioned in the former Chapter, as strengthen Nature, and revive the Spirits may be used, and there is need enough thereof. The worst Symptome that can attend this Disease, is a Looseness ; if it so happen, give Goats or Cows Milk wherein steel hath been quenched or Rice boiled in it, or Syrup of Quinces given with the Decoction of French Barley parched, or such like.

## CHAP. LXXXVII.

## Of the Tertian Ague.

**T**HIS Disease is divided into an Exquisite and bastard Tertian ; the exquisite is terminated in 12 hours, but a bastard lasteth longer ; if it exceed twenty four hours, it is called *Tertiana extensa*, a Tertian extended.

The Tertian Ague is Simple, double or triple ; the simple is that which cometh every other day ; the double Tertian cometh every day, and shall be distinguished from the quotidian in its proper place ; and sometimes the Patient hath two Fits in one day. The triple Tertian is when the Patient hath three Fits in two dayes.

Choller, and such things as engender it, are the cause of this Disease, viz. a hot and dry Distemper of the Spleen, youthful Age, hot Air, Watchings, Cares, Anger, Fastings, use of hot Meats, and overmuch Exercise. Those that have hot Livers, that eat and drink liberally, and such things as breed Crudities, Phlegm, and melancholly Humors, are subject to bastard Tertians, by reason of the mixture of Choller with the Crudities.

The exquisite Tertian doth alwayes begin with shaking, the Quotidian begins with a light shivering or coldness. After the cold Fit followeth great heat, sharp biting and intolerable Thirst, and sometimes all the Symptomes of a putrid Tertian Feaver. In the Bastard Tertian all the foregoing signs appear, but more remiss, and more vehement than a quotidian ; according as more or less Phlegm is mingled with the Choller, this Disease cometh nearer to a Quotidian, or exquisite Tertian.

A Legitimate Tertian seldom lasteth above seven dayes, and is not dangerous, unless some malignity be joyned with it ; and the Patient be of a healthy Constitution, & temperate in eating and drinking ;

judg the contrary, if the Patient is otherwise qualified. If the Patient's Lips break out with Scabs, or if he fall into a Loosness, these are good signes; for Nature is turning out the enemy.

To work the Cure, a cooling Diet must be appointed, and withal moistning, such as hath been prescribed in the Cure of continual Feavers; the same you must observe in the double Tertian. But in the Bastard and single Tertian, a fuller Diet is to be observed. What ever the Patient catch, let him eat nothing before the Fit two or three hours, that there may be a digesture; but it is good, if he go to stool before the Fit; to help the same, give a Clyster.

Clysters, in an exquisite Tertian, must be made of emollient and cooling Decoction, adding Cassia, Catholicon, Diaprunum lenitive and solutive, &c.

In a bastard Tertian, let the Decoction be emollient and cutting, and dissolve in it Diaphænicon, Honey of Roses, &c. Purgatives ought to be the same for the exquisite Tertian, as for the continual Feavers. In the Bastard, add Agarick, Catholicon, Diaphænicon, Senna, and such as the judicious Physician shall judge suitable, in respect of the Patient's Constitution, and the Humors offending. But to every Medicine cream of Tartar may be added, for it openeth, cleanseth and cools. If the Patient be subject to Vomit, go that way to work as I said in the Chapter. Open a Vein, and draw blood as often, or as much as you see occasion. Prepare the Humors with Juleps, as you are taught in the last Chapter, then Purge. If the humors be stubborn, and the Fit continue, make a Decoction of Wormwood and Centaury with cool Herbs to qualifie the heat; it is much commended, after the use of that purge again. If there be a Distension under the short Ribs, apply an emollient, attenuating, and strengthening Fomentation. What ever part of the body is ill disposed, have a regard to that in all your Medicines. The Spirit of Sulphur is much magnified, for extinguishing the heat of Feavers; and if the humors be thin, it sends them forth by Sweat; give them from half a scruple to a scruple in four ounces of Purslane water. Or you may give it thus: Take of Sal of Wormwood half a dram, Spirit of Sulphur a scruple, Carduus water four ounces; mix them, and give the Patient to drink when the Fit approacheth, and lay him to sweat. Those things which are usually laid to the Wrists by the common people, are not to be despised: I shall not insert them, nor more Receipts for the Cure of the Ague. First, it being my chiefe end to describe the Causes and Signs of Diseases: Secondly, almost every womans Head is full of medicines against an Ague.

## CHAP. LXXXVIII.

Of the Quotidian, or every day Ague.

**T**His Ague is caused by Phlegm putrifying in the Region of the Body; therefore all things that breed Phlegm in the body may be the cause thereof.

The Diagnostick signs are such as testify phlegm to abound in the body, as white colour, pale, dull Sence, Softness and Fatness, profoundness of Sleep, and dreaming of Water. It comes with a cold shivering, little or no shaking; and for the most part it comes in the night. After the cold Fit, the Patient feels heat but mildly not scorching, little Thirst; the Pulse small, seldome and slow; there is a Distention about the short Ribs: the Fits appear more intense or remiss, last longer or shorter, as the phlegm is simple, or mingled with other Humors: the Fit commonly lasteth twelve hours, and then leaveth a feavourish Fit behind it. Sometimes it lasteth twenty four hours, and is almost like a continual Feaver. There is a difference found in respect of the Nature of the phlegm, for salt phlegm makes the Patient thirsty, sharp phlegm hungry, sweet phlegm sleepy: if the phlegm have no taste, it makes him without Appetite. Acid or Glassy phlegm (by reason of its coldness) causeth shaking. This Disease for the most part continueth long, and is not without danger, because it sometimes degenerates into a Cachexia, Dropsy or Lethargy.

The Diet and Medicines must be such as have an extenuating, cutting and dividing quality. The Cure must be performed almost in the same manner as the bastard Tertian: *Zacutus Lusitanus* doth much commend the Decoction of Roman Worm-wood and Camomel Flowers, if five or six ounces be administred. And the Decoction of China and Guajacum for many dayes, but beware it dry not too much.

## CHAP. LXXXIX.

Of the Quartane Ague.

**A**N intermitting Quartane is caused of Melancholy putrifying in the Body.

There are two sorts of Quartane Agues, viz. A Legitimate and a Bastard Quartane: a Legitimate is bred of natural Melancholy, which is the earthly part of our Nourishment, in quality cold and dry. The

bastard



bastard *Quartane* is bred of preternatural Melancholy, which is bred of adust Choller, and is hot and dry, or by Melancholy mixed with adust Choller. A quartane Ague is either single, double or triple; the single is that which comes every fourth day. The double is when two Fits happen upon two dayes one after another, and the third day none. Triple quartane is when Fits come every day, as in a quotidian and double tertian.

Diagnostick signs of a quartane are, the Ague coming every fourth day, and Melancholy abounding in the body: it begins with gaping and stretching, the heaviness of the body; shivering and shaking follows, as if it would break the Patient's bones. The pulse is seldom and slow, the Urine watry, thin and white, after a while it is higher coloured and thicker. The bastard quartane (for the most part) follows other Feavers or Agues, by which adustion of Humors is made; and in it the Feaver, Heat and Thirst, is more violent, and all the Symptoms are greater, because the Humors are thinner. A double quartane is known by the course of the Fits: A triple quartane is distinguished from a double Tertian or quotidian, by Melancholy abounding; and by the course of the Fit: and chiefly in this, that at first it was a simple or double quartane.

Prognosticks are thus made: This of all Agues is the longest of Continuance; some continue half a year, some a year, and some longer. It is good in this Ague for the Patient to void black Urine. The Bastard quartane is not of so long continuance as the Legitimate, because it proceeds from thinner Humors than the other. The Legitimate it not so dangerous as the other, which hath many times dangerous Symptoms, especially if the Liver, Spleen, or any of the inferior parts be dammified, because it is sometimes degenerated into a Dropsie. If any aged above sixty fall into the quartane Ague, it proveth mortal. If the intermitting quartane degenerate into a continual, it is for the most part deadly. To bleed at the Nose in a quartane Ague is but a bad sign, because the Morbifick Humors are too thick for such an Evacuation.

If a bloody Flux come upon a quartane Ague, and continue but a while, it is good.

A bastard quartane is cured almost with the same Medicines, which have been prescribed for the Cure of the Tertian: to them adding such Medicines as regard Melancholy, and free the Spleen from Disaffection.

Seeing the Legitimate quartane is caused of Humors that are cold and dry, thick and earthy, we must use Medicines that heat, moisten, and attenuate. Let the Patient's Diet be heating and moistning,

Chap. 89.  
moistning, of  
his rear Eggs  
Many Rivers;  
Partly and T  
Turnep;  
Fits, Dates an  
are of a clam  
small Ale or  
hours before  
for much dri  
Having thus  
Rec: Take of  
ful: Polypody  
of the four gr  
dians: boil it  
Medicine and  
and Camomil  
Clyster. The  
cine: bewar  
lest you infl  
at least to a  
chus: Take  
ful: Polypody  
half an ounce  
half an ounce  
distillace there  
give it the ve  
the leic dnm  
open a Vein  
the more. I  
done on the F  
fir: Zucatus  
become by p  
is made more  
morrhoids,  
if your Patie  
pid, and one  
much appe  
Juleps to pr  
Simples are  
Liquorin a  
Bagles, Ce  
pue, Worm

moistning, of good juyce, easie of digesture, and of thin substance; A Year Eggs, young Animals, and Birds of Mountains, Fishes of Stony Rivers; among Herbs, Borrage, Bugloss, Spinach, Fennel, Parsly and Turneps: *Crato* doth much commend the Broth of Turneps; of Fruits, Almonds, Apples, stewed Prunes, Figgs, Raisins, Dates and Pine-kernels. Let him abstain from all Meats which are of a clammy substance, and of hard digesture: let him drink small Ale or Beer, let him eat moderately, and on the Fit day six hours before the Fit cometh let him be very moderate in drinking; for much drink fills the Spleen, and makes the Disease rebellious. Having thus ordered his Diet, give him a gentle purgation by Clyster: Take of Mallows, Camomel, Mercury and Beets, of each one handful: Polypody of the Oak an ounce and an half, Epithymum half an ounce, of the four great cold seeds, and of Annis and of Fennel, of each two drams: boil it in Posset-drink to a pint, strain it, dissolve therein Catholicon and Honey of Roses, of each one ounce: the Oyls of Violets and Camomel, of each one ounce and an half, mix all, and make a Clyster. Then purge the Melancholy humor by some gentle Medicine: beware of a strong purge in the beginning before Concoction, lest you inflame the humors, and turn the Disease to a continual or at least to a double or triple quartane. Make a gentle purgation thus: Take of Fumitory, Bugloss, and Maiden-hair, of each one handful: Polypody of the Oak, Liquorish, and sweet Fennel-seed, of each half an ounce: boyl them, when they are boyled, infuse, or gently boyl half an ounce of Senna, till the Liquor come to three or four ounces: dissolve therein Manna and Syrup of Roses, of each one ounce for a Potions: give it the next day after the Clyster. After purging, open a Vein in the left Arm, unless you find the Liver out of order, then you must open a Vein in the right Arm: if the blood be black and impure draw the more. Most do let blood upon the wel-day, some will have it done on the Fit-day, before the Fit, beause the humors then begin to stir: *Zacutus Lusitanus* will have it done when the Moon is at the full, because by the Moons Influence, the earthly and melancholy humor is made more fluid, and apt to come away. It is good to open the Hemorrhoids, if your Patient hath been inclinable to that Evacuation: if your Patient be a Woman, provoke the Menstrues if they be stopped, and open the *Saphena*. The opening of the *Vena Salvatella* is much approved of: Likewise you must make Decoctions, Broths or Juleps to prepare and concoct the Humors: for which purpose these Simples are good, viz the five opening Roots, and the Root of Succory, Liquorish and Bugloss, bark of Tamarisk: the Leaves of Burrage, Bugloss, Ceterach, Maiden hair, Fumitory, Germander, Ground-pine, Worm-wood and Centaury, the three Cordial-flowers: of these

you may make Decoctions, and sweeten them with Sirrupus Bizantium, or Syrup of Maiden-hair. After the use of these preparatives purge the melancholy Humor; and between the dayes you purge, give a Clyster, this observing, that you often change your Medicines, and continue in the course a long time; for the melancholy humor is not soon evacuated, and that is the reason that so few are cured of this Disease, because few will observe the Rule of the Physician, or have patience to take his Medicines.

Vomits in the beginning of this Fever, are commended by all; of Asarum, a dram given in White-wine, is of an excellent faculty. In the declination of this disease, Diaphoreticks may be given to dissipate the reliques of the Disease, the Decoction of the Roots of China and Sarsa are good, and Venice-Treacle hath a great vertue. You may anoint the Back-bone with a Liniment made of some of these Oyls, viz. of Dill, Camomel, Orris, Costus, Rue, Bayes, and Spike in a small quantity; mixing with them Treacle, Cloves, Mustard-seed, Castoreum, and the like; of these an ingenious Man may compound a Liniment to anoint the Back-bone, one hour before the Fit; then lay him to bed, and lay hot Tyles wrapt in clothes to his feet and hands, and lay him in a Sweat. To conclude, great care ought to be had of the Spleen; for in this Disease the Spleen is disaffected and obstructed: The 59 Chapter will furnish you with such Medicines.

## CHAP. XC.

### Of the Pestilence.

**H**AVING briefly treated of most Diseases that the body of Man is incident to, I thought it convenient to write a word or two of the Pestilence. But considering how many larger Treatises thereof are at this day extant, I could have willingly omitted it; but hoping my Mite will not only be acceptable, but beneficial, I thought good to Epitomize this as well as the rest.

This Disease afflicteth Nature not onely by a bare Distemper or Heat arising from putrefaction, but also by a malignant and venomous quality; by which means it becomes popular and epidemical. Before we go any further, know that those feavers which we call malignant or pestilential, vulgarly spotted feavers, are of the same kind with the pestilence, and are cured by the same means. The causes of the Pestilence are either internal or external; the internal causes are immediate or mediate; the immediate Cause is a Corruption of the



the humors with Putrefaction, the venomous quality is bred of Corruption, and from putrefaction the Feaver is bred. The Mediate causes are, fulness of blood which Nature cannot master, but easily turns to putrefaction: Abundance of evil Humors is easily corrupted and putrefied; to these joyn Obstructions, which is a great means to breed such Diseases; for such humors close shut up the body, & having no Evacuation nor Transpiration must of necessity putrify. But Obstruction is not a principal cause of this Disease, for the venomous quality is received by drawing in of the Air, by which Venome the Humors are changed from their natural Condition, and of their own accord putrify. The External causes are, First the Air, which becomes hurtful to men; first, if it be not blown through with wholesome winds, as *Hypocrates* observeth, speaking of a grievous pestilential year, that in that year there were few winds. Secondly, the Air may be vitious by putrid Exhalations, as of Lakes, Pools, Fish-ponds, or other standing waters, or from bodies unburied, which have been slain in Battail. Thirdly, the Air may become hurtful by Excess, or the preposterous Condition of the first qualities; as Excess of Heat, Cold, Drieth or Moisture, of which I could lay down manifold Examples, which best not my small Volume. Inequalities of Seasons must be acknowledged as a cause, when it is sometimes hot, and sometimes cold, sometime dry, and suddenly moisture follows; one while vehemently hot, and suddenly very cold; or after a violent wet and moist time, a sudden and extreme Drouth: a hot Winter, and a cold Summer. Next to a vitious Air, is a bad Aliment and Diet, when the Fruits of the Earth, by a bad Temperature of the Air, are corrupted; or when by reason of Scarcity, the Poor are fain to feed on unwholesome Diet, (whence the proverb came, the Plague followeth the Famine) or a great Plenty following a Famine, when the poor gorge themselves, which for want of heat, and a good Disposition of body, cannot be digested, but turns to putrefaction. Add to these the malignant Influence of *Saturn*, *Jupiter* and *Mars* in humane Signs, by which the Constitution of the Air and the bodies of Men are changed and corrupted: for all Philosophers by common consent acknowledge, that inferiour bodies are governed by the heavenly Constellations: To this kind we must add the defects and Eclipses of the Sun and Moon, and unusual Meteors, especially blazing Stars. Above all Causes, let us not be unmindful of the strict and severe Judgement of God for the Sins of Mankind: For many times he is pleased to punish our Sins and Offences by this Judgement; as the Scriptures do frequently prove. To these non-natural Causes aforementioned, we must add the Retention of Womens Courses, the Hemorrhoids in Men, or some usuall Evacuation, Idleness, or

too much Sleep, Anger, Sadness, or other passions of the mind.

Signs that shew the Pestilence approaching, are taken from the presence of Causes before-mentioned. Those Bodies are disposed to receive pestilential Infection, which have collected evil Juices and Diet, and have a præposterous use of the non-natural things afore-specified. The chief signs which shew the Body to be infected; the heart is much afflicted, Cardialgia, and heart-burning, and pain about the mouth of the Stomach: sometimes great Thirst, exceeding the Measure of the Patient's heat; sometimes want of Thirst, yet a vehement Fever and driness of the Tongue: Want of Appetite and abhorring of all Meat, and vomiting up whatever food, drink, Juleps, or Emulsions is given, and their Thirst continue, and the Tongue black; A frequent and inordinate shivering, which comes divers times in a day, weariness and heaviness of the whole Body, pains of the Head, Watchings and Ravings: Some are very drowsy and sleepy, then judge that the Brain is full of phlegmatick Excrements. To some there happen cholerick Fluxes, which stink very much; frequent Sweats, small, short and unprofitable do break forth; the heat is mild and gentle to the feet, because the Disease is caused rather by a malignant and venomous quality, than by putrefaction. Redness of the Eyes, and sometimes a frowning or a turious look: Sometimes abundance of Worms are voided, which shew a great putrefaction. The Urine is sometimes like the urine of a sound man, if a malignant quality doth rather offend than putrefaction: sometimes it appeareth thick, troubled, and high coloured, and hath a thick, red, and scattered Sediment. On some purple Spots, like flea-bitings, Carbuncles, and Risings in the Groin, behind the Ears, and under the Arm-pits. Those Spots upon the Bodies of the dead, which are of a lead-colour or black, do especially denote the Pestilence.

No certain Prognostick can be drawn of this Disease, therefore the discreet Physician ought to suspend his Judgment of the issue thereof: for many have died, notwithstanding many hopes and testimonies of Recovery; and, on the contrary, many have escaped with most mortal signs. Yet it is lawful for the Physician to give his Conjecture thus; If the pulse keep a Tenor and equality there is some hopes; on the contrary, if it be inordinate, unequal and contracted, it is dangerous. If the pulse be like the pulse of a healthy person, it is dangerous; because it is a sign that Nature doth not labour to concoct the Humours for her deliverance. Raving is not dangerous, if it be lessened by Sleep; but if it turn to dotage, and continue, there is little hope. Contractions, convulsive and trembling Motions are deadly; for it shews that the Brain is mortally wounded

wounded, and that Nature is overcome by the Disease. Deafness at the beginning is dangerous : but in the state of the Disease it is not so, for many times health follows. Sneezing is laudable. Heart-burnings, Hiccoughs, and extreame Loathing do portend danger, and that the Stomach is over-mastered by the malignant quality of the humors. Suppression of all Evacuations in the beginning and state of the Disease, is good ; provided, that the malignity doth not settle in the head, or near any principal part. The Urine that is like the Urine of a healthy person is bad ; the same judge, if they be thin, thick, confused or troubled. Urines which have a laudable sediment, and well concoct are good, and shew a strong natural Faculty to expel the Venom. An Urine black or blew, far and oyle, with a black or blewish settling shews a wasting of the body, and is a deadly Sign. Sweats seldom portend good, though it happens on a critical day, unless it doth much diminish the Feaver. Sometimes a Looseness of the Belly at the beginning is good, and sometimes it is a deadly Sign. Spots, the more laudable the colour is, the better ; if they be black, or Lead-colour, and go in again it is dangerous. Carbuncles and Buboes, the farther from the Heart the better, and the sooner they ripen, the safer.

The Cure ought to be two-fold, first, to preserve those from it who have it not ; secondly, in healing those that have it. First, to preserve, take away the causes both internal and external. If the body be phlethorick, let Phlebotomy abate it : If full of evil humors let them be purged : If obstructed, let means be used to open Obstructions. If the body be in a good state, labour to keep it so. If it be too moist, labour to dry it, and avoid ail moist Nourishments, and much drinking, eat no Fish, Meats made of milk, nor Herbs ; walk not in the South Air, or near Lakes, nor in the Night, sleep not too much. If the Body be weak use a restorative Diet. If the Air be too hot, labour to cool it, as we taught you, in continual Feavers. If it be too moist, correct it by fires and fumes ; as also to consume and dissipate the infection of the Air, make fires and fumes of Sweet Woods, and other sweet-scented Ingredients, as Cypress, Wood of Aloes, Juniper, Storax, Laudanum, Myrrh, Benjamin, yellow Sanders, Ireos, Frankincense, Cinnamon, Cloves, Red-Rose-leaves, Calamint, Bays, Rosemary, and such like. Let the common sort of people, and the poorer sort, carry Rue and Angelica to smell to, and take in the morning fasting, and when they go abroad, Mithridates's medicine, Mithridate, Venice-Treacle, and such like. Let the Rich man use of this Pomander : Take of Labdanum, and of the Rinds of Citrons, of each one dram : of the three kinds of Sanders, of each half a dram ; wood of Aloes, flowers of Bugloss, Nannaphar, Rose-leaves, of each two Scruples, Aipta Muscata,



*Muscate*, half a scruple ; *Cloves* and *Marjerom*, of each one scruple. *Zedoary-root* one scruple, *Benjamin* one dram, *Storax* *Galamita* one dram and an half, *Camphir* half a dram : *Musk* and *Ambergreece*, of each four Grains ; *Pouder* them, and with the *Musilage* of *Gum-Dracant* made in *Rose-water*, make a *Pomander*. And let him make use of this *Preservative* : Take of *Bile-Armeick* prepared half an ounce, of *Cinnamon* three drams, of *white Dittany*, the roots of *Angelica*, *Gentian*, and *Tormentil*, of each two drams, the root of *Zedoary*, red *Roses*, of all the *Sanders*, *Harts-horn*, the *Leaves* of *Scabious*, and *Flowers* of *Bugloss*, of each one dram, of *Juniper-berries*, *Nutmegs*, and bone of a *Stags Heart*, of each half a dram ; of *Pearls* prepared two Scruples, of *Saphir*, *Jacinth*, *Emerauld*, *Ruby* and *Granate* prepared, and leaf *Gold*, of each one scruple ; pouder them all, and with *Syrup* of *Vinegar* or *Lemmons*, make an *Electuary*, and take a scruple or two in the Morning.

For the cure of those that are sick, let the same course of Diet be observed, as was prescribed in continual Feavers ; and if the body be plethorick, open a Vein ; How much blood to take away, and how often to bleed, let prudence be your director. If you judge it necessary, apply Cupping-glasses to the shoulders, back, and hips ; and vesicatories applied to the neck and Arm-pits, and Groyns, are seldom without admirable success ; and a Cataplasme of Snails, or Radishes, laid to the feet are good. First, altering Juleps are good to prepare the humors, made of such things as are prescribed for the Cure of continual Feavers ; to which add Antidotes, which are a specifick property to fight against the venomous quality : as the roots of *Tormentil*, *Cinkfoil*, *Scorzonera*, white *Thistle* ; the leaves of *Scordium*, *Carduus*, *Scabious*, *Meddow-sweet*, *Flowers* of *Marigolds* ; *Lemons* and *Citrons*, *Odoriferous Apples*, *Harts-horn* ; the juyce or *Syrup* of *Lemons*, *Pomegranats*, *Citrons*, *Vinegar*, the *Spirit* of *Sulphur* and *Vitriol*. In the whole course of the cure, Antidotes must be given, of which there are four sorts or degrees, the first resist the venomous quality, and besides are cold, dry and astringent, by which they strengthen the Heart, hinder putrefaction, and the venom from spreading over the Body : of this sort are *Bolearmenick*, *Terra Sigillata*, the roots of *Bistort*, *Cinkfoil*, *Tormentil*, &c. The second sort, by their coldness and tenuity do resist putrefaction, and restrain the venomous quality : as the juyce of *Lemons*, *Spirit* of *Sulphur* and *Vitriol*, and all other acid things. The third sort are such as are hot and Diaphoretick, which expel the venome from the Center to the Circumference, from the Heart to the outward parts, by sweat ; and of this sort are *Angelica*, *Zedoary*, *Dictamnus*, *Meddow-sweet*, *Scordium*, *Carduus*, *Scabious*, *Treacle*, *Methridate*, *Treacle-water*. The last sort are such, as by a special quality without excess, do oppose the

the venome  
Troches or  
meures, m  
varied and  
putrefactio  
according  
the decreas  
upon the p  
lignate at  
mous qu  
best agree  
the third  
nation ; b  
putrefactio  
regular me  
terent deg  
can take e  
of Cordia  
pured, b

THE F  
just  
many tim  
tween the  
in Thier  
Bladders  
some Phys  
cause of  
which the  
theed, be  
once in hi  
never to p  
pellution  
being grow  
proportion  
the parts,  
purities do  
corrupt in

Chap. 91. *Of the Small Pox and Measels.* 235

the venomous quality, as Bezoar-stone, Harts horn, Unicorns-horn, Troches or Vipers, and such like. Of these and Simples of the like nature, may many Medicines be composed, which must be diversly varied and mixed, according to the different degree of malignity, and putrefaction, according to the intension and remission of the Feaver, according to the divers Temperaments, Sex, and age of the Patient, the determination of which depends not upon any certain rules, but upon the prudence and head-piece of an able Physician. In the Malignant and Spotted Feaver, if putrefaction be greater than the venomous quality; the Medicines of the first, second, or fourth order, do best agree in the beginning and augment of the Feaver: and those of the third, *viz.* Diaphoreticks and sweating medicines in the declination; but if it be the Plague, and the venomous quality exceed the putrefaction, let Diureticks be used first: as for the form of particular medicines, let the Physician vary them according to the different degrees of heat, putrefaction, and malignity. Let the Physician take care to strengthen the Heart also, by outward applications of Cordial Epithems; and let the Carbuncles and Botches be suppurated, broken, and healed, by the expert Chyrurgions.

CHAP. XCI.

*Of the Small Pox and Measels.*

**T**He Feaver which attends the Small Pox and Measels, may be justly termed Pestilential, for it is epidemical, contagious and many times mortal: I need not write any thing of the difference between these two, *viz.* Pox and Measels, for every Woman knows it. There is another sort of Pustules come out upon Children like Bladders without inflammation or redness, and without a Feaver: some Physicians call it the Crystals, we call it the Blisters. The cause of the small Pox and Measels was in the Mothers Blood, with which the Child was nourished in the Womb, and is hence chiefly gathered, because among thousands of men, it is hard to find one, who once in his life hath not had these Diseases. For in the blood be it never so pure, some impurities are found, which doth communicate pollution to the parts of the Child, and defile the Mass of blood; and being provoked by some occasion (*viz.* a certain disposition of Air, proportionable to the disease) the blood boyls and putrifieth it self and the parts, and the impurity is cast forth. Understand that these impurities do not substantially remain in the body, for then they would corrupt in a little time, but an evil quality is by them imprinted upon the

the parts. When this ebullition beginneth, the excrement is twofold, either thin or thick; if thin, the Measels follow; if thick, the small Pox. And another reason is this, Sometimes the Air is inclinable to the one, and sometimes to the other. Again, the Pox is either perfective or corruptive; the perfective is when the corrupt, impure, and excrementitious part of the blood is cast forth by nature, the rest remaining pure, and the Patient is restored without Physick: the corruptive Pox is not onely the corrupt blood purged forth, but the most pure blood is corrupted, which is occasioned by a malignant constitution of the Air, and so produceth a dangerous and Epidemical Pox: which is sometimes a forerunner of the Plague. In respect of the natural constitution of the Body they come forth more or less, sooner or later, and sometimes they seize upon the internal as well as external parts, as the Throat, Lungs, Guts, Liver, Spleen, &c.

Signs which declare the Pox at hand, are pain in the head, and beating about the Temples, troubled and terrified in sleep, sometimes ravings and Convulsions, hoarseness, cough, and difficulty of breathing; heat and pricking all over the Body, pain of the back, shining before the eyes, the face red and swelled. If they come out soon and easily ripen, there is no danger, the same judge if the symptoms are not great, and the voice and breathing is free. If they come out red, afterwards white, round pointed, and outwardly in the skin, there is no danger. The contrary to these are signs of a deadly and dangerous Pox, viz. A great Fever, which is not abated at their coming out, difficulty of breathing, great thirst, a looseness, or bloody flux, because the malignant humours have their recourse inward, which is contrary to nature, a bloody Urine, or stool, bleeding at the Nose, Gums, or other parts, are commonly deadly signs, for they signifie the extreme acrimony and malignancie of the blood, that nature is forced to void it in such a preposterous way. Pox long coming out, shews the contumacie of the humor, or Weakness of Nature, if they be many, great, double, and united, they shew abundance of humors: hard ones shew the thickness of the Matter: flat ones shew the Weakness of the Expulsive Faculty: if there be a black Spot in the middle, it shews the malignity of the humors; the like judge, if they be green, blewish or black, and they are all bad signs; but it is worse if they sink, go in, and the Tumor faller'n, for it signifieth the Retirement of the humors inward, and few in this condition escape. If black or blew spots come forth among the Pox, it shews great Malignity; and the Patient in great danger. If the Excrements and Urine be black or livid, they signifie abundance of Melancholy, and great danger.

For the Cure, keep the Patient in a warm room, and if you tender his

his life, keep  
Keep the C  
Let his Dr  
Hart-sho  
moderate  
with blood  
thing terri  
forth. Po  
cotive, m  
deavour th  
Asparagus  
Sorrel two  
make a Dec  
take few m  
good to sen  
Medicine.  
fear that t  
ction ad  
of each on  
Roses and  
Inflammat  
with the C  
jubes, may  
send the T  
with Plan  
defend the  
and the po  
full ripe,  
monds, it  
are likely



Chap. 91. *Of the small Pox and Measles.* 237

his life, keep out the cold Air, lest the humours be driven inward. Keep the Cloaths close about him, but let them not lie too heavy. Let his Drink be Barly-water, and boyl therein Sorrel Roots and Harts-horn, and Figs, if the Feaver be not violent: let his Sleep be moderate. Physicians, for the most part, advise the Cure to begin with blood-letting, that is, if the Patient be full of blood, and nothing forbid it; but it must be done before, or just as they be coming forth. Purges are absolutely forbidden; but if the body be very costive, move it with a Suppository, but do not provoke it. Then endeavour the expulsion of the Matter, thus; Take of the Roots of grass, Asparagus and Fennel, of each four ounces: Liguor is half an ounce: Wood Sorrel two handfuls: twenty Figs: the Cordial Flowers one Paggit: make a Decoction to a pint, towards the later end, put in a little Saffron; take four ounces Night and Morning. Bezoar and Galcoins powder is good to send out the Pox; and for Children *Diacordium* is a familiar Medicine. We must endeavour to preserve the internal parts: if you fear that the Liver, Spleen, or Guts should suffer, to the former Decoction add husked Lentils, two drams; Gum Lac, and Tragacanth, of each one dram. You must defend the Eyes with the Water of Roses and Plantane, and infuse Camphir, Saffron; and if the Inflammation be great, infuse Tutty. You must defend the Lungs with the Conserve of Roses and Violets, the Syrup of Violets, Jujubes, Myrtles, dried Roses and Violets, and such like. You must defend the Throat with a Gargle of Oxycrate, or you may make it with Plantane water, and Syrup of Mulberries or Pomegranates. To defend the Nose, put up a *Nodus*, made of Vinegar, Rose-water, and the powder of Sanders and Camphir. When the Pox are out, full ripe, and begin to break, anoint them often with the Oyl of Almonds, it will be a means to prevent their pitting: and where there are likely to be holes, anoint with the Oyl of the yelks of Eggs.

*The End of the Second Book.*



# T H E T H I R D B O O K

**H**AVING in the former Book been more voluminous than I expected, I shall be briefer in this, and treat more Theoretically than Practically: And leaving the Description and Cures of Wounds, Tumors, and ulcers in particular to the Ingenious and Expert Chyrurgion; I shall run over their Causes, Signs, and Cures generally, and as briefly as may be.

## C H A P. I.

### Of a Green Wound.

**A** Wound is a breach of Continuity, fresh and bloody without Putrefaction or Matter: It is caused by a Sword, Bullet, Arrow, or such like, which the Chyrurgion may easily perceive. Wounds in the flesh, are easily cured; in the Nerves, Veins, and Arteries, they are not without danger: In the instrumental and principal parts, as the Heart, Liver, Lungs, Brain, Spleen, Midriff, Wizzard, Stomach, Guts, or Bladder, they are deadly. A Fever, Perturbation, Swooning, Convulsion, and such like Symptoms are dangerous.

The Cure must be directed, first to the cause; secondly, to the Wound it self; thirdly, to the part affected. Lastly, to the Symptoms attending. The Cause or outward thing, viz. a Bullet, Arrow, or such like, sticking in the Body must be drawn out by Instruments or by Medicine: What concerns the first I shall not meddle with, the medicinal part I shall briefly handle. The Simples available and of force for the purpose aforesaid are, The Roots of Reeds and Birthwort, the Leaves of Dittany, Crow-foot, Mistleto, Thapsia; Sagapenum, Ammoniacum, Opopanax, Quick-Lime, burnt Frogs, Galbanum, Bears=grease, the Lordstone, Mustard-seed, and such like. Of these and such like you may prepare compound Medicines: this Unguent of Vesalius is much approved of: Take of Roxin of the Pine-tree, two Ounces; Galbanum, three Ounces: of the store al-

Id

led Calamites, one Ounce : the Gall of an Oxe, one Ounce and an half : of Turpentine, three Ounces ; new Wax, two ounces : first, strain out the wax, Rozin, and Turpentine ; after, mix the Galbanum, Gall and the Powder of the Stone, and make an unguent.

This Plaster is likewise good for the same purpose : Take of *Leaven*, one pound : Oyl half a pound : the juce of *Keot-grass*, and *Dittany*, (or, for want of it, the Powder of the dried Herbs,) of each three ounces : Turpentine, one pound : The Bird-Lime made of *Mistle Berries*, *Ammoniacum*, and *Galbanum* dissolved in wine, of each one Ounce ; of Wax, four Ounces : mix them upon the Fire, and make a Plaster.

Having thus far proceeded, and removed all things unnatural from the Wound, then must the Chyrurgion, if the Solution be great, artificially joyn the gaping sides of the Wound by Seam, Taches, or stitching cloths and such like, which I omit, and shall lay down a few Rules to prevent pain, inflammation or other untoward Accidents, which may happen to the wounded part of the whole Body.

Inflammation is restrained by taking away the Cause of the fluxion: Now the humours, flowing to the part, are either drawn or sent. They are drawn by reason of the pain and heat of the Member, which doth attract the humors to it self. They are sent, thus ; when the whole body is full of evil humors, and every part disburtheneth it self upon the weaker. The Inflammation of the part must be allayed with such Medicines that quench heat ; and the body must be purged, and such a Course of Diet used as may somewhat free the Body from such humors, which are offensive and burthensome to Nature.

But before I come to treat of the removal of such Accidents and evil Symptoms ; I shall briefly shew you the manner of Cure, which ought thus to be performed. After closing of the Wound, dress it with some agglutinative Medicine, made of such Simples : viz. *Frankincense*, *Mastich*, *Aloes*, *Bole-armenick*, *Sanguis Draconis*, *Sarcocolla*, *Terra Sigillata*, *Balaustine*, *Pomegranate Rinds*, *Cypress Nuts*, *Galls*, *Horse-Tail*, *Tobacco*, and such like. You may make a Balm thus : Take of Turpentine a pound : of Galbanum, Gum Elemi, Gum of Ivy, Frankincense, Mastich, Myrrh, of each two ounces, Aloes, *Lignum Aloes*, *Galanga*, *Nutmegs*, *Cloves*, *Cinnamon*, *Cubebs*, of each one ounce : Aqua-vite, three ounces : infuse and distil them to a Balm. After the Application of this or the like Balsome, lay on this Plaster : Take of *Ammoniacum* dissolved in Vinegar, two ounces : Gum Elemi three ounces : Rozin of the Pine-tree, five ounces : Turpentine of the Fir-tree, three ounces : Oyl of Roses two ounces : make a Plaster. Open it once in twenty four hours till it be whole : thus may you cure a simple Wound in the Flesh.



If the Wound be hollow, you must put in Tents, twist them not too hard, but so that the Sanies may come forth. If the Wound be deep without loss of Substance, you must consider whether the Orifice of the Wound look upward or downward. If the Orifice look downward, and the bottom be upward, then may the Matter run freely out of the Wound, and the Cure thereof is performed as a simple Wound in the Flesh. But if the Orifice of the Wound be upward, and the bottom tending to the lower parts, that there is a place for the Matter to rest in; then if you find it needful, (as many times it is) make an Incision from the top to the bottom, or onely in the bottom; let Reason guide you where to make your Incision, or when to neglect it. Wash the Wound with Wine, wherein Myrrh and Salt hath been boiled: then put in this Oyl, which is much commended; and it is made thus: Take of Oyl of Olives three pounds: of white Wine, two pounds: of the Flowers, Leaves and Seeds of St. John's wort, one pound: of Greek Valerian, the spotted and common Sanicle, Savasens consouid; and Self-heal, of each half a handful; beat the Herbs in a Mortar, and infuse them in the Wine and Oyl twenty four hours, then boyl it gently to the consumption of almost half: then strain it, and add thereto of Venice Turpentine, one pound and an half: Oyl of Turpentine six ounces: Olibanum five ounces: Myrrh three ounces: Mastich, and Sanguis Draconis; of each one ounce: Roots of Aloebacet, (first bruised and infused in Oyl two or three hours) boyl them gently and sufficiently, and so refer it for the use aforesaid. Then lay on Emplastrum Sticticum, the receipt of which you may read in the London Dispensatory: or you may buy the Plaster at the Apothecaries.

If the Wound be hollow with loss of Substance, you must make use of such Medicines which are by Nature drying and cleansing, called Incarnatives.

This Unguent is much commended for cleansing Putrifaction, and breeding of good Flesh in Wounds: Take of common Oyl and Rams suet; of each one pound: Stoe-pitch half a pound; Græcian-pitch three ounces; wax two ounces: Mastich, Olibanum, Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Sagapenum, Opopanax, and Turpentine, of each half an ounce: powder those that are to be powdered, and melt the rest in Oyl, stir them well together on the fire; when they are sufficiently boiled, add the Turpentine, strain it, and use it upon occasion.

This plaister is very good to incarnate both Wounds and Ulcers; Take of Virgins Wax eight ounces, Deers Suet four ounces and an half; Common Roxin, and Roxin of the Pine-tree, of each four ounces: Myrrh and Mastich, of each four ounces; Honey six ounces: Turpentine eight ounces: white Wine one pound and an half, Dragons blood one pound; boyl them (the Sanguis Draconis excepted) to the form of a Plaister. Or you may

may make a less quantity by decreasing each particular analogically. Take this general Rule, That according to the Dryth or moisture of the Body or wound, you must make your medicines less or more drying; when the wound cometh to be plain, equal and filled, it must be Cicatrized, or covered with skin; which must be performed by Medicines which are astringent, and very much drying, because it must consume not onely the superfluous, but also the natural moisture, of which properly are the simples following: Galls, Balau-  
stines, the Rinds of Pomegranats, the white Thistle, Sumach, Bole-  
armenick, Sealed-earth, Cersus, Lead burnt or washed, Litharge,  
and the Bark of the Pine-tree. To which add the followings, which  
perform it accidentally, as Brasse burnt and washed, the Scales of Brasse,  
Allum and Vitriol burnt and washed, Plantane, Aristolochia, and such  
like. Of these and such like, may many forms of Medicines, viz.  
Waters, Oyls, Unguents, or Plaisters, be made, Take this Plaister  
as an example for all: Take of Litharge and Ceruse, of each six ounces:  
burnt Lead, Lapis Calaminaris and Terra Sigillata, of each three ounces:  
Colophonia, Ship-pitch, and Roxin, of each two ounces, Sarcocolla, Lau-  
danum, and Ireos, of each one ounce and an half: Camphir half an ounce,  
Leek seed two ounces: Oyl of Roses, one pound and an half: white wax  
four ounces: make it into a Plaister.

If the Cicatrice be uncomely or deformed, it must be amended: if  
it be too tender, it must be thickned and hardned with Diachylon,  
or with Calamint, the roots of Briony and such like sodden in Oyl.  
If the Cicatrice be thick and hard, it ought to be attenuated with the  
root of wild Cucumer, stampd or applied, or the Oyl of Balsome  
Apple. If it be deformed in respect of colour, you must labour to  
bring it to whiteness, for which this plaister is commended: Take of  
Swines Grease three ounces, Litharge one ounce, Verdigrease and burnt  
Vitriol, of each two drams: make it into a Plaister.

Sometimes a wound is overgrown with Flesh: this flesh growing  
too proudly must be dealt withall with medicines that may diminish,  
and take away the same, and they must be by Nature sharp and dry-  
ing; as Calcitis, Vitriol, burnt Allum, the roots of Asphodels, Her-  
modactyls, the stones of Dates burnt, the seed of Nettles, Serpen-  
tary, the Scales of Brasse, burnt Brasse, the ashes of a Hedge-hog, Mer-  
cury sublimate: Of Medicines compounded, Unguentum Apollodorum,  
or unguentum Aegyptiacum are of known validity. If these suffice not,  
the Chyrurgion must use his Incision-Knife, hot Scissars, or a Cautey.

## CHAP. II.

*Of a contused Wound, and a Bruise.*

**T**Hat the Wound is contused appeareth by the swelling, pain, black or blew colour; whether it were given by a fall, or blow, the Patient can satisfie you. The Cure consisteth, first, in mundifying, filling the hollownels with Incarnative Medicines, and when it is made plain and even, cover it with Cicatrizing Medicines. And secondly, in removing the accident, which for the most part accompanieth a wound of this nature.

First, to mundifie the wound, wash it in white Wine, wherein hath been boyled Mirrh and Salt, then arm your Tents with *Conciliamentum Apostolorum* or such like, and lay on dry Suphs and bind it up; this do till the wound be clean; then fill it up with Incarnative Medicines, afterwards Cicatrize it; the medicines for that purpose in the foregoing Chapter will serve here.

Secondly, labour to remove the accidents incident to these wounds, which are either pain or swelling. Pain must be mitigated with Oyl of Dill, Camomil or Lillies. Or a Lintment made of the Oyl of Roses, and the yelk of an Egg, and applyed with Lint. The swelling or Tumor is to be removed by taking away the Antecedent or conjoyned cause: the antecedent cause is the humour flowing to the wounded part; the conjoyned cause is the humour already contained in the part. For taking away the antecedent cause, you must consider, whether it be blood or other humors. If it be blood, whether it comes from the whole body or some particular part, it must be evacuated by blood-letting, and a thin cooling Diet. You must evacuate and dispatch it from the wounded member, either by revulsion, or repercussion: Revulsion must be made either by Phlebotomy, Cupping, Rubbing and Blinding the contrary side to withdraw the humor to the contrary part. Repercussion is to send the matter from the part: of this sort are the Oyl of Roses and Myrtles; or an Unguent made of Oyl of Myrtles, Bolesarmenick, and the white of an Egg, with which the parts about the Wound are to be anointed: Afterwards lay on a Plaister made of the Powder of Myrtles, and the white of an Egg. If it be other humors which flow to the wound, let them be purged with such medicines as are proper to the humor: The foregoing Book is full of Examples; and the last Book is well furnished. The humor which is now impact in the Wound, must be brought to Suppuration. This Plaister is good: Take of the Roots of Marsh-mallows, and wild Cucumbers, of each one ounce: Origan and Hy-

sops.



Chap. 2. Of a contused Wound, and a Bruise. 243

*Hyssop*, of each a handful: the Flowers of Camomel, and the seed of *Flax*, of each one pugil: six fat Figs: boyl them well, then strain the liquor from them, and beat them in a Mortar: add to them *Mirrh*, *Gambalum*, *Syrax Liquid*, and Sheeps-grease (separated from the wool which growes in the Flank, and between their shoulders) of each one dram and an half: make a Plaister.

If by a fall, stroke or blow, clotted blood is gathered under the skin, the part is swelled, soft and easily pressed, blackish, and many times without pain. A Bruise by a violent contusion is not without danger; for sometimes not only the part it self corrupteth, but many times the whole Body. If the skin hang by, separated from the flesh, cut it away, for it is seldome or never joyned again.

For the Cure, in respect of the wounded part, observe the same rule in taking away pains and swelling, either by evacuation, or reper-cussion. In respect of the whole body, you must consider whether there be clotted blood in the body; which if there be, it must be dissolved and scattered by Medicines which dissolve blood, and strengthen the inner parts: And secondly, it must be scattered by Diaphoretick, or Sweating Medicines. This Powder is good to dissolve blood; Take of *Rhubarb* torrifed, *sealed Earth*, *Bole-armenick*, *Mummy*, and the seed of *Cresses* torrifed, of each one dram; make them into a fine powder, and give a dram in *Plantane water*, or the water of *Shepherds pouch*.

To provoke Sweat, boyl a handful or two of *Osmond Royal*, and *Horsail* in Wine, sweeten the Decoction with Honey, give five or six ounces thereof, and let the Patient sweat thereupon. If the blood be clotted under the skin, apply a Rams skin newly pulled off hot to the Body, and let the Patient sweat in it. Then anoint it with this Unguent, &c. Take of *Bole-armenick*, *Frankincense*, *Rozin*, *Fennugreek*, and *Gum Tragant*, of each half an ounce: *Saffron* one dram, the Powder of *Roses*, *Mirtles* and *Sumach*, of each three drams: the Oyntment of *Marshmallows*, the Oyl of *Roses*, *Camomil*, *Mirtles* and *Dill*, of each two ounces: *New Wax* and *Turpentine*, of each one ounce; make an Unguent, and use it twice a day. After you have used this Oyntment a while, leave out the Ingredients which are astringent, and use discurients only; If you find the matter will not be discussed, but is prone to Suppuration, help it forward by such Medicines as are proper for the purpose: then procure Issue, and Mundifie the Ulcer, and heal it up.

Many places of this Book will furnish you with fit Medicines.

## CHAP. III.

Of a Wound biting, or stinging of any Creature venomous,  
or not.

**W**Hat Creature inflicted the Wound, most people know, or whether he be venomous or not: Venomous are, a Mad-Dog, Serpent, Scorpion, Basilisk, Dragon, Viper, Adder, Slow-Worm, Asp, Spider, Foad, &c. Not venomous, are a Dog, Ape, Horse, Sow, Cat, Wasp, Bee, and the like. If the Creature were venomous, the Symptoms are more violent, viz. vehement pricking, and biting pains, change of colour, and grievous anguish, and sometimes the body is astonished, sometimes in a great heat, and the like.

A venomous biting is very dangerous, if it be not soon cured; because Poyson aym's at the destruction of the Heart. Some say if the Patient be thirsty, and yet is fearful of Drink, he is incurable. This I once saw verified in a Boy that was bit by a Mad-Dog. If the Patient be bit by a venomous Creature, the Cure may be begun with Cupping the wounded part with Scarrification, to draw forth the venome: sucking of the wound is commended, instead thereof, apply the tail of an Hen: if the part be not full of sinews, apply a Caustery; and if the venome be very malignant cutting is commended. External medicines must be attractive to draw the venome back. Of this sort are the simples following, Garlick, Onions, Mustard-seed, Harts-case, Scabius, Pennyroyal, Calamint, Gentian, Polymountain, Gesmander, Scordium, Dittany, Briony, Asphodels, Aristolochia, Euphorbium, Galbanum, Treacle, Leven, Goats-dung, &c. Of these, you may make variety of compound medicines. On a suddain mix Leven and Goats-dung together; or for want of it, Leven alone, beat with it Garlick, Onions and Treacle, or any of the aforesaid simples, which you have in readines, and make a Plaster. This Plaster is good: Take of the Powder of long Birth-wort two ounces, Asphodels and Briony, of each one ounce, Assa-Fetida, Galbanum and Mirrh, of each half an ounce, with Oyl of Bay and wax; make a Plaster: This following Unguent is commended by Vesalius, Take of Galbanum and Opoponax, of each one dram: Ammoniacum, Turpentine, and wax, of each one dram and an half: Sagapenum two drams, Pitch two drams and an half: put them over a gentle fire, and when they boyl a litle, put in a small quantity of Bean-flower, Litharge, Saffron and Bdellium, of each one dram: Mirrh and Olibanum, of each half a dram: Mastich four scruples, Fenugreek one scruple; boyl them as much as you find convenient: then with the Oyl of Roses and Sesamini, of each two drams, make an Unguent.

I then

Chap. 4. *Of a wound in the Nerves, &c.* 245

Then you must labour to preserve the Heart from the venome, by inward Medicines.

*Julius Palmarius* doth much commend that Powder against the biting of a Mad-Dog, or other venomous Creature, which Powder is called by the Colledge of Physicians in their Dispensatory, *Pulvis Antilssus*.

*Paracelsus* adviseth to give the Patient red astringent Wine, wherein Steel hath been quenched, and a little Treacle with it. Or let the Patient take now and then a little of this mixture with the Wine; Methridate two ounces, Venice Treacle one ounce, the powder of red Corals one ounce and an half, mix them. Also, *Philonium Persicum*, doth wonderfully defend the Head and Vital parts. If the Patient grow very thirsty, it is a sign that the Venom reacheth to the Heart: then give warm milk, and the powder of Red Coral, and apply to the Region of the Heart an Epithem made of Rose-Vinegar, Camphire, and Sanders; Sealed Earth made into a Plaister, with some convenient moisture, and applied, is much commended against the poyson of the Spider and Toad. Lastly, you must labour to bring the wound to suppuration, afterwards mundifie, incarnate, and cicatrize it. If the Creature which inflicted the wound were not venomous, the pain is less, and the danger not so great, and the Cure easily performed by ordinary Medicines.

CHAP. IV.

*Of a Wound in the Nerves, Tendons, Ligaments, Veins, and Arteries.*

Whether Nerve, Tendon, &c. are wounded, may be easily conjectured; and how, and with what weapon it was done, the Patient will be able to inform.

If a Sinew be hurt, there is great pain, hurt both of Sense and motion, sometimes a Fever, Inflammation, Convulsion, or Raving: a breach or wound of a Vein or Artery is known by profusion of blood. But whether the Vein or Artery be wounded, their proper signs must distinguish, viz. the Blood black and thick, with an equal fluxion, sheweth a wounded Vein: but if the Blood be thin and yellow, and cometh forth leaping, like the motion of the Pulse, then is the Artery wounded.

The Nervous Ligaments will endure Medicines of great force: If in Wounds of this nature a Tumor appear, and afterwards vanish away, it threatneth danger of Convulsion and Raving. If a Nerve be



wounded overthrow, and not cut asunder, it brings the more perill of Convulsion. An Artery cut overthrow is sooner joyned together, than if it were severed long-wise. An Artery cut is harder to cure than a Vein. Flux of blood is perillous, especially of an Artery, for unless it be stopped, it bringeth death unavoidably. Swooning, Convulsions, Raving &c. in this case, is an evil token. For the Cure, if the Nerve be prickt, begin thus: If there be any weapon, or any outward thing sticking in the Wound, let it be removed, and keep the part from injury; and if you fear Inflammation, open a vein, Let him lie in a warm Room, on a soft bed, and keep the Body loose by Clysters or laxative Medicines, regulated according to the nature of the humour peccant. Let his Diet be sparing, and small Beer his Drink. Let him lie as free from motion as may be; let not the cold Air, which is inimical to the Sinews, afflict him; nor too hot Air, for fear of Inflammation. Keep the Wound open, and if it be not wide enough, make it wider: then use such Medicines that may ease the pain, and draw forth the eruginous and fretting matter: Medicines which heat and dry without pain are good in this case, as the Oyl of Turpentine, Ireos, Sage, Elder; or Water, wherein Salt and Turpentine have been boyled; the Oyl of Earth-worms, and of the yelks of Eggs mixed; or the Oyl of Roses and Turpentine; or the Oyl of Turpentine and of Savin mixed; or Euphorbium one dram, boyled in two ounces of Oyl. For which purpose this Plaister is good: Take of the Roots of Marshmallows, the Meat of Barley, Beans and Lentils, of each a like quantity, as much as you think good: Boyl them in Lye; then put to it Oyl of Roses, Camomel, Dill and Turpentine, of each sufficient, and a little Saffron, so make a Plaister. If the Wound will come to suppuration, help it forward, and after mundifie it.

If the Nerve be cut, after you have observed the aforesaid general Rules, joyn the Nerve; then apply this Medicine: Take of Earth-worms prepared three drams, Horstail two drams, Betony and Nettles in powder, of each one dram; Olibinum three drams: incorporate them with the flesh of Snails beaten, and apply it four dayes: laying on some Glutinative Uloquent. Take of the lesser Centaury, Plantane, Houds-tongue, Mouse-e., both the Consound, Horse-tail, and Yarrow, of each one handful; Earth-worms a pound and an half; Oyl and Wine, of each one pound and an half: Vinegar four ounces: stamp them, and let them infuse seven dayes: then add the Suet of a Ram one pound: Pitch and Rozin, of each four ounces: boyl them to the consumption of the wine and Vinegar; and to the straining Ammoni-cum, Galbanum, Opoponax, dissolved in Vinegar, of each 5 drams: Turpentine one ounce and an half, Frankincense, Mastic, and Sarcocol, of each three drams: of Saffron two ounces; wax, as much as needeth, to make an Unguent; Both these are much commended by Jacobus Wickrus.

Chap. 5.  
If the Vein  
Blood. Seco  
ed, either w  
a Vein on th  
let it fly, an  
cution, m  
and rubbing  
furious cou  
which thier  
all Stipitch  
the wound,  
may easily  
and apply  
powder, m  
der is good  
Sanguis Dra  
white of as  
Take of Lap  
nick, Calve  
that lies up  
Barest  
the jaw-bone  
as Hart, an  
make it int  
Symptoms  
ter by chur

A Luxa  
Natu  
wound, les  
division on  
outward on  
ing, or the  
are filthy  
as it mar  
things of  
high, slip

If the Vein or Artery be cut, you must first labour to stanch the Blood. Secondly, to cure the Wound. First, the Blood may be stanch- ed, either with, or without Evacuation: With Evacuation, is to open a Vein on the contrary part, and sometimes near the Wounds; and to let it fly, and suddenly stop it again. To stay the Blood without Eva- cuation, must be performed by Cupping with Scarifying, binding and rubbing of the contrary part. Secondly, you must bide the furious course of it, by things that thicken, cool and astonish: Things which thicken the blood, are Rice, Lentils, Jujubes, Quinces; and all Stiptick Fruits. Cold water drunk, or laid upon the member near the wound, doth astonish it. If the Vein or Artery lie so, that you may easily come at it, tie the end with fine Silk, stitch up the wound, and apply astringive Powders upon it; and upon that lay on the like powder, mixed with the white of an Egg, with Stuphs. This Pow- der is good: *Frankincense, Aloes, Terra Sigillata, Bole-armenick, and Sanguis Draconis, of each equal parts; powder them finely, and with the white of an Egg, and the hairs of a Hare, let it be applied.* Of this, Take of *Lapis Hematilis, one ounce: Frankincense, Mastich, Bole-arme- nick, Cobwebs, green Galls, dried Frogs, Soot, white-mall, and the Meal that lies upon the walls of Mills and Bake-houses, of each two drams: Burnt Vitriol, Quick-Lime, and Gum Tragacanth, of each three drams; the shavings of the skin of a Ram, or He-Goat, Paper-Cards, the hairs of an Hare, and Cotton torrifed, of each one dram; Ases dung half an ounce; make it into fine powder, and use it as the former.* The accidental Symptoms both of this and other Wounds, you shall have in a Chap- ter by themselves, with their Cures.

CHAP. V.

*Of Luxations and Fractures.*

**A** Luxation, or Dislocation, is the slipping of a joynt from his Natural Position, and proper place, into some strange and un- wonted seat, whereby voluntary motion is hindered. A Fracture is a division or breaking of the bone: The causes of the first are either outward or inward; outward causes are falls, strokes, extension, wrench- ing, or the like; the Patient is able to inform you. The inward causes are filthy, slimy, and Phlegmatick Humors, falling between the joynts, as it many times happeneth in the Sciatica. Causes of Fractures, are things of weight falling upon the place, or the Patient falls from on high, slippeth, or such like.

A Dislocation is known by these signs, viz. a Tumor in the part where the bone lies, a pit of cavity in the place from whence the bone is departed, great pain, a difficulty or deprivation of motion in that member. The bone broken is easily seen; but whether the Fracture be overthwart, or long wayes, you may discern thus: If it be overthwart, by feeling you may discern the bone severall, and disjoyned, the bones make a noise and crackling, when you handle each side diversly. If it be long-wayes, the former signs appear not; and that part appeareth thicker than ordinary, uneven, and painful.

Of bones that slip out of their places, some are easily reposed, and some more hardly; the knee easily slippeth out, and is easily put in again, the fingers and shoulders may easily be reduced. The Jaw-bone, the Shoulder-blade, *Ostali*, the heel-bone, the hand and middle of the foot do commonly knit in fourteen or one and twenty dayes: the Hip in fifty dayes, and the foot in sixty, If the Patient give it rest. If in the setting the Bone crack, or make a noise, and the member look like the other, it will be well, the Elbow seldom slippeth out and is not put in again without much trouble. If the borders of the Bones are broken, it is the worse. If a Wound, Inflammation, a violent pain accompany the Luxation, it is dangerous and hard to be cured. If it hath continued long, and is grown Callous, it is hard to be cured. If a Child happen to have a dislocation, and it be not reduced, the member groweth little or nothing.

Likewise in a fracture the Bones of the Arms, Legs, Thighs and Fingers are not very dangerous, the farther from the head the better. A Fracture accompanied with a violent pain, Inflammation, wound in the flesh, or contusion is very bad, because it cannot be dealt withal, till those accidents be first removed. In declining age, and Cholerick persons the Cure is difficult; in very aged persons impossible, the older the Patient is, the worse; a rib broken is dangerous. The breach of the Bone or Gristle of the Nose is bad, worse if the flesh be wounded.

In a Fracture of the Skull these are dangerous symptoms; when the Membrane is unmoveable, black or evil-coloured: loss of Wits, resolution or distension of the Nerves. A Transverse Fracture is most tolerable, a slope Fracture with loose fragments is worse; but if it be sharp-pointed, it is worst of all.

The Skull asketh thirty dayes to be joyned: The Arm and Legges forty dayes; the Cubit thirty; a Rib one and twenty; the Shoulder and Thigh forty: the Bone of the Nose is joyned in eight or ten days.



For the Cure, first of a dislocation, the Bone must be stretched out, and compelled to its proper place. But the operation must be warily and variously handled, according to the nature of the part, and the disposition, situation, and knitting of the Bones, tendons and Nerves. Sometimes it may be done by the hand, and sometimes not without hands and Engines: when it is in, you must labour to keep it so, by strengthening the member, anoint it with Oyl of Roses, Myrtles and Mastich, then lay on a linnen Cloath dipped first in Oyl of Roles, upon that Cloths wet in the white of an Egg, and put upon it some astringent Powders: then rowl it up with Clothes wet in Water and Vinegar, then splent it with stiffe Leather or Pastebord, bind it not too hard for fear of inflammation, then leave it so seven or ten days, unless any symptome arise. Then open it, and bathe it with warm water, to discusse the superfluities, and ease pain, and do it up as before, and bind it a little harder. If there be inflammation, wound, or fracture with the dislocation, it is dangerous, and many times the placing of the bone must be differred till the inflammation be eased; if it be with a wound or fracture, the following discourse of the Cure of fractures will instruct you. If any Callous hardnes be gathered between the luxated bones, the place must be fomented with the decoction of Marsh and common Mallows; or afterwards it must be anointed with the Unguent of Marshmallows, and lay on a Plaister of Diachilon Magnum.

A fracture must be thus dealt with, viz. let the Patient sit or lye in a place convenient, or such as the nature of the member requireth, let two with their hands, one under the member, and the other above, or one to the left hand, the other to the right, joyn the broken bone: if you have need of more force, prepare large Tyalls of Linnen, and let two draw, one one way, and the other another, and pull the member as much as is needful; but beware of violent pulling and extension of the member, lest vehement pain, Feavers, Convulsions, and resolutions be procured: when the bone is in its place and joyned, labour to keep it so, and bind it up as is taught before in binding up of a dislocation, and lay it best for the Patient's ease; open it not in fifteen dayes, unless pain, Inflammation, Itching, or some such like symptome; in the mean while, foment the member round about it with the Oyl of Roses, Myrtles and Mastich. After fifteen dayes open it again, and foment it with Wine, wherein Wormwood, Roses, and a little Salt hath been boiled, and bind it up as before, till seven dayes be past, then open it again, and apply *Emplastrum Oxycroceum* upon it. If the fracture be in the lower parts, move not the Belly by Clyster, or otherwise; if the body be full of blood, open a Vein, because it hinders desfluxions. In the beginning let his Diet be but slender,

Slender, after the tenth day let him eat freely of such things as increase the gender thick, and cleaving juices; as Rice, Wheat, the intrails of Sheep, and the feet of Calves and Sheep, and such like.

If there be a contusion with the fracture, you must not roul up the member as before you are taught, but slopewise on either side of the contusion, that so you may come to dress the contusion and not open the member, the like you may do if there be a wound; but if there be any small splints that prick the member, they must be taken out before. If you find that the Callus grow not, fast enough, apply such things as draw nourishment to the place: as warm water, moderate frictions, and a plaister of Pitch. If it grow over great, apply that which may diminish it, rub it much, and apply a place of Lead to the part. If it be Inflamed, foment the part with warm water, and Oyl of Roses, and such things which are appropriated to allay such Distempers; and apply no splints, till the inflammation be removed. If the part be vexed with Itch or Pustules, anoint it with *unguentum populeon*, *diapompholigos* or *album*. If the part gangrene, scarrifie it, and deal with it as you shall be taught in its proper place.

## CHAP. VI.

### Of Accidents commonly happening to wounded Persons.

I Should first begin with immoderate bleeding, being commonly the first Accident; but to avoid needless Repetitions, I shall refer the Reader to the fourth Chapter of this Book, where I have sufficiently performed this task.

If immoderate pain vex the Patient, as many times it doth; Simples mitigating pain may be made use of, viz. common Oyl, the Oyl of Roses and Poppies, the crums of Wheaten-bread steeped in hot water, the white of an Egg, Women's or Cows milk, Sheeps-grease; you may make compound Medicines of the root of Nightshade finely powdered, and Hogs-grease, and make an Oyntment, or you may use *unguentum à Salano*, or the white of an Egg and Stiptick Wine, and such like. Then you must consider if the Distemper be hot or cold; if hot, whether it is of the whole Body, or the part only: if the whole Body be distempered, it is a Fever, and you must seek the Cure in the second book; if the Distemper be in the Member only, foment it with the decoction of Plantane, Roses, and such like, with the Oyl of Roses, *unguentum album*, *populeon*, &c. If the Member suffer by a cold distemper, which you may know by the

swart

swart colour, loofness, and softness of the part; then you must apply heating Medicines: *unguentum Basilicon* will do very well in this case.

If a Convulsion happeneth, you must consider what is the cause; if repletion or fulness of phlegm be the cause, let the place wherein he lyeth be naturally or artificially hot or dry: let him lie free from perturbation and trouble, let his sleep be moderate, and only in the night. Let him be very moderate and sparing in his Diet, which ought to be mere Eggs, Barley, Cream, the flesh of Chickens, Capons and Hens; Raisins, Pine-Kernels, sweet-Almonds; of Herbs, Sage, wild Time, Hyssop, Marjoram, and such like. Let the phlegmatick humor be purged, and the convulsed part anointed, with the Oyl of Nard, Bays, Castor, Rue, Nutmegs, &c. *Vesalius* commendeth this following Oyntment: Take of Oyl of sweet Almonds, Hen-grease, and the marrow of Calves-feet, of each nine grams: Oyl of Violets six ounces, the feet of a Kid and Calf, of each fifteen ounces: boyl them in the decoction of Mallows, the root of Marsh-mallows, and the seeds of Quinces, till it be consumed, then strain it, and bring it into the form of a Liniment. If Convulsion come by repletion of blood and inflammation, open the middle Vein, and draw blood at several times, give Clysters, and deal with this inflammation as with another. If emptiness be the cause of the Convulsion, direct a moist Diet, rest of body and mind, and much sleep. To the Diet aforesaid, add small stone fishes, let his drink be Barley-water, and if a little Liquorish and Cinamon be soddin therein, it will be the better; Herbs proper for him, are Lettuce, Spinach, Arach, Borrage, Bugloss, Mallows, and such like: of Fruits, Mellons, Gourds, Damask-prunes, Peaches, ripe Grapes, &c. The conserve of Violets, Borrage, Bugloss, *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, and bathe his body or the part with warm Water and Oyl, or anoint with the Oyl of sweet Almond. Be sure you remember to have respect to the greatness of the Disease, the season of the Year, the Age, Strength and Constitution of the Patient.

Swooning often happening to wounded persons: if violent pain be the cause, labour to appease the pain: you have Rules enough before going. If it be occasioned by unmeasurable Evacuation, cast Rose water or cold water into his Face, use strong Ligatures and Frictions to the extrem parts.

If some venomous quality, by reason of a bite of some venomous Creature, or wound with some venomous weapon, be the cause of this Symptome, you must seek the remedy in the third Chapter.

If Raving and Madnefs happen, appoint a mean Diet betwixt hot and cold: labour to provoke sleep, to loosen the belly, and to expel all perturbations of the mind. If the body abound with blood, and nothing



nothing forbid it, open a Vein; then alter and prepare the humors with Juleps made of the Syrup of Roses, Violets, Water-Lillies, Poppies and Endive; then empty the Body with Manna, Cassia, or some such gentle thing; or with an Emollient Clyster: but above all, have special regard to the wound, because pain there may be the cause; therefore let it be often opened, and bathed with Vinegar and Oyl of Roses, or something that may powerfully appease the pain.

If the Palsy happen, you must be very circumspect, and appoint such a Diet as for the Convulsion; let his Drink be honeyed-water, and boyl therein Sage and Cinamon: or this, *Take of Cinamon two ounces, Ginger half an ounce, Grains of Paradise, Galanga and long Pepper, of each one dram; Cardamoms one dram and an half, Nutmegs, Cloves and Mace, of each one dram; boyl them in water to the wasting of a third part, strain it, and sweeten it, and let the Patient drink two or three ounces in a morning.* For Medicines internal or external, go to the seventh Chapter of the second Book.

If the wounded person be collicive, and he begin to suffer prejudice thereby, give him some Lenitive Medicines, or a Suppository. If he suffer by stoppage of Urine, give him somewhat, which gently provoketh Urine: see the 68 Chapter of the Second Book. If Vomiting happen, and it increaseth not in due season, *Take Leven half a pound, the juyce of Mint extracted with Vinegar as much as is needful, boyl them into the form of a Cataploism, lay it warm to the Stomach.* If the Patient feel heat, and astonishing about the wound, anoint the wound with the Oyl of Camphire. If the wound swell with heat, and pitteth under the finger, boyl Water-Cresses and Water-Lillies in Rose-Vinegar, and apply it. If there appear the Flux of the Sinews, which is a viscous liquor from the Nerves; dress it with a vulnerary oyl, and lay on *Emplastrum Sticticum*. If the wound putrifie, and goeth back from healing, swelleth with heat, looks black, blew, or swart: *Take of Litharge one pound, Allum one pound and an half, Salt two ounces, Frankincense four ounces; Roman Gum five ounces, of Wine, Water and Vinegar, of each one pound: boyl them a quarter of an hour, and apply it warm.* If there grow a Pustulous Fistula, that is, when the Wound is healed too soon, without any firm foundation, so that it putrifie underneath, and break out again: In this Case Paracelsus adviseth this Cerate to be used, *Take of common Oyl, Virgins wax, and Litharge of Gold in powder of each one pound: boyl them together into the form of a Cerate, to which add Opoponaxe prepared with Vinegar and Mummy, of each three ounces: Aristolocbia, Mastick, Frankincense and Mirrh, of each half an ounce, Turpentine three ounces, Oyl of Bayes two ounces, Camphire two drams: mix them upon the fire, afterwards*

First Pl  
most p  
abundance  
First, the  
er the high  
ration of a  
lowness of  
doth either  
much blood  
cutteth a T  
the Tumors  
bearing pain  
sometimes  
may be  
To this  
rugin was  
is seen by  
matter ma  
body is in  
times turne  
In the C  
fore first le  
which he  
good, he co  
rive the mu  
gacous, an  
or beat back  
Acetis, Vi  
Myriels,  
leaves of  
bane, How  
you may  
gining of  
flower to  
anes cugn

wards make it up with Oyl of Camomil. So much for the general Cure of Wounds, and their accidents.

CHAP. VII.

*Of Sanguine Tumors.*

**F**irst Phlegmon is a Tumor begotten of pure blood, and is for the most part incident to the fleshy parts, the Antecedent cause is abundance of blood. In which Tumor are three things considerable: First, the part that sendeth it, either by reason of its plenty, strength or streightness of passages: Secondly, the part receiving it, either by reason of weakness, largeness, or opening of the passages, or by the lowness of its situation. Thirdly, the part drawing it, which is doth either through heat or pain within it. The conjoynd cause is much blood in the part, which before it cometh to suppuration, causeth a Tumor, Redness, heat and pain; but when it is suppurate, the Tumor is soft, yielding and growing to a point, a pricking and beating pain: last of all the Skin breaketh, and the Pus issueth out, sometimes if the humors be thin, and skin of the same Nature, the Tumor may be resolved without suppuration.

To this Tumor happeneth evil accidents sometimes, if the Chyrurgion want Care or Skill. Sometimes it turneth to corruption, and is seen by its leaden black colour, and stinking savour. Sometimes the matter maketh a regression, and the Tumor diminisheth, but the whole body is inflamed with a Fever, [and such like accidents: And sometimes turneth into a Schirrous hardness.

In the Cure, the Antecedent cause must be first removed: Therefore first let the Chyrurgion open the Liver-vein, or any other Vein which he finds hath more affinity with the sending part; if he see good, he may bleed him in the opposite part for a revulsion, and derive the matter to some part adjacent, by Cupping, Friction or Ligatures; and apply to the part affected Medicines that cool and repel, or beat back the flowing humors; and of this sort are these Simples. Acatia, Vinegar, Balsastines, Bolearmenick, Camphire, sealed-Earth, Myrtles, Pomegranate-peels, unripe Grapes, Vine-leaves, the leaves of Cyprus, Plantane, Oak, Sumach, Night-shade, Henbane, Houfbeck, Lettuce, Purslane, Roses, and such like. Of these you may make Fomentations or Cataplasms, to be used in the beginning of the Tumor, to hinder and beat back the blood which floweth to feed it. Take this Caution, that in some cases these Medicines ought not to be medled with, to wit, when the humor is Malignant

DANE

nant or thick: or if the Tumor be Critical: or upon some of the Glandulous parts.

Next you must deal with the conjoynd Cause, or the blood impacted in the part affected, If you judge that the blood is thin, and apt to be dissolved, dissolving Medicines are to be applied. This Cataplasma is good, Take the leaves of Mallows, Melilot and Camomel, of each one handful: the seeds of Dill, Flax and Fenugreek of each half an ounce, boil them to the Consumption of the water, then beat them in a Stone-mortar: and add to it the Oyl of Dill and Camomel, of each one ounce: a little Honey and Leven, and make it into the form of a Cataplasma. But if the Matter be thick, and not fit to be dissolved, then labour to bring it to suppuration. For which these simples are proper, warm Water, Butter, Wheaten-bran or Wheaten-bread, the grease of an Hog, Calf, Goose, &c. Grease tryed from the wooll of a Sheep, Rozin, Pitch, Figs, Saffron, Frankincense, &c. Of these you may make Cataplasms, and remove them twice a day. If the hot intertemperature doth stir up a Fever, let the diet be ordered, and such Medicines administered as the nature of the Fever requireth: See the Second Book, among the Chapters of Fevers: when you find it very soft and well suppurated, open it with a Lancet where it is softest, and in the most convenient place for the Matter to come forth: afterwards mundifie, incarnate and Cicatrize it.

A Carbuncle is a Sanguine Tumor, the antecedent cause of it is black, thick, hot and faculent blood flowing to the place; the conjoynd cause is the settling of the blood in the part as you have heard before. The signs of a Carbuncle are sometimes but one, and sometimes many small Pustules like burnt Blisters, which being broken, a crusty Ulcer ensueth. If it be a pestilential, the crust is black or ash-colour, about it redness, inflammation and grievous pain; the Patient is troubled with Loathing, and Vomiting, loss of Appetite, Palpitation of the Heart, and Swooning.

Carbuncles for the most part are attendants of the Plague and Epidemical Causes. If they come upon the Emunctuaries, there is very great danger, lest the venomous humors fall upon some principal part. If it break out about the Stomach or Jaws, there is danger of Choaking. If the colour be first red, after yellowish, it is laudable; but if it be black or blew, it is dangerous: If the accidents which accompany the Disease vanish, there is hopes.

In the Cure, first have regard to the antecedent Cause, which is thick hot blood, and must be altered and evacuated; to alter the quality of the blood, give him broth of Chickens, with Lettuce, Purslane, Pomegranates and Lemons; and his drink Barley-water: give him Medicines cooling and concocting: as Juleps made of Syrup of

Vine-

Chap. 7.  
Vinegar, Boil  
Red water of  
pretens, you  
case which  
the Second  
letting, supple  
which we  
fluxion of  
cuticous p  
ones in the  
lay defende  
armonically  
convenient  
talle of a C  
young Pige  
must be tak  
the Tumor  
ter, Horle  
otherwise  
or ripening  
nervous, I  
less of it,  
good Venen  
read it in  
apply it w  
This C  
heads, of  
nugreek, of  
Figs, Le  
radants:  
it.  
Then ye  
ly Elear.  
good.  
Take the  
collior of  
Plast v:  
c.s, the ye  
This  
and puri  
Gange  
inflammi  
Spha. alu



Vinegar, Pomgranates, Citrons, Lemons and Endive; and the distilled water of Lettuce, Purslane, and the like. But if the Pestilence be present, you must have respect to the malignity, and give such Medicines which strengthen the Heart and Vitals: See the 90 Chapter of the Second Book: the quantity must be diminished either by blood-letting, cupping, or medicines, as gentle Purgers or Clysters: in all which be well advised, if the Plague be present. If there be a great fluxion of blood to the part, lay on discutients and repressings, discutients you have before. Take this Caution, that you apply gentle ones in the beginning, and stronger when the matter is gathered, to lay defensive to the adjacent parts; as the Oynment of Roses, Bole-armonick, or the Oyl of Mirtles and Vinegar; also attractives are convenient, as hot bread, the warm Lungs of beasts newly killed, the taile of a Cock made bare, and a little Salt put into it and applyed, or young Pigeons slit alive, and applyed warm. The cause conjoynd must be taken away by Chyrurgions or Medicine: first scarrifying of the Tumor (if nothing forbid it) deeply, and wash it with warm water, Horsleeches are good. When the matter cannot be dispersed, or otherwise dealt with, you must apply such things as have an altering or ripening quality, as is aforesaid. If the Carbuncle be very venomous, this is commended, viz. Take a great Onion, and cut off the head of it, and pick out the core or middle part; fill the hollow place with good Venice-treacle, paste on the head again with a little Leven, and roast it in the Embers; when it is soft peel it, and beat it in a Morter, and apply it warm to the Sore, and renew it every six hours.

This Cataplasme is much commended, Take of Onions and Garlicke heads, of each of them four: one Lilly-root, the Seeds of Flax and Fenugreek, of each one spoonful: Snails with their shells four or five, four Eggs, Leven as much as a Walnut, Barrows-grease as much as two walnuts: beat them all in a morter very well, warm it, and apply it.

Then you must mundifie and heal it; but if there remain a crusty Escar, you must resolve it; for which purpose this Plaister is good.

Take the flower of Wheat and Barley, of each three ounces, with the decoction of Mallows, Violets, and Alihea Roots, and make into a solid Plaister: then add to it fresh Butter and Hogs-grease, of each two ounces, the yolks of two new laid Eggs.

This mollifieth the crustiness and easeth pain. If it be corrupt and purrified, you must make use of incision, cautery, or hot Iron.

Gangrena is a mortification of any part occasioned by exceeding inflammation, but not fully accomplished, but some sense remaineth. Sphacelus is when the part is utterly deprived of sense, &c is mortified:

so that if it be stricken, burnt or lanced, it feeleth no hurt. The fleshy parts are not only subject to this, but even the Nerves and Bones. The cause is adust blood flowing to or lodged in the part: Outward causes are cold Air or Medicines, unmeasurable Heat or Venome, Ligatures, Compressions, Contusions.

Gangrena is known by the loss of sense, though not wholly black or swartish colour; there is pain, heat, and beating of the Arteries. In *Sphacelus*, there is a total loss of sense, black colour, putrified, stinking, rotten; being pressed, yieldeth to the bottom, and returneth not.

The first is difficult to cure, the other more, and not without cutting; when the Bones and Sinews are affected, it is incurable, unless it be cured in the beginning, the part affected dieth, and it creepeth to the near parts, to the destruction of the whole Body.

In the Cure, first temper the blood by a cooling Diet as before, and give preparing Juleps, such as are afore prescribed. Diminish the same by blood-letting, if nothing forbid it, and by gentle Purges; as Cassia, Fistula, Tamarinds, Fumitory, Catholicon, Diaprunum Lenitive, and the like: Lay repressing Medicines to the parts round about: Take of the Oyl of Roses and Mirrh, of each three ounces and an half, the Juice of Plantane and Nightshade, of each two ounces, boyl them to the consumption of the Juices: add to it white-wax one ounce and an half, the Meal of Beans, Lentils and Barley, of each half an ounce: of all the Saunders two drams and an half, Bolearmick one ounce, the Powder of Myrtles one dram: mix them for a defensive.

Give the Patient such things inwardly as cheer the Heart, and revive the Spirits.

This done, draw up the forces against the conjoynd cause: and first, if nothing prohibit, bleed your Patient, and scarrifie the place, and wash it with water and salt; cut the member, or burn it with a hot Iron, and leave nothing that is putrified, to preserve the rest of the Body: then apply Medicines, whose property is to dry and resolve.

*Quercetanus* prescribes two Unguents of great force for the purpose: Take of Honey two ounces, Crocus-martis and Crocus-veneris, of each half an ounce: Mirrh and Round-Birthwort, of each one dram: Camphire one dram and an half, the Phlegme of Vitriol six ounces, boyl them to the consistence of an unguent: then add of Mercury Precipitate half an ounce, and make an unguent. Or this, Take of Butter of Arsenick two ounces, Mercury precipitate half an ounce, Oyl of Mirrh two drams: mix them with Honey, being first washed with the Juice of Celandine.

When the putrefaction cease: h to go any farther, remove the Escar as you were taught before; then mundifie and heal it.

## C H A P. VIII.

## Of cholerick Tumors.

**F**irst *Erysipelas*, to *Ignis Sacer*, is a Cholerick Fluxion, chiefly consisting berwixt or about the Skins. The antecedent Cause is Choller abounding and flowing to the part. The conjoynd cause is the same Humor there settled: The first is known by a Choletick Constitution and Diet. The second is known by a great Heat, small tumor, reddish or yellow colour, soon vanishing in touching, and quickly returning: The pain is not with pulsation and beating, but biting and pricking, and the Patient is sensible of the motion of a Tertian Fever. *Erysipelas* about the head is a hard thing to cure, & it easily gets into the Face, and there spreadeth; for the flesh there is thin, and the humor light and active. If it happen to the Womb of a Woman with Child, it is deadly; if it lye near the Bone, it is dangerous; if it return from the outward parts to the inward, it is very evil: the like judge, if it come to suppuration, which it seldom doth, but is sent forth by transpiration.

First, order the Air to be cool and moist where your Patient lodgeth and his Diet of the same nature. Bleed not, unless blood be mixed with Choller, which is called *Erysipelas Phlegmonosum*: Then prepare the Humors with Juleps convenient, made of the Symps of Vinegar Simple, Bugloss, Maiden-hair, Violets, Water-Lillies, Endive and Succory, and their distilled Waters, or others of the like nature: When you have prepared the humor, purge it either by Clyster or Potion. This Potion is much commended: Take of the Best *Rhubarb* four scruples, the Flowers of *Violets* and *Borage*, of each one dram: the decoction of *Tamarinds*, sufficient: infuse the flowers of *Rhubarb* ten houres, strain them, and dissolve therein *Diacatholicon* three drams, Symp of *Roses* two ounces, and make a Potion. *Vesalius*, you may alter; or make variety of Potions, as you see occasion: Or empty your body with this Clyster: Take *Marsh* and common *Mallows*, *Violet* leaves, *Cammomil*, and *Lettuce*, of each one handfull; the seeds of *Annise*, *Fennel*, and the four great cold seeds, of each one dram: the flowers of *Borage*, *Bugloss*, *Violets* and *Water-Lillies*, of each one pugil; *Polypodium* and *Senna*, of each one ounce: make a Decoction to a pint, of which add of *Cassia* one ounce, *Diacatholicon* half an ounce, oyl of *Violets* two ounces, make a Clyster.

Add strength and aid to the part, by cooling and repelling Medicines, viz. Epithems and Liniments made of the juyce or distilled Water of *Nightshade*, *Houfleeke*, *Stonecrop*, *Fleabane* and *Henbane*, *Purslane*, *Lettuce*, *Endive*, *Succory*, and such like; the Oyl of



Roses and Water-lillies, Vinegar, Saunders, the white of Eggs, the Musilage of Quince-seeds, &c. Compounds are the Unguent of Roses, or *Refrigerans Galeni*, and such like.

The conjoynd cause must be removed by Medicines which have power to evacuate and discusse: Take of the Liharge of Gold one ounce, washed Ceruse six drams, the juyce of Plantane and romans milk, of each one ounce and an half, Oyl of Roses three ounces, white wax as much as sufficeth to make an Unguent.

There are other Tumors which do commonly associate with Erysipelas, viz. *Herpes Ercdens* or *Miliaris*, which are called Chollerick Pustles, and the Shingles. The first is caused of a thick and sharp sort of yellow Choller flowing into the part, which doth feed upon and eat the Skin. *Herpes Miliaris* are small Pustules rising upon the Skin, like the seeds of Millet, from whence it hath its name: It is caused of yellow Choller, mixed with thin Phlegm: These Humors abounding in the Body will declare.

The Cure of these differ little from the former; appoint the same Diet and Medicines externally and internally, making this difference: In the first, let the Medicines preparing be more cutting, and the purging Medicines stronger, because of the thickness of the Humor; & let the outward medicines be more powerfully discutient. In the Cure of *Herpes Miliaris*, observe the same Diet to your Preparatives, and such things as cut Phlegm: To your purges, such as purge Phlegm. External Medicines may by an easie Brain be regulated, little differing from the former. This Cataplasme is very: Take of Pigeons dung fresh, as much as you please; mix it with a beaten flower, and apply it cold, and cover it with a Colewort Leaf, renew it twice in 24 hours.

## CHAP. IX.

### Of Phlegmatick Tumors.

**O**edema is a loose Tumor without pain, proceeding of phlegmatick Humors flowing into some part. The Tumor is loose and soft, yieldeth to the finger, and retaineth the Pit after the finger is gone.

This Disease is more prone to Resolution than Suppuration, sometimes it turneth to Nodes and Knots in the flesh.

Order you Patient with a Diet contrary in quality to the Disease, viz. Heating, drying and making thin. Then prepare the Humor for Evacuation; these Simples are good, Betony, Sage, Hyssop, Balm, Polymountain, Penny-royal, Calamint, Origanum, Marjerome,

**M**arjorome, Southernwood, Mint, Wormwood, Germaner, Ground-pine, Cowslips, Agrimony, Maiden-hair, the cold Seeds, Lignum Vitæ, the roots of Cyprus, Acorus, Ircos, Galanga, Elicampane, Smallage, Parsly, Grass, Alparagus, Butchers Broom, Fennel, &c. Of these you may make compound medicines, to prepare the Humors for purging. This Apozem is of good virtue: Take the root of Ircos and Galanga, of each six drams, Smallage, Parsly and Asparagus, of each one ounce, of Betony, Balm, Germaner, Groundpine, and Maiden-hair, of each one handful, the seeds of Annise, Fennel, Caraway and Cummin, of each two ounces, the seeds of Mellons six drams, of Raisins stoned two ounces, the seeds of Carthamus two ounces, Senna one ounce and an half, the Flowers of Broom, red Cicers, Stechas and Buglos, of each one pugil: make a Decoction, of which take two pound, and dissolve therein Honey of Roses, and Syrup of wormwood, of each two ounces: Sugar as much as sufficeth, Aromaticum Rosatum two drams and an half: make an Apozem, and clarify it for six Doses.

When the Humors are thus prepared, you must come to purging them with such Medicines as purge the phlegmatick Humors; the next Book will furnish you with store of such Medicines, so that I need not here insert them. Outwardly fortifie the part with this or the like Unguent: Take of Bole-armonick and Acatis, of each one ounce, Cyprus half an ounce, Aloes and Mirrh, of each five drams, Saffron half a dram, the juyce of Coleworts two ounces, Oyl of Roses four ounces, Vinegar one dram and an half, Wax sufficient to make an Unguent. Concerning the matter impacted in the parts, you must consider whether it be thin and may be dissolved, or thick and subject to suppuration.

If the Humor be thin, lay on this, or a Plaister of this nature.

Take of Cow-dung one pound and an half, Olibanum, Syrax, Moss of Trees, Calamus Aromaticus, Spicknard, wormwood, of each half an ounce: make them up with Viasegar, and the decoction of Coleworts into the form of a Plaister.

If you find the matter will come to suppuration, apply this Plaister.

Take of Mallews, Brank usine, the Root of Lillies, Onions, Snails, Leven and Flax Seed, of each a like quantity sufficient: boyl them, and beat them in a mortar with Hogs-grease or fresh Butter, to the form of a Plaister.

If you fear that the inward parts may suffer in the mean while, provide internal and external Medicines for the same: Take of Conserve of the flowers of Stechas and Rosemary, of each one ounce: of the Rinds of Citrons preserved half an ounce, Emblicks and Mirobolans preserved two drams: Species Diacinnamon two scruples, with

Syrup of Citron pills make an Electuary, whereof let the Patient take the quantity of a Nut an hour before meat.

The Aposthume being ripe, open it with an hot Iron Caustick; then mundifie it with *Unguentum Apostolorum*, or cleanse it with this following Unguent: Take of Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Rozin, Turpentine, Pitch, Ballocks Tallow and Oyl, of each a quantity: Dissolve the Gums in Vinegar, and then let them boil a little with the rest upon the Fire. Afterwards incarnate and cicatrize it as you do other Ulcers.

Out of this phlegmatick Humor is sometimes ingendred a flatulous and windy Tumor, which is gathered either under the skin, or under the Membranes, which cover and cloath the Bones and Muscles.

They appear with a certain brightness and shining, resist the touch; and being smitten, sound like a Bladder: the pain is extensive and stretching. Let his Drink be such as expels and prevents such Humors: Let the Humors be prepared by Wine, expelling Juleps, and the Body emptied by Carminative Medicines and Clysters, and convenient purges.

Then you must attenuate, discusse, and scatter the conjoynd Cause; these Simples are fit for the purpose, Annise, Fennel, Dill, Caraway, Carrots, Cummin, Siler Montanum, Smallage, Parsly, Rue, Bay-berries, Oyl of Rue, Bays, Flower-de-luce, Nard, Spike, Nuts, Euphorbium and such like. Of these and other Ingredients of the like Nature are many Unguents and Plaisters formed.

Take of the Oyl of Camomil, Dill, bitter Almonds and Rue, of each one ounce; the seeds of Annise, Fennel, Carrots, Caraway, Amcos and Rue, of each half an ounce, White-wine three ounces; boil it to the consumption of the White-wine, strain it, and add Wax sufficient to make an Unguent.

The expert Chyrurgion ought to compound and alter his Unguents, Plaisters, and all his Medicines, according to the Constitution of the Patient, and Nature of the Tumor; for which it is impossible to lay down certain Rules. Give inwardly Diacinnamon, Diacalamentum, Aromaticum Rosatum, Disgalanga, Dianisum, and such like; and lay a Plaster of the same nature to the Stomach. If a watry Tumor is ingendred in any part, or all over the body, see the 58 Chapter of the second Book.

Siruma is a Tumor in which underneath, certain Glandules made of Matter and Blood, and inclosed with a membrane, do grow: They have their place for the most part about the Neck, Arm-holes, and sometimes in other places. The principal Cause is Phlegmatick Humors: sometimes falls, strokes, or great Surfeits may be the cause.

They



They that have narrow and short Fore-heads, flat Temples, and broad Jaws are subject to this Disease. This Tumor seldom comes to supuration: if it doth, it gathereth again: The greater the Tumor, and the deeper it is rooted, the harder the Cure.

For the Cure of the Struma, or Kings-Evil, appoint a Diet that will heat, dry and attenuate; then prepare the Humors. Take of Oxymel compounded, Syrup of Stachas, Honey of Roses, of each half an ounce: the distilled water of Scabius and Fumitory, of each one ounce, mix it for one dose, and take thereof as often as need requireth. Then purge with Diaphenicon, Diacatholicon, Indi majoris, Hierapicra, Pill Cochix de Agarico, and such like. It is good also to cleanse the Blood by Urine: Take of Pilewort three handfuls, Philopendula two handfuls, Pimpernel, Mossey, Tansey, red Col-worts, Madder, of each one handful, the roots of Fennel Parsly, round Birthwort, Radish, and stinking Gladwin, of each half a handful: the seeds of Nettles, Juniper and Bay-berries of each one dram: boil them in Whit-wine to the consumption of half, sweeten it with Honey, give every second or third day three ounces in the morning. If the conjoynd cause be fit to be resolved, then use means that can mollifie, attenuate, disperse and seperate; such as Diachylon Commune and Magnum, Diapalma; many unguents, Liniments and Plaisters may be made for the purpose aforesaid, which I here omit. If the matter be fit for resolution, then have you two wayes to empty it, that is suppuration and incision. This plaister is good to ripen it: Take the roots of Marsh-mallows and Lillies, of each one pound, boyl them soft, and beat them in a mortar: Garlick and Onions boiled, of each three ounces; the Oyl of Lillies and Butter, of each two ounces; Hogs grease and Goose grease, of each two ounces and an half: the meal of wheat, Equegreik and Flax seed sufficient, the Yelks of two Eggs; make a plaister, when it is ripe, open it with an instrument, or ruptory of Cantharides of Artlnick. If it appear filthy, cleanse it with Unguentum Apostolorum Egyptiacum, or such like, afterwards incarnate and Cicatrize it. If it submit not to medicines, it must be taken out by manual operation, which only belongeth to an expert and able Chyrurgion: seeing the whole Cure is difficult, and ought to be managed by an able Brain, and skilful hand, I omit any farther discourse of it, it being my task principally to instruct people of mean Capacity.

There are three other phlegmatick tumors, which lye under the general notion: the first is called *Atheroma*, and is a tumor without pain and charge or colour, which is a humor contained in the Membranes or Nervous Coats: it is clammy, like sodden Meal, Starch, and sometimes mixed (as it were) with hairs, pieces of

bones, &c. *Melisenis* is a Tumor somewhat thinner, and almost of the substance of Honey, otherwise agreeing with the former. *Steatoma* is much like the two former, save that the humor contained is like suet; and the Tumor doth encrease, and is much enlarged in process of time: the inward causes of them all are phlegmatick Humors, with which the Body doth abound. The first is thus known, the Tumor is long and ridged; being pressed returneth to its place again, but slowly, by reason of the clamminess of the humor; the second Tumor is rounder and thinner, being pressed yieldeth and returneth speedily; the last is hard, yieldeth not to the pressing of the finger, for the humor is like Suet.

The first must be dealt with by corrosives and incision; the second by discutients, corrosives and incision; the last no otherwise but not incision alone.

The Diet, preparatives and purges, which are proper for *Oedema*, are here to be used. If you find the Tumor fit for resolution, apply discutitive plaisters, a plaister made of *Cyclamen* is much commended.

Take of *Cyclamen*, otherwise called Sow-bread, as much as you please, Hogs-grease and Brimstone, of each equal parts, beat them into a form of a plaister. If it will not be resolved, consume it with eating Medicines; among many of this nature, this following is commended.

Take of Scales or flower of Brass half an ounce, of red Arsenick and black Ellebore, of each two drams, with Oyl of Roses, make a plaister; make a deep Eschar, and make incision through it, and apply a Caustick.

The Cure may be performed only by incision, but the Chyrurgion must beware that the Tunicle which holdeth the matter be not broken, lest some part of the humor be left, to the hindrance of his operation.

## CHAP. X.

### Of Melancholy Tumors.

**T**He true and legitimate Scirrhus is a Tumor hard without pain yet sensible. The antecedent cause is Melancholy, abounding in the Body; the conjoynd cause is the humor fixed in the part. The first is known by the Melancholy constitution of the Patient a diet and course of life, which is apt to breed Melancholy. The second, viz. the conjoynd cause is known by a Tumor hard and scarce yielding to the touch, in colour between red and black, of dull sense.

These

These Tumors if they be timely and carefully dealt with, may be cured by resolution; Sometimes they become indurate, and sometimes they degenerate into a Cancer.

Let the Patient live in a temperate Air, let him use moderate Exercise, and avoid excessive affections and passions of the mind; let his Body be kept soluble, and let his meat be such as is of good Nourishment and easie Digesture, and let him therein be moderate.

Let the Melancholy humors be prepared by Juleps made of the Symps of Fumitory, Borrage, Buglofs, Endive, Succory, Rhubarb, Harts tongue, Epithymum and Vinegar, with their distilled waters. This Apozem is very effectual.

Take the root and leaves of Sorrel, Borrage, Buglofs and Fumitory, the leaves of Maidenhair, Succory, Endive, Dandelion and Hops of each on handful: Balm half an handful, the four great cold seeds beaten, of each two drams, the seeds of Purslane two drams, Annise and Fennel, of each one dram, Raisins of the Sun stoned six drams Polypody one ounce, Senna one ounce and an half, Time and Epithymum, of each two drams: the flowers of Violets, Borrage and Buglofs, of each a pugil: make a decoction in two pound, of which dissolve the juyce of *Odoriferous Apples*, and of Buglofs, of each four ounces, boil it again to a pint and an half, then sweeten it with Sugar, as much as is convenient: Clarifie it, then Aromatize it with the powder, *Diamargariton Frigidum* and *Diatragacanthum Frigidum*, of each one dram: make an Apozem for four Doses.

The humor prepared, purge it with such things as purge Melancholy: these Simples are proper, Senna, Polypodium, Epithymum, Fumitory, Cassia, Lapis Lazuli and Mirabolans, black Hellebore, and such like. Look for compound Melancholy purgers in the next Book.

The conjoynd humor must be dealt with by such things as soften, separate and discaus: as the grease tryed out of Hank Wooll, Butter, the Oyl of Almonds, Camomil, Dill, Lillies, &c. the fat of a Cock, a Duck, Goose, Fox, Bear, Lyon, Sow, Calf, Stag, Eagle, Vulture, Bee Glew, Wax, fat Figgs, Marsh and Common Mallows, Lillies, Branck urfine, Ammoniacum, Bdelium, Galbanum, Styra, Tarr, Rozin, and such like, of which you may make unguents & plaisters. This plaister of *Calmetem* is of a great virtue: Take of fat Figg, in number twelve, boyl and stimp them, Ammoniacum, Bdelium, Galbanum, dissolved in Vinegar, of each two ounces, Liquid Styra one ounce, the Mucilage of Marsh-mallow-roots, of the seed of Flax and Fenugreek, of each two ounces, O'sopus and fresh Butter, of each one ounce, oyl of Lillies three ounces, with wax as much as sufficeth, make a plaister.



A Cancer is a hard, unequal, round and venemous Tumor; of a black colour, hot and painful. it is called in Greek *καρκίνος* and *καρκίνωμα*, it hath this name for these Reasons: First, because the Veins about it filled with Melancholy blood are stretched out like unto the feet of the Crab-fish. Secondly, because it is much like in colour to a Crab: And lastly, some will have its name to be taken from its sticking quality, that it can scarcely be pulled away, as the Sea-Crab doth, which obstinately sticketh to the place on which it layeth hold. The cause is thick and melancholy juyce contained in the part, and appeareth with a hard resisting, unequal, swartish or brown Tumor; round about it the Veins are swelled and exalted: about it there is sometimes sudden pricking, but for the most part it is of dull sense.

The thicker and blacker the humour is, so much the worse is the effect; this Disease happeneth to any part of the Body, but more especially about the Face, Ears, Lips, Womens Breasts, who have wanted their natural purgation: and it happens to Men, who were wont to have the Hemorrhoidal purging, and have lost it. By reason of the thickness and stubbornness of the humor, it is seldom cured, but rather turneth to an Ulcerate Cancer. Those Cancers only that are upon the extreme parts of the Body receive curation; but if they are deeply lodged, they admit not of a Cure: a Cancer that is confirmed cannot be cured, unless it be rooted up by incision or burning.

Order your Patient as before in respect of Diet, and prepare and purge the Melancholy humour as before is taught: in this case let purges be very gentle, and often reiterated. Then give Medicines which have a faculty to consume and dry up the Matter: this Electuary of Antonius Montagnana is good. Take of the powder of Sea or River-Crabs drowned in Milk, and dried in an Oven, of each four ounces; the powder of Frogs, Snails and Hedge-Hogs, of each one ounce; the rind of Citrons preserved two ounces; the shaving of Ivory, and the bone of a Stags-Heart, of each three drams; Xylabalsamum, and wood of Aloes-Sanders, Coral, and the powder of Steel prepared, of each two drams; the seed of Sorrel and Citrons, the powder of Caraway, Scordium and Ceterach, of each one dram: Amber and Musk, of each two Grains; the Conserve of Borrage, Bugloss, Sorrel and Snow-thistles, of each two drams; with the simple Syrup of Apples as much as sufficeth, make an Electuary; the dose is the quantity of a Chesnut, three hours before meat. Then apply such Medicines to the part, that may scatter the humor contained, and strengthen the part against farther defluxion: These Simples are very assissant in this Case; Nightshade, Ceterick, Agrimony, St. Johas-wort, Clary, the juyce of Coriander, the flesh of Cocks, Snails,

Snails, River-Crabs, Frogs, the Dung of a man, burnt and washed Lead, oyl of Frogs, oyl of Sulphur, and such like, you may make a Compound Oynment thus : Take of Bole-armenick and Terra Sigillata, of each one ounce ; of Lapis Calaminaris and washed Ceruse, of each half an ounce : Tutty and Marchasite prepared, of each three drams : the powder of Frogs and Snails dried in an Oven, of each three drams : Litharge of Gold two drams : Oyl of Roses three ounces : oyl of Frogs one ounce and half : Vinegar two ounces : the white of two Eggs. Wax sufficient : let them be well beaten in a Leaden Mortar, and brought into an unguent.

Whilst you purge, apply such things as principally repel or beat back : in the augmentation you must beat back and discuss ; in the declination discuss only, and all the while let the Patient be nourished with Cordials, to defend the Heart, Liver, and all the principal parts from this so malignant and stubborn Enemy.

## CHAP. XI.

## Of ulcers.

**A**N Ulcer is a solution of Continuity in the Flesh, containing *Sanies* and *Pus*. The antecedent Cause is Blood, Choler, Flegm, Melancholy thereto flowing, as hath been said of Tumors ; the joynd cause is distemperature, pain, tumour, contusion, or such like, stirred up by Antecedent Causes : Of this cometh matter either good or bad ; that which is good is of a mean substance, between thin and thick, white, light, equal, and not stinking : that which is bad is thin, glewy, much in quantity, swartish, black, pale, stinking.

If the distemperature of the ulcer be hot, it is known by heat, redness, and relieved by cold things. In a cold distemperature, there is not so much redness, and it is eased by hot things. Whether the distemperature be moist or dry, the eye will discover.

The Cure of an Ulcer simply considered, must be performed by Medicines which have a digestive, mundificative, incarnative, and cicatrizing quality : of which sort, I have already treated in the cure of Wounds.

I shall only now briefly Treat of the Distempers, Adjuncts, and Accidents of ulcers.

First, let the Symptome be removed : if it be hot, consider whether it be with matter, or without ; if with matter, whether it be Sanguine

Sanguine, or Choleric: If it be a Sanguine Distemper, let blood, observe a slender and cooling Diet and Medicines. If the matter be Choleric, purge Choler, observe a cooling Diet, and use cool Medicines.

If there be a hot Distemperature without Matter, neither purge nor bleed, but use cooling Medicines; as *unguentum Album*, *Dianthi*, *Pomphili*, *Rubrum*, *Camphora*, *Ex Plumbo*, and *Ex Cera*, and such others. Also Rose-water, the juyce or water of Nightshade, Houseleek, Plantane, and such like.

If the Distemperature be cold, purge Flegm if it abound, and use Diet and Medicines, which do heat and dry inwardly: Outwardly apply warming Oynments, *Unguentum de Altheo*, or *Unguentum Citrinum*: wash it with warm Wine, or the Decoction of Wormwood, Mint, Hyssop, Calamint, Origan, Rosemary, Penny-royal, and such like.

If the Ulcer be too moist, dry it with *unguentum Pomphili*, *de Plumbo*, *de Cera*, *de Gratia Dei*, *de Calce*.

If it be too dry, let his Diet and Medicines be moistening; as *Basilicon*, *de Pice*, *Diachylon*, &c. Having removed the Distemperature, go on gradually to the Cure: if the matter be crude digest it, having digested it, mundify it: having so done, incarnate it: and lastly, cicatrize it.

If a Tumor doth accompany the Ulcer, you may from the Chapters foregoing, be able to judge what the Humor is, which is the cause thereof. You must evacuate it by blood-letting, purging, thin and cooling Diet and Medicines: The Chapters foregoing will inform you, whether it be drawn thither by the part it self, or sent from other parts, or from the whole Body: Nor need you go any farther, nor I trouble my self to prescribe Medicine, to repel and discuss the Tumors, the aforesaid Chapters being sufficiently furnished.

A confused Ulcer must be nourished with Medicines moistening and ingendring good matter, and the Cure may be performed by the means prescribed for the Cure of a Confused Wound.

If the Vicer be accompanied with proud flesh, it must be taken off by an Incision-knife, Caustery, or hot Sifters, &c. or by corrosive Medicines: the gentler sort are Burnt Allum, *Hermodytyls* with Tartar, Date-Stones burnt, *Aqua-vite* with Sulphur, *Unguentum Apostolorum*, Nettle-seed, the Flower of Brasse, burnt Brasse, *Serpentaria*, the Root of Asphodels, &c. Of a stronger sort are these, the Powder of Mercury, *Unguentum Aegyptiacum*, or *Apostolorum*, with Natural Verd-grease. Of the stronger sort are Quick-lime, Red Vitriol, burnt

Vitriol,



Vitriol, Mercury sublimate : of these may many Compounds be Made, which for brevity sake I omit.

If the Lips of the ulcer be hard, soften it with mollifying Medicines made of the fat of a Goose, Hen, Duck, Lion, Bear, Calf, Oxe, or the like ; the Oyl of Lillies, Sweet Almonds, Earth-worms, *Ecce*, *unguentum Basilicon*, *Diachylon*, and *Emplastrum de Mucilaginis*. If it be so hard that it will not yield to Medicine, make use of Incision, Caution, or of the aforementioned Corrosive Medicines.

If the Bone be defiled by an ulcer, take it off with a Scaling Instrument, or an hot Iron ; after you have loosed the Scale, the first three days apply Oyl of Roses, and the White of an Egg warm ; the next three dayes, the yelk of an Egg, and Oyl of Roses ; after that with Butter and Honey.

If the Bone lie so deep, that you cannot apply your hot Iron, inject this Water : Take of White Wine one pound and an half, the distilled Waters of Plantane and Roses, of each one pound ; Mercury sublimate three drams, Bole-Armenick half an ounce, Burnt Alum one ounce and an half, white Vitriol and Borax, of each half an ounce ; white Sugar two ounces ; Mastich, Sarcocol, of each one ounce and an half : Powder what is to be powdered, boyl it to the consumption of half, then filter it, and add of the best *Aqua-Vita* one pound, and reserve it to your use.

It is good also to lay this following powder to the putrified Bone : Take of round Birthwort, and the Bark of the Pine-tree, of each three drams : of the Roots of Hogs-Fennel and Reeds, of each two drams ; of Agarick and Tartar, of each one dram and an half ; Euphorbium one dram ; make a powder : lay it upon the putrified Bone, or mix it with Honey or *Aegyptiacum*, or such like.

If Worms breed in the ulcer, take away the humidity and putrefaction whereof they are ingendred ; kill the Worms with the Juyces, or Decoction of Wormwood, Centaury, Eupatorium, Wormwood, and such like bitter Herbs. So much for the general Cure of ulcers.

## CHAP. XII.

*Rules for Vomiting and Purging.*

**T**HE first thing herein considerable is the matter offending ; what part of the body is afflicted, and which is the best way to evacuate the peccant humor. The matter offending is either *Flegm, Water, Choler, or Melancholy.* Purging Simples work gently or strongly : those that work gently only are to be given to weak Bodies : the strongest to stronger persons.

Be well advised of the offending humor before you purge, lest instead of helping, you weaken nature. Before you take a purge, let the Humors be prepared by some Medicines proper for the purpose, especially if *Flegm or Melancholy* be the humour you would purge. Prepare the Body before with Medicines that are attenuating and cutting, and let your Purge be made up with it. The next Book will furnish you with variety of altering and preparing Medicines.

It is a matter of consequence to consider what part of the Body is afflicted, and to form your Purges accordingly. If the remote part of the body be afflicted, as the Head, Arms, Feet, and the like, let your Purge be made up into a hard form as Pills ; that by their long stay in the Body, they may be the better able to draw the humours from those parts.

If the offending humour lie in the Bowels or adjacent parts, use liquid Medicines : and in all these look not upon the multitude of Ejections, but of the matter ejected.

If the Humors lie in the Tunicle of the Stomach, a Vomit is necessary, and in many cases more it is a good Revulsion: but take them not without advice from an able Physician.

If the Purge work not at all, give warm Broth, and Posset-Drink, and if the Purge were strong, give a Clister : if it work too strongly, which is worse : give such things as make the Bowels slippery for Ejection, as the Oyl of Almonds, which is good, if the mouth of the Veins be opened, or if there happen excoiation, for the same purpose Quince-seeds and Mallows boyled in milk, is good, and Gum Tragacanth dissolved in water, or Milk ; the Syrup, or Marmalade of Quinces have the like virtue.

If Vomiting hold too long give a draught of Milk with a little Mastich therein ; and lay to the Stomach *Empl. strum e Crusta Panis.* If either Vomit or Purge work too churlishly, some give a Pill of Laudanum, and with good success. Anoint the Stomach and Belly with

# Chap. 12. Rules for Vomiting and Purging. 269

Take Oyl of Roses, and lay on it the powder of Mastich, of Galls, and of Red Rose Leaves:

Chymical Medicines, if they be rightly prepared and administered with care and judgment are the best, for they stay but a little while in the body, and do not bind afterwards, because the Terrene part is taken away.

If the Humour be tough, it is not easily carried away; therefore in such cases purge gently and often.

The Dose ought to be regulated by an able Brain: In the next Book I shall give you the Faculties and Dose of most of the Medicines (in use) amongst us. For the Times and Seasons of purging, in respect of the motion of the Moon and Stars, I have given you a few general Rules at the latter end of my Almanack for the Year 1657. To which I refer you.

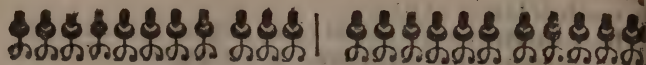
THE

---

*The End of the Third Book.*

---





T H E

## F O U R T H B O O K.

**I**N this I shall shew you the Faculty and Natural Operation of most of the Compound Medicines now in use amongst us, and sold by the Apothecary: together with a general Rule for the making of all such kind of Medicines. Those that desire a more particular Description of their Ingredients or Compositions, let them peruse the Dispensatory made by the Colledge of Physicians of London: If they cannot understand the Latine Tongue, let them make use of the Translation thereof by Mr. *Culpeper*, it being unfitting for this Volume. Be pleased therefore to accept of their Faculties and Doses from the least to the greatest, which must be regulated with Judgment and Discretion, according to the age or strength of the Patient, the Season of the Year, and the nature of the Distemper.

## C H A P. I.

*Of Distilled Waters.*

**C**old or simple distilled Waters, are drawn out of Herbs; Flowers, Fruits, and Roots; all which ought to be distilled when they are in their greatest vigour, and ought to be gathered in a dry day about Noon. The common way is to distil them in a Peuter Still: The water thus distilled is (of all Medicines) the weakest, yet is of use in mixing them with other Medicine, that they may be the better taken. To avoid burning, put sifted Ashes under the Vessel, which holds the Herbs, and give a gentle fire.

But to make the Water have more smell and vertue of the Herbs, do thus: Take what green Herbs and Roots, or Flowers fresh gathered, if you please to bruise them, and mix them with some Leaven, and let them stand close covered four or five dayes, then distill them as aforesaid To make it stronger, do thus: When you have distilled any Herb as aforesaid in a common Still, by putting a paper under them

Chap. I.

them to pre-  
Water and  
them flans  
the Water  
before; and  
thus you th  
perform th  
in warm w  
water distil

To know  
roe of the  
you would  
the smell  
suckles, or  
gathered in  
into two qu  
nor much le  
sarily; the  
quantity of  
into a glai  
and distill i  
of hot Water  
you shall h

You may  
Trust Take  
put it into  
a cressin, the  
ter add mate  
till your wa  
the herb, in  
Waters are  
I shall de  
ending the

Spirits

Take of th  
pound, Rec  
distill them  
two ounces  
alled the S  
opion, In

them to prevent burning and drying the Cake overmuch : Put the Water and the Cake together into a hot Still or Alembick, and let them stand warm 24. hours ; then distil them, and if you would have the Water yet stronger, pour this Water upon more Cakes, and do as before ; and if there be any Oyl upon the top of the water separate it, thus you shall have a very strong and excellent Water. Or if you perform this distillation in a glass Gourd, in a Gentle Balneo that is in warm water, your water will be very good, and far excelling the water distilled the common way.

To know the vertue and use of these Waters, you must find the vertue of the herb by some Herbal, or History of Plants and Herbs. If you would have a distilled water out of Flowers, which shall retain the smell of the Flower, do thus : Take Roses, Violets, Honey-suckles, or what other Flower you would distil, pick them, being first gathered in a fair and Sunshine-day, infuse a handful or two of them into two quarts of the best White-wine, the space of half an hour, not much longer (lest with the subtil spirit, the earthy part also come forth) : then take them forth, and infuse in the same Wine the same quantity of Flowers ; do so eight or ten times. Then put the Wine into a glass body or Gourd, and close the Joynts well with Luteum, and distil it in a gentle Balneo, or place your Glass over the Vapour of hot Water, that so the subtil spirit only may ascend. By this means you shall have a water of a most fragrant odour.

You may distil a water strong of the vegetable out of dried herbs, Thus: Take of any herb dried ( or seed or root if you please ) a pound, put it into twelve pints of clear Spring water, let it stand warm as aforesaid, then distil it in a hot Still or Alembick; to this distilled water add more dried herbs, and distil them again as often as you please, till your water become like a Spirit. Or if you add White-wine to the herb, it will be the stronger : Which leads me to the distilled Waters prescribed by the Colledge of Physitians ; of one of which I shall set down the manner of distilling, and content my self in describing the virtues and quantity to be used of the rest.

*Spiritus & Aqua Absinthii minus Composita* : The Spirit and Water of Wormwood, the lesser Composition.

Take of the leaves of dried wormwood two pound, Annis-seed half a pound, steep them in six Gallons of small wines twenty four hours, then distil them in an Alembick, adding to every pound of the distilled water two ounces of the best Sugar. Let the two first pounds you draw off be called the Spirit of wormwood ; the rest wormwood-water, the less composition. In the same manner ( omitting the Anniseeds ) you may distil

distill the Spirit and Water of any Herb, root, flower, or seed whatsoever.

*Spiritus & aqua Absynthii magis Composita.* The Spirit and Water of Wormwood the greater Composition.

Take of common and Roman Wormwood, of each a pound : Sage, Mints, Balm, of each two handfuls : the Roots of Galanga, Ginger, Calamus Aromaticus, and Elicampane, of each three drams ; Liquorice one ounce, and Raisins of the Sun stoned three ounces : the seeds of Annis and Sweet Fennel, of each three drams. Cinnamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, of each two drams : Cardamoms and Cubebs, of each one dram, let the things that are to be cut, be cut, and bruised, that are to be bruised ; and all of them infused in twenty four pints of Spanish Wine, for twenty four hours : then distilled in an Alembick : add two ounces of white Sugar to every pint of distilled water. Call the first pint the Spirit of Wormwood the greater Composition. *The virtues are these ; it brats and strengthens the Stomach and Lungs, helps Concoction and stays vomiting ; it kills Worms in the Stomach and Belly, expels Wind, mitigates the pains of the Teeth. The Dose is from three drams to half an ounce.*

*Spiritus & aqua Angelicae magis Composita.* The Spirit and Water of Angelica the greater Composition.

It comforteth the heart and vital Spirits, it rarifieth and discusseth flaccid humors, it is good against Poyson taken, against the pestilence, it is prevalent and a good preservative in pestilential times, and against ill Airs. It is good against Crudities of the Stomach, and Diseases of the Matrix proceeding from a cold Cause. The Dose is from two drams to six.

*Spiritus Lavendulae Compositus :* The Compound Spirit of Lavender.

This is a very chargeable Spirit, and is of great efficacy against passions of the Heart, Convulsions, Cramps, Palsies, Apoplexies, and all sleepey Diseases, Vertigo, and comforts a cold Brain. The Dose is the same with the former.

*Spiritus Castorei:* Spirit of Castor.

It resisteth Poyson, and is good for such as are bitten by Venemous Creatures ; gives speedy Delivery to Women in Travel, and easeth the Fits of the Mother. It helpeth Deafness, proceeding from stoppage.  
page 3



page, mixed with white Wine, and dropped into the Ears. It is good against the Diseases mentioned in the former. The Dose is from half a dram to a dram. Give it in something that is cooler.

*Aqua Pestilidis Composita.* The Water of Butter-bus Compound.

It is good against the Pestilence, and a good preservative in Pestilential Times: it gives ease to those who are short-winded, easeth the Fits of the Mother: it dryes up moist Humors in those that have Sores hard to be cured. The Dose is two, three, or four drams in some cooling Cordial.

*Aqua Raphani Composita.* Radish Water Compound.

This Water is good against Obstructions of the Liver, Spleen, and Womb; prevaieth against the Scurvy, and cleanseth women after their lying in. The Dose is from two drams to half an ounce.

*Aqua Pionie Composita.* The Compound Water of Peony.

This is very prevalent against the Falling-Sickness, and Convulsions. If the Fits come daily, take it Morning and Evening: If it come weekly, take it at the New or Full Moon, the first or last Quarter: If the Disease decline, give it onely at New and Full Moon. In the Fit, it is good to rub the Jaws, Nostrils, and Temples with it. The Dose is from two drams to six.

*Aqua Bezoartica.* Or, Bezoar Water.

It withstands melancholy, and is good for such as are in Consumptions. It strengtheneth the Heart and Vital spirits. It is a Diaphoretick, and is good in pestilential Feavers. The Dose is from half a dram to a dram: Give it with other cooling Cordials.

*Aqua & Spiritus Lumbricorum Magistralis.* The Magistral Water, and spirit of Earth-Worms.

I conceive this was composed for a restorative for such people that have lingering diseases, occasioned by Obstruction of the Liver, spleen, and Kidneys: as the evil habit, Hypochondriack melancholy, scurvy, &c. The Dose is from half an ounce to an ounce.

*Aqua Gemianæ Composita.* Gentian Water Compound.

It is a good Preservative against the Pestilence, easeth pains in the Stomach and helpeth Digestion, and drives out old Colds, openeth Obstructions of the Liver, easeth the pricking pains in the Sides, and is good against the yellow Jaundies: it provokes the Terms, and expelleth a dead Child, or After-birth. The Dose is from three drams to half an ounce.

*Aqua Gilberti.* Gilberts Water.

This Water is a very great Cordial, it strengtheneth the Heart, and reviveth languishing Nature; it may be taken from half a dram to a dram: it is so costly, that it is almost out of the reach of ordinary people.

*Aqua Cordialis frigida Saxonie.*

It is a very cooling Water and profitable for Feavers, and to allay the heat of blood; it giveth rest by sleep. You may take from two drams to half an ounce.

*Aqua Theriacalis.* Or, Treacle Water.

This Water is of excellent vertue against the Pestilence, and other Feavers: it is a very good counter-poyson, and good for those that have been bit by any venomous Creature, or such as have the French Pox: for it driveth forth all virulent Humors from the Heart, and is a great Cordial. This Dose is from half an ounce to an ounce.

*Aqua Brioniæ Composita;* Or, Briony Water Compound.

This Water is Hysterical, easeth the fits of the Mother, it expelleth the After-Birth, and provoketh Womens Courses. Let Women with Child forbear it. Let those that have occasion take from half an ounce to an ounce in the Morning fasting.

*Aqua Caponis:* Or, Capon-Water.

It is good for such whose strength is decayed by Feavers or other Sickneses: It is an excellent Medicine for those that are in Consumptions, or wasted by a Feaver Hectick or Marasmus. Take from half an ounce to an ounce.

Aqua

*Aqua Limacum Magistralis* : Or, the Magistral Water  
of Snails.

It Openeth Obstructions of the Lungs, and purgeth them of Flegm, and is very good for the Consumption of the Lungs. Take half an ounce, or an ounce.

*Aqua Scordii Composita* : Or, Compound Water of Scordium.

This is a good Preservative against the Pestilence, gives rest in Feavers, and is friendly to the Stomach and Womb. Take it from two drams to half an ounce.

*Aqua Imperialis*, and *Aqua Mariæ*.

It strengtheneth and corroborateth the Heart, and is therefore good for such as are subject to Faintings, Swoonings, and Palpitations of the Heart, and is a preservative against Apoplexies. The Dose is from one dram to three.

*Aqua Mirabilis*.

This is of admirable force and virtue, to preserve the Body from the Apoplexy, and all Diseases of the Nerves. It is very good against the Palsie, Convulsion, and Cramp; and is good for cold Stomachs. From two drams to half an ounce is the Dose.

*Aqua Papaveris Composita* : Or, Poppy Water Compound.

It is good against Surfeits and Feavers there-from arising: it provoketh sleep, cooleth the blood, and concocteth the humors. Take from half an ounce to an ounce.

*Aqua Cinnamomi*, Cinnamon Water.

It strengtheneth the Somach, Liver, Spleen, Lungs, Heart, Brain, and the Nerves. It cleareth the Sight; is an Antidote against Poyson, and biting by venomous creatures, and is good against a stinking Breath, and nauseousness of the Stomach. It is very friendly to the Womb, and is of an attenuating, opening, digesting and strengthening vertue. From two drams to six is the usual Dose: in cold Diseases you may take more.



*Aqua Cœlestis.*

This also prevaileth against Malignant and pestilential Feavers, restoreth such as are in Consumption, comforteth the Heart, and reviveth drooping spirits. It is very hot in operation: You must scarcely exceed half a dram for the ourmost Dose without the advice of a physitian. In Feavers, mix it with cooling Juleps.

*Aqua Melissa, Bawm Water.*

It restoreth Memory lost, it maketh all the senses acute, it strengtheneth the Heart, brain and stomach: and for those who are troubled with cold stomachs and brain, it is a Jewel. It maketh the heart glad, the tongue nimble (in those who are subject to the palse in that member) the teeth white, and the breath sweet. The Dose is from two drams to half an ounce.

*Aqua Menthae, Mint Water.*

It cools and strengtheneth the stomach, Liver and spleen, helps concoction, breaketh wind, and stayes vomiting. The dose is from one dram to three.

Ordinary *Aqua-Vite*, Annise-seed water, Usquebath, and such like, are commonly used; and most people know they comfort a cold stomach, and is good against hurt of digestion, coming from a cold cause. It breaks wind, and the like.

Tinctures are made of any Herb or other simple, by first bruising them and putting to them as much spirit of Wine as will cover them three or four fingers; cork it up, or seal it, and let it digest in a Bath as long as you see good. If you know the virtue of the simples, you cannot be ignorant of the Tincture.

To make physical Wines, is easie: Take this one for example; Take a handful of dried Wormwood, for every Gallon of Wine; stop it in a Vessel close, and let it remain in steep. So you may prepare a physical Wine of any Herb, Flower, or seed whatsoever, either simple or compound.

Physical Vinegars are prepared thus: Take of red-Rose buds gathered in a dry time, the Whites being cut off and dried in the shadow three or four dayes, one pound; Vinegar eight Sextaries: set them in the Sun forty dayes; then strain out the Roses, and repeat the infusion as often as you please.

Thus may you prepare physical Vinegar of any Flower. As the  
Hot

Hot Waters and Spirits are best for cold Bodies, and hot diseases; so on the contrary are Vinegars best in hot diseases, and may be externally used.

These I thought good to add to the treatise of distilled Waters.

For the preparation of distilled Waters of this nature, read *Quercetanus* his Dispensatory; one of which I shall here insert, having prescribed it in the foregoing Books: which is his distilled Water against Spitting of blood.

Take of the roots of Bistort, Comphry, and Tormentil, of each one ounce; the leaves of Knot-grass, Yarrow, Speedwel, Winter-green, Sanicle, Shepherds-purse, with its root, of each one handful: of the tops of the Black-berry Bush, and Mastich-tree, of each half an handful: the seeds of Sumach, Myrtles, Plantane, Barberies, and white Poppy, of each six drams: the flowers of Water-lillies, Gourds, Quinces, and red Roses, of each two pugils; let them be mixed, and beaten: then macerated in Balneo for the space of four dayes, in the Juyces following, viz. Plantane, Purslane, Sorrel, and Agrimony, of each two pound: Let them be afterwards strongly pressed out; then add to the Juyce of Acacia, Hypocistis, of each two ounces: Terra Sigillata, and Bole-armenick, of each half an ounce; *Electuarium Diatrageanthum frigidum*, of each two drams: Macerate them for four dayes, and distil it in ashes till it be dry.

Let them who are troubled with spitting of blood, or any inward wound or bruise, take two or three Choclearies, either by it self, or mixed with Syrup of Myrtles, dried Roses, or Syrup of Comphry; and if the Flux of Blood be very violent, give a scruple of the Tincture of Coral with it.

## CH A P. II.

### Of Syrups.

OF Syrups there are three sorts; Syrups made by infusion, juyce and decoction; Syrups made by infusion are made of Flowers, and such Flowers, as soon lose both colour and strength by boyling, as Violets, Roses, Clove-gilly-flowers, Peach-flowers, &c. and they are thus made. Having picked your flowers, to every pound add three pints of water made boyling hot, put them into a pewter-pot with a close cover, and keep it hot 12 hours. If you would make your syrup very strong, put in more fresh flowers as often as you please; having

strained it out, put the liquor into a pewter Bason, and to every pint add two pound of fine Sugar; put it upon a Chaffin-dish of Coals, and melt it, stirring and scumming it till the Sugar be perfectly melted without boyling.

Secondly to make a Syrup of the juyce of an Herb, you must make choice of such herbs as are full of juyce; then beat it in a stone Mortar, press out the juyce, put it over the fire and clarify it (that is, scum it as long as any scum arise) then boyl it till a quarter of it be consumed; to a pint of this add a pound of Sugar, boyling it to a Syrup, and scumming of it. You may know when it is enough if you cool a little in a spoon. After this manner you may make Syrup of Worm-wood simple, of Betony, Bugloss, Borrage, Chamomel, Carduus, Endive, Succory, Strawberries, Fumitory, ground Ivy, St. Johns-wort, Mercury, Mouse-ear, Plantane, Purslane, Apples, Raspberries, Sage, Scabious, Scordium, Houfleeke, Colts-foot, and such like; and when you have done so, and would know what they are good for, see the vertue of the Simples.

Thirdly, Syrups made by decoction, for the most part are compounds; though you may make Syrups of Simples by decoction: the operation is thus; Take of what Herb, Root, flower, or seed you please, and bruise it a little, if you make a Syrup of roots, or where in there are many roots, let the roots macerate in the water twenty four hours; then add the herbs, and the rest, and boyl it till half the water be consumed, then let it stand; and when it is almost cold, strain it through an hypocras-bag without pressing; to every pint of the decoction add one pound of Sugar, and boyl it till it comes to the thickness of a Syrup or new hony. After this manner, the part of the Syrups following are made, except they be made of flowers or juyces. Take this for an example: Take of common worm-wood meanly dry, half a pound, red Roses two ounces, Indian spickeard three drams, old white-wine, and juyce of Quinces, of each two pound and an half, steep them a whole day in an Earthen Vessel, then boyl them gently, strain it, and adding two pound of Sugar, boyl it into a Syrup according to Art.

This Syrup is very good for cold and Flegmatick Stomachs, it helpeth concoction, strengtheneth the Stomach and Liver, provokes an Appetite, breaks wind, and is good against the Jaundies: the dose is from one ounce to three.



*Syrupus Acetosus, simplex vel compositus*: Syrup of Vinegar, Simple or Compound.

These Syrups cut Flegm and tough Humors, they cool the body, quench thirst, and ease any stuffing in the Stomach, and are good to prepare the body for a Vomit, especially the first; if you use it so, take from one ounce to two or three: in other cases take it with a Liquorish stick.

*Syrupus de Agno Casto*: Or, Syrup of Agnus Castus.

I conceive by its composition it was intended to prevent immoderate Lechery, and nocturnal pollutions: for without doubt it dryeth and cooleth the natural seed, thereby restraining venereal thoughts: For my part I can say nothing of it by experience.

*Syrupus de Althea*: Syrup of Marsh-mallows.

This is a fine cooling, opening, slippery Syrup; good against the pains of the Stone, Gravel, or Cholick. You may give an ounce or two; it is so safe and harmless, you cannot err in the giving of it.

*Syrupus de Ammoniaco*: Syrup of Ammoniacum.

It opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and cools the parts, and helps all Diseases arising from their Obstructions and Heat; as Scabs, Itch, Leprosie and such like. You may take an ounce or more if you see occasion.

*Syrupus de Artemisia*: Syrup of Mugwort.

It helps the Coldness, Wind, Pains and all other Diseases of the Womb; it strengthens the Nerves, corrects the Blood, opens the Pores, and provokes the Terms. You may take an ounce at a time or from half an ounce to two.

*Syrupus de Artemisia*: Syrup of Mugwort.

It is good against Diseases in the Head and Stomach proceeding of Cold and Wind, Vertigoes, and Madness; it concocteth Melancholy, and provokes the Terms. The Dose is from half an ounce to two.

T 4 *Syrupus*

*Syrupus Byzantius*, Simple and Compound.

It strengtheneth and freeth the Liver from Obstructions and Diseases thence proceeding, cures the Yellow-Jaundice, cuts tough Flegm, and is good against the Rickets. Take it with a Liquorish stick: or from half an ounce to two.

*Syrupus Botryos*; Syrup of Oak of Jerusalem.

This Syrup is commended in the Asthma, and cold Diseases of the Breast, Coughs, and shortness of Breath. Take it with a Liquorish stick.

*Syrupus Capillorum Veneris*; Syrup of Maiden-hair.

This strengthens the Stomach and Lungs, and helps their infirmities; it also cleanseth the Reins of Gravel: for the first, take it with a Liquorish stick: for the last, give an ounce or two.

*Syrupus Cardiacus*: A Cordial Syrup.

It comforts the Heart, and revives drooping Spirits; it is good for people in Consumptions, it is of an opening quality, and expels those Vapours which offend the Brain. Take it from one ounce to three.

*Syrupus infusionis Cariophyllorum*: Syrup of Clove Gilly-flowers.

This Syrup is good in any Feaver Pestilential, or not: it strengtheneth the Heart, Liver and Stomach, and refresheth the Vital Parts: The Dose is from half an ounce, to an ounce and an half. It is so harmless, you cannot err in the taking of it.

*Syrupus de Cinnamomo*: Syrup of Cinnamon.

It strengtheneth the whole Body, and helpeth Digestion, and comforteth the Stomach and Womb, and cheareth the Spirits. Take one ounce in a Cordial.

*Syrupus Acetosteatitis Citriorum*: Syrup of the Juice of Citrons.

This Syrup hath a refrigerating, cutting, attenuating, penetrating faculty; it allays Cholick, and tempers the heat of the Heart, cools the blood, and is therefore good against Feavers Pestilential or not; small Pox or Measels: it resisteth poyson. The Dose is from one ounce to four.

*Syrupus*

*Syrupus corticum citriorum*, Syrup of Citron pills.

It is of a most grateful savour, and most pleasant odour; it strengtheneth the stomach, Liver and heart, amends the heat of them, and resisteth palpitations, Faintings, swoonings; it strengtheneth the Vitals, is profitable in Consumptions and hectick Feavers: the dose is from one ounce to two.

*Syrupus e Coralliis simplex & compositus*. The Syrup of Corral, simple and compound.

It refrigerateth, drieth and astringeth; it stayeth the immoderate Monthly flux and the Whites, the Dysentery, all fluxes of Blood: it is good in the falling-sickness, it strengtheneth Nature, profitable for such who have hectick feavers or Consumptions. The dose is from half an ounce to an ounce.

*Syrupus Cydoniorum*, Syrup of Quinces.

It is best to strengthen the stomach, and to help the cold distemper of the Liver: it helps Concoction, and provokes an appetite; it helps Vomiting, and is good against the flux, if it be without a fever. The dose is from one ounce to two; take it in the morning: for a looseness, take an ounce before meat; for Vomiting, an ounce after meat.

*Syrupus de Eryfimo*, Syrup of Hedge-Mustard.

It prevaieth against cold afflictions of the Breast and Lungs; as Coughs, Astmahs, Hoarseness, and the like: use it with a Liqueoris stick, or take an ounce, with two or three ounces of some pectoral decoction in the morning.

*Syrupus de Fumaria*, Syrup of Fumitory.

It concocteth Melancholy, and freeth the blood of such humors, as cause scabs, itch, Leprosie, Tettors, Ring-worms, Cancers, Corns, Warts, &c. It openeth Obstructions of the Liver and spleen, and is sovereign in the hypochondriack melancholy; it cooleth the Livers and cleanseth the Blood. The Dose is from one ounce to three.

*Syrupus Glycyrrhiza*, Syrup of Liqueoris.

It helps Coughs, and is good against Pleurifies; for it cleanseth the Breast and Lungs. Take it as a Syrup of Hedg-mustard.

*Oxy-Saccharum simplex*, Syrup of Pomegranates with Vinegar.

It is many times used in the Small pox and Meazels, by reason of the



the Vinegar; it cutteth and attenuateth hot Humours, it restraineth Choler, and mitigates the heat. The Dose is from two ounces to four.

*Syrupus de Hysopo*, Syrup of Hyſop.

It hath a notable Faculty of cutting and expectorating rough Humors out of the Breast and Lungs, and to strengthen the parts. It prepareth and expelleth salt and phlegmatick Humors in the urine, which cauſeth heat and pain in thoſe parts. For the firſt, take it with a Li- quoris ſtick: for the laſt, the Dose is from half an ounce to two ounces.

*Syrupus ſive Chamæpitys*, Syrup of Chamæpity, or Ground-pine.

It is good againſt the Fits of the Mother, procureth Womens Courſes, expelleth the dead Child; let Women with Child forbear it. It is good againſt the Strangury or ſtoppage of Urine, openeth Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen: the Dose is from half an ounce to an ounce.

*Syrupus Fijubinus*, Syrup of Jujubes.

It helpeth Diſeaſes of the Trachæa Arteris, occaſioned by ſharp and dry Humors, for it is cooling and moiſtening: it helps Hoarſneſs, Coughs, Pleuriſies. It is good againſt ulcers of the Lungs or Bladder, or any inflammation. Take it with a Liquoris ſtick, or take half an ounce or an ounce, as oft as you pleaſe.

*Syrupus de Meconia vel Diacodium*, & *de Meconia compoſitus*. Syrup of Meconium or Diacodium, and of Meconium compound.

It prevails againſt dry Coughs, Pthiſick, hot and ſharp gnawing Rheums, and provoke ſleep in the beginning of a Feaver, or the Body being coſtive: The Dose is from half an ounce to two.

*Syrupus Meliſſophylli*, Syrup of Bawm.

It is cordial, ſtrengtheneth the Heart, Breast, and Stomach, clears the Spirits, and reſiſteth Melancholy: it helps them that languish, ſtrengtheneth Memory, and is good in Feavers: The Dose is from half an ounce to two.

*Syrupus de Mentha*, Syrup of Mint.

This Syrup ſtrengtheneth the Stomach, helpeth Diſteſtion, ſtays Vomiting and ſour Belchings. The Dose is from one ounce to three.

*Syrupus de Mucilaginibus*, Syrup of Muſilages.

It is a fine remedy againſt the Pthiſick, Bloody Flux, Stone in the Reins

Reins or Bladder, or Ulcers there, or sharp corroding Humors there, or in any part of the Body, and is of great vertue for those who have taken Physick too strong and corroding. Take one ounce or two; sometimes, it is lawful to give four or five.

*Syrupus Myrtinas*, Syrup of Myrtles.

It is of a comforting and astringent Nature; it helpeth all Fluxes, and spitting of blood, and strengtheneth the retentive Faculty of the Stomach. An ounce or two is the Dose.

*Syrupus Florum Nymphae, simplex & compositus*. Syrup of Water-Lily-flowers, simple and compound.

It allayeth the heat of Choler, coolereth the Head, the Heart, Liver, Reins, Matrix, and allayeth all hot Diseases, and provokes sleep.

*Syrupus de Papavere Erratico*, Syrup of Erratick Poppies.

This Syrup cools the Blood, and may be safely given with moderation; in Sursets, Feavers, Frenzies, and hot Agues. The Dose is from half an ounce to an ounce.

*Syrupus de Pilosella*, Syrup of Mouse-Ear.

It is an astringent and heating Syrup, good for the cure of a Rupture, and necessary to be used by wounded people. The Dose is from half an ounce to two.

*Syrupus Florum Paeoniae, vel de Paeonia compositus*: Syrup of Peony-Flowers, or the compound Syrup of Peony.

It is good against the Falling-Sickness, Convulsion, and such like infirmities. The usual Dose is an ounce.

*Syrupus de Pomis Alterans*, Syrup of Apples.

It cools the heart and stomach helps palpitation, breeds good blood, profitable in Hectick and other Feavers, quencheth Thirst. You may take an ounce in the morning.

*Syrupus de Praso*, Syrup of Horehound.

It cleanseth the Lungs from thick and putrified Flegm: it is good against the Phtisick and Cough in ancient people, or such as are of cold Natures. Take it with a Liguoris stick.

*Syrupus de quinque Radicibus*, Syrup of the five opening Roots.

It openeth the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and more especially of the Reins: it is good against the Stone, if you mix it with Syrup of Maiden-hair: it is of great vertue, in preparing phlegmatick and rough humors, and is profitable in the beginning of Feavers. The dose is from one ounce to four.

*Syrupus Raphani*, or Syrup of Rhadishes.

It breaks the Stone of the Kidneys, and cleanseeth the part; it provokes urine and Womens purgations, and is profitable against the Stone in the bladder. The dose is from one ounce to three.

*Syrupus Regius, vel Julepium Alexandrinum*: Julep of Alexandria.

It is profitable in summer-time for such bodies which abound with Choler; for it allayeth the heat, and evacuateeth it, and is convenient to prepare it against purging. The dose is from two ounces to five.

*Syrupus de Rosis siccis*, Or Syrup of dried Roses.

It strengtheneth and comforteth the heart and vital spirits, helps fluxions and Corrosions, and gnawing in the Guts; strengtheneth the stomach, and stays vomiting. Take it as Syrup of Quinces.

*Syrupus scabiosæ*, Syrup of Scabious.

It freeeth the Breast and Lungs of phlegm and Crudities; it easeth Stitches in the sides, and is good against inward Imposthumes. The dose is from one ounce to three.

*Syrupus de scolopendria*, Syrup of Harts-tongue.

It opens the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, prepares melancholy, and is good against the Quartane Ague and the Rickets. The dose is from half an ounce to two ounces.

*Syrupus de Stachede*, Syrup of Stachas.

It strengtheneth the Brain, and corrects the cold distemper thereof: it is of excellent vertue in the pallsie, Convulsion, &c. coming of cold Causes. The dose is from one ounce to three.

*Syrupus de Symphyto*, Syrup of Comphry.

It helps spitting of Blood, the ulcer in the Reins, stops the immoderate flux of the Menstrues, all inward Wounds and bruises, and healeth the Rupture. From one ounce to four is the Dose.

*Syrupus*



*Syrupus Violarum*, Syrup of Violets.

It cools and moisteneth; it corrects the sharpness of Cholera, quencherh thirst in hot Feavers, and cooleth the heart and Liver, comforts hot stomachs, resisteth putrefaction, the pestilence and poyson. The dose is from one ounce to four.

*Syrupus e Portulaca*, Syrup of Purslane.

It is cooling, and good for all hot Diseases of the Stomach, Liver, Reins and Bladder: it cools the blood, quencherh thirst, provokes sleep, and thickens thin humours. The Dose is from one ounce to three.

*Syrupus Tussilaginis compositus*, The Compound of Syrup of Coltsfoot.

It helps the infirmities and weakness of the Lungs; as difficulty of breathing, want of Voice, hoarsness, Coughs, Catarrhs, &c. Take it with a Liquoris-stick, or an ounce or two thereof, in some pectoral Decoction.

*Syrupus de Eupatorio*, Syrup of Eupatorium.

It hath an opening Faculty, but purgeth not; it opens the Obstructions of the Liver, and correcteth the cold Distemper thereof, helps the Dropsie and evil state of the body, provokes urine, and is good against the hypochondriack melancholy. The Dose is from one ounce to three.

## Purging Syrups.

*Syrupus de Cichorio cum Rhabarbaro*, Syrup of Succory with Rhubarb.

It purgeth the Body from Cholerick and venomous Humours, it cleanseth the Liver, it evacuateth by stool and urine. The Dose is from one ounce to two.

*Syrupus de Epithimo*, or Syrup of Epithymum.

It prepareth and purgeth melancholy or adust humors and scabs, itch, &c. it strengtheneth the stomach and Liver. Take it as Syrup of Fumitory.

*Syrupus e Floribus Persicorum*, Syrup of Peach-Flowers.

It gently purgeth Choler, and may be given in Feavers, to evacuate the sharp and Cholerick Humors. It is good against Worms in Children: Take from half an ounce to two.

Syrups

*Syrupus de Pomis, Purgans & Magistralis*, Syrup of Apples, Purging and Magistral.

Both of them purge, cool, and rectifie the Distemper of the Blood, and free it from Choler and Melancholy; it is good against the yellow and black Jaundice, Madnes, Scurf, Scabs and Itch. The Dose is from one ounce to three.

*Syrupus de Rhabarbaro*, Syrup of Rhubarb.

This is a gentle Purge, fitting for Children, antient People, and such as are very weak; it purgeth Choler and Melancholy. An ounce a weak Body may take.

*Syrupus Rosaceus Solutivus & e succo Rosarum*, Syrup of Roses Solutive, and of the Juycce of Roses.

It looseneeth the Belly, and gently bringeth out Choler and Flegm. The Dose is from two ounces to five.

*Syrupus Rosaceus Solutivus cum Agarico*, Syrup of Roses Solutive with Agarick.

It purgeth Flegm more powerfully than the former, frees the head thereof, and relieves the senses oppressed by it; it purgeth the Stomach and Liver, grovokes urine and the Terms. The Dose is from an ounce to two.

*Syrupus Rosaceus solutivus cum Helleboro*: Syrup of Roses solutive with Hellebore.

It purgeth Melancholy, and resisteth Madnes. The Dose is from half an ounce to an ounce.

*Syrupus Rosaceus solutivus cum Senna*: Syrup of Roses solutive with Senna.

It purgeth Choler and Melancholy, and leaves a binding quality behind it. The Dose is from one ounce to two.

*Syrupus de Spina Ceroina*, Syrup of purging Thorns.

It is good against the Dropsie. The Dose is an ounce.

*Syrups made with Vinegar and Honey.*

*Mel Anteosatum*, Honey of Rosemary Flowers.

**I**T is good against all infirmities of the Head, arising from a cold and moist Cause : it dries the Brain, quickens the senses and memory, and strengtheneth the Nervous parts : it helps all cold Diseases of the Head, Stomach, Liver and Belly. It is good against the Dumb Palsie, Lethargie, &c. and all cold Rheums falling into the Eyes. See the virtues of Rosemary Flowers. The Dose is from half an ounce to an ounce.

*Mel Helleboratum*, Honey Helleborated.

It purgeth melancholy, and Scabs, Itch, &c. it is good against the Quartan Ague, Madnesse, the Drop sic, Sciatica, Gout, Cramp, &c. An ounce is the Dose : Be careful in taking of such Medicines without good advise.

*Mel Mercuriale*, Honey of Mercury.

It is good in Emollient Clysters.

*Mel Nucem*, Honey of Nuts.

It is a very good Medicine for such as have weak stomachs and De-fluxions : it is a great preservative against the Plague: Take an ounce in the morning.

*Mel Passulatum*, Honey of Raisins.

It maketh the Body soluble, comforteth weak stomachs, and is a very nourishing thing for People in Consumptions. You cannot err in taking of it.

*Mel Mororum*, Honey of Mulberries.

It is very good for sore Mouths and Threats, and for heat and inflammation there, mixed with a little Plantane Water ; it is good for sore mouths in Children.

*Mel Rosatum soliatum*, sive colatum, Common Honey of Roses  
or strained.

They are both used for Diseases of the mouth as the former.

*Mel*



*Mel Rosatum solutivum*, Honey of Roses solutive.

It is used to cleanse Wounds, and is a good Laxative in Clysters.

*Mel Scilliticum*, Honey of Squills.

It is very effectual against divers distempers of the head, viz. falling-sickness, head-ach, diziness: it drives away an old Cough, cleanseth the Breast and Bowels very gently; and some say, it leaveth nothing offensive in the body. The dose is half an ounce to an ounce and an half.

*Oxymel simplex*, Simple Oxymel.

It is good to cut and attenuate humors, and to open Obstructions, provokes gentle Vomiting in some: it is good to expectorate, and to prepare rough Flegm against the taking of a Vomit. Take it from one ounce to two.

*Oxymel Compositum*, Oxymel Compound.

Use this, if you find the former too weak to expectorate viscous humors: it is good also in the Asthma, stoppage of the pipes and in the Pleurisie. The dose is from half an ounce to two.

*Oxymel Helleboratum*, Oxymel Helleborated.

It strongly evacuates Flegm, melancholy, and rough and viscous humors. The Dose is from half an ounce to an ounce for strong people only.

*Oxymel Julianizans*.

It is good against the hypochondriack melancholy and the Rickets; for it is a fine opening medicine. Take an ounce, two or three.

*Oxymel scilliticum simplex*, the simple Oxymel of Squills.

It cuts and divides rough and viscous humors, frees the Stomach and bowels of such humors, and helps sour belchings. The dose is an ounce for a man.

*Oxymel Scilliticum compositum*, the compound Oxymel of Squills.

This is used, when easier medicines cannot expectorate. It is good against the falling-sickness, megrim, Vertigo, swimming, and pain in the head, and cleanseth the stomach, Lungs, and Women after their lying in. The dose is from half an ounce to an ounce.

To these I add these following Syrups of *Quercitanus*, which I have sometimes quoted in the former Book; whose manner of preparation (if rightly understood) and vertues, excelleth most extant.

*Syrupus*

*Syrupus de Peto, simplex & compositus*; Syrup of Tobacco simple and compound.

Take of the Juyce of Tobacco four pound, Simple Hydromel one pound, Simple Oxymel four ounces; put them into a glass vessel of a fit bigness, that one fourth part be full. Let them digest in *Balneo Marie* for the space of two or three dayes, till the thickest fall to the bottome: then pour off the clearest and purest of the Juyce, and digest it again as before, till no impurity remain therein; then put to it of White Sugar two pound, and boil it to a Syrup.

The compound Syrup is thus made: Take of the Juyce so digested as before, two pound and an half, simple Hydromel one pound: In which macerate for the space of two or three days these Simples following, Hyssop Maiden-hair and wall-Rue, of each half a handful; the Flowers of Colts-foot, Stachas, Violets and Bugloss, of each two pugills; the seeds of Cudweed, Nettles, Carduus Benedictus, of each one ounce; the leaves of Senna three ounces, Agarick trochiscated one ounce, Cinamon, Mace and Cloves, of each one dram: then press it out strongly, and let it be digested, to seporate the pure from the impure: add its equal weight in Sugar, and boil it to a Syrup, This Syrup rightly made, is of excellent use, and its violent, acrimonious, and venomous quality is taken away; yet it powerfully provokes Vomiting, and is excellent against Asthma's, and all Diseases of the Lungs, proceeding from cold and gross Humors; as old Coughs, and difficulty of breathing. The Dose is from one ounce to two.

His Syrup of Cinamon prepared with the Spirit of Wine, is thus made: take of Cinamon two or three ounces, or more if you please: grossly bruise it, and put it into a glass Vessel, pouring upon it the Spirit of Wine, as much as may cover it three or four fingers, cover it close, and let it stand in a cool place; till the Spirit of Wine hath drawn the virtue and tincture of the Cinamon: then pour it off clear. to every eight ounces of the Liquor add three or four ounces of white Sugar finely powdered: then put it over a fire, and dissolve the Sugar: then set the Spirit of Wine on fire with a lighted paper, stirring it with a large Spatula, and all the Spirits of wine will fly away, and the Syrup remain. Or if you please, a little before the Spirit is consumed, put it out, by covering it close with a silver Bason, that the Air come not at it: by this means the Syrup will be the better: this syrup is of a grateful relish, and a Medicine inferior to none in diseases of the Heart; as Palpitations, Swoonings, &c. against Weakness, Crudities, Windiness of the Stomach: the Dose is half a Cochleary.

His Syrup of Ground-Ivy is thus made: take of the Juyce of Ground-

Ground-Ivy or Ale-hoof, two pound and an half: digest and purifie it in *Balneo Marie*, as you are taught before; the Juyce being perfectly cleansed, add to it of Sugar one pound; of penids four ounces, and boil it into a Syrup. It is a very soveraign Medicine for the pilsick, Ulcer in the Lungs, and for a Consumption, caused by any defect in that part.

## CHAP. III.

## Of Decoctions and Juyces.

**D**ecoctions are made of Roots, Leaves, Flowers, Seeds, Fruits, or Barks, conducing to the Cure of any Disease. Decoctions principally aim at such diseases as lye in the passages: as the Stomach, bowels, kidneys, ureters and bladder. If they be made of White-wine, they will last the longer, and are more penetrating then if they be made of Water. If you make your Decoction with roots, leaves, flowers, &c. Boil the roots first, as I told you in boiling of compound liquors. Such things as make the decoction slimy, you may rye up in a Rag. You may sweeten it with sugar, honey, sugar-candy, or syrups suitable to the distemper aimed at; and to make it keep the longer, stop it up close in a Glass or Stone-bottle, and keep it in a cool place.

*Decoction Epithymi*, Or, Decoction of Epithimum.

Take of common Myrabolans, Chebula and Indica, of each half an ounce; Stachas, Raisins of the Sun stoned, Epithimum and Senna, of each one ounce; Fumitory half an ounce, Maudlin five drams, Polypodium six drams, Turbith half an ounce, Whey made of the milk of a Goat or Heifer four pound. Let them all boil (the Epithimum excepted) to 2 pound, the Epithimum must boil but a walm or two, then take it from the fire, and add black Hellebore one dram and an half, Agarick half a dram, Sal-gem a dram and an half, steep them ten hours, and strain it out.

It purgeth melancholy and adust Choller, and it is a soveraign remedy against all diseases caused by melancholy. The dose is four ounces.

*Decoction Senna*, the Decoction of Senna.

This also purgeth melancholy, and is good for weak people, and the dose is the same with the former: for the most part other purging medicines are mixed with it, and in so doing, you may purge any humor.

*Decoction*



*Decoctum pectorale*, pectoral Decoction.

This is good against a Cough, Asthma, Hoarseness, it cleareth the Voice, and is good against all diseases of the Lungs. The dose is the same.

*Decoctum commune pro Clystere*, A common decoction for a Clyster, and a carminative decoction.

These both serve for Clysters; to them you may add Oyls, syrups, purging Electuaries, as necessarily requireth.

*Lac virginum*: It was invented for proud Ladies and Wenches to clear their Faces of Sunburning, Freckles, Pimples, and such like deformities.

To preserve the juyce of any Herb or Fruit, take these few Rules: First, gather the herb when it is very dry, then beat it, and press out the juyce. Secondly, you must clarify it over the fire, till no more scum will arise. Thirdly, Loil it to the thickness of honey, and (when it is cold) put it up into a pot or glass for your use. This is called *Rob* or *Sapa* when you find the word *Rob* or *Sapa* simple, without any relation of what it should be made, know it is the juyce of the white Grape. I shall insert none of them, nor their Virtues, but refer them to the virtue of the simple, out of which *Rob*, *Sapa*, or juyce is extracted.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of Lohochs.

**L**ohoch is an Arabick word, the Greeks call it *Ελεγμα* Eclegma, the Latins *Linctus*, viz, a thing to be licked. It is thicker than a syrup, and not so thick as an Electuary. Its used generally against Diseases in the Breast and Lungs, and the manner of taking it is with a Liquorish stick. The manner of making it thus; Take of any pectoral herbs or ingredients, make a decoction, then add twice its weight of honey or sugar, and boil it to a Lohoch. Some are made of the pulp of fruits, roots and seeds; if there be gums in them; they must be dissolved. If you would know the matter of making each of them particularly, you must peruse the *London Dispensatory*.

*Lohoch de sarsapa*, the Lohoch of Coltsfoot.

Take of Coltsfoot roots cleansed eight ounces, Marsh-mallow roots four ounces, boil them in a sufficient quantity of water, and press the pulp through a sieve, dissolve it again in the decoction, and

let it boil once or twice, then take it from the fire, and add two pound of white Sugar, Hony of Raisins 14 ounces, juyce of Liquorish two drams and an half, stir them well with a wooden pestle, sprinkling in of Saffron and Cloves in powder, of each one scruple; Cinnamon and Mace, of each two scruples, make them into a Lohoch according to Art. It is good for a Cough and roughness of the wind-pipe.

*Lohoch de papavere*; Lohoch of Poppies.

It is good against salt humors, and sharp distillations upon the Lungs: it is very good in Feavers, accompanied with want of sleep; it is of great use in a pleurisie, & allays the sharpness of the humors, which cause roughness of the throat.

*Lohoch e passulis*; a Lohoch of Raisins.

This is a fine medicine for Children, and is good not only against Coughs and Consumptions of the Lungs; but also against Convulsions and Falling-sickness.

*Lohoch e pino*; a Lohoch of Pine-nuts.

It succours such as are Asthmatick, helps continual Coughs, and difficulty of breathing; it cuts and attenuates tough humors in the Breast.

*Lohoch e portulaco*; a Lohoch of Purslane.

It is good against inward bruises or wounds in the Lungs or those parts; for such as spit blood, it is very binding.

*Lohoch e pulmone vulpis*; a Lohoch of Fox-lungs.

It is very good in Phthisicks, cleanseth and healeth Ulcers in the Lungs.

*Lohoch Sanum & Expertum*, a sound and well experienced Lohoch.

It is good in cold Distempers of the breast and lungs, and attenuates thick and gross Humors there: No better remedy for those who have lost their tongues by Cold.

*Lohoch Scillitum*, a Lohoch of Squils.

It hath the same vertue with Oxymel of Squils; but more gentle; it helps Asthmas, and difficulty of Breathing; it carries away all offensive humors from the Breast and Lungs, and thereby furthers Digestion.

*Lohoch*

Chap. 5. Of Preserves and Conservees, &c. 291

*Lohoch caulium*, A Lohoch of Coleworts.

It opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and is thought to be good against the Rickets; it cuts, attenuates, and concocts the thick and viscous humors in the Breast Stomach and Bowels of Children.

To these I add one of *Quercetanus's* Lohochs; Take of the roots of Marsh-mallows well cleansed half a pound, or as much as you please; boyl it till it be tender in common Hydromel; then beat it well, and rub it through a Sieve; of which take two ounces of the Species *Diarragacanthi* and *Dia-ireos*, of each three drams, of white Sugar and Penids, of each half an-ounce, *Flos Sulphuris* rightly prepared two drams, Syrup of Maidenhair and Coltsfoot, of each as much as sufficeth; bring it into the form of a Lohoch, and take it with a *Liquoris-stick*.

It is an excellent Remedy (saith he) against all inveterate Coughs, whether they have their Original from a hot or cold Cause: against the Asthma, Phthisick, stoppage of the Pipes, and all other Diseases of the Lungs; it maturates the Pleurisie, and causes it to be spit up.

CHAP. V.

*Preserves, Conservees, Sugars and Lozenges.*

**P**Reserves are made of Roots, Barks, Fruits and Flowers: And first of Roots, Take of what Root you please, scrape it very clean, and if there be any Pith therein, take it out; boyl them in a Spring water (or in Rose-water, if you can afford it) till they be soft; then take them out, and to a pint of the Liquor add a pound of white Sugar, boyl it to the thickness of a Syrup; then put in the Roots, and let it boyl a little, then put it into a Glas, or glazed Pot, and keep it for your use. So you may preserve the roots of Angelica, Acorus, Burrage, Bugloss, Succory, Elecampane, Eringo, Ginger, Burnet, Stryrion, Comphry, Zedoary, the stalks of Artichokes, Angelica, Burs, Lettuce, &c. before they be quite ripe; making this difference, that whereas before you took out the Pith of the Roots, you must of these make use of none but the Pith.

In like manner you may preserve Barks, as Citron Pills, the pills of Lemons and Oranges, and the green Rind of Walnuts, viz. Take of the exterior, or outmost yellow skin, then boil it as before, till it be tender, make a Syrup, and preserve it.



You may preserve Fruits as you did the former, viz. pare and quarter them, and take out the Core; boyl them till they be tender, and do as you are before taught.

Another way is this, pare, quarter, and take out the Core of some; of others pull off the outward skin, and pull out the stones: take their weight in Sugar, and dissolve it: put in the Fruits, and let them boil a little. Thus you may preserve Apples, Pears, Quinces, Apricocks, Plumbs, Peaches, Citrons, Myrabolans, Nutmegs, Grapes, Barberries, Cherries, Cornels, &c. or of any of these fruits you may preserve the pulp, by boiling them till they be tender, then pulp them through a Sieve: boil the pulp gently, till the water be consumed, then add its equal weight in Sugar, and boil it to its due thicknes. Though flowers are seldom, yet they may be preserved thus. Take a Glass broad both at the top and bottom, first cover the bottom of the Glass with fine Sugar, then cover the Sugar with the flowers you would preserve, lay them even and smooth, then cover them with Sugar, and that again with flowers, till your Glass be full; tie a Paper over the top, and you will have a pleasant preserve.

The vertue of Preserves you may easily gather, if you consider the nature of the root, stalk, fruit, bark or flower preserved; they are of great use in Physick, and many times welcome to sick people; but are most commonly used at Banquets.

#### Conserves.

Conserves are made either of Herbs or Flowers; if you make your Conserve of Herbs, you must take onely the tender tops and leaves, and beat them in a stone Mortar; when they are beaten pretty small, add to them their treble weight in Sugar, beat them very well, you cannot beat them too much, till (if you eat it) it feels not rough in your mouth: then put it into earthen pots well glazed, and keep it for your use.

Conserve of Flowers are done in the same manner, only remember to do them whilst they are fresh, pick them clean, and cut off the whites.

I shall say no more of Conserves, but leave the vertue and use of them to the ingenious.

#### Lozenges.

*Diasodium Solidum, sive Tibulatum.*

Take of white Ropy-heads, meanly ripe, and newly gathered, in number twenty, steep them in three pints of warm Spring water, the next day boyl them till the vertue is out, then strain out the Liquor, and with a sufficient quantity of good Sugar boil it according

to art, that you may make it into *Lozenges*. They are good against thin humors, distilling from the head upon the lungs, stomach and throat: they provoke sleep, and cool the body in Feavers.

*Saccharum Tabulatum simplex & perlatum.*

Lozenges of Sugar simple and pearled, are commonly called *manus Christi*.

They are cooling and very Cordial, and therefore good in Feavers, and for weak people, who are subject to hettick feavers and Consumptions.

*Saccharum Tabulatum Compositum*, Lozenges of Sugar compound.

They are very good for cold stomachs, and free the stomach of Cholick and Flegm, and are good against Worms.

*Saccharum Penidium*, Sugar penids.

For the most part they are used in other Compositions, of themselves they are good against Coughs.

*Saccharum Rosatum*, Sugar of Roses.

It strengthens weak stomachs, easeth pains in the head, restoreth lost strength, cherishes a weak Bran, and comforts drooping spirits, stays vomiting and pissing of blood; It is convenient for People in Consumptions to carry in their pockets, and now and then eat a bit of them: In like manner are all the rest to be taken.

## CHAP. VI.

### Of Troches.

**T**hey are called *Placentulae*, or little Cakes; they were invented principally to keep powders from losing their virtue, by the intromission of the Air, which this form doth resist, and keep it pure the longer. Besides, they are convenient for a man to carry about him when he travelleth; their form, for the most part, is little, round and flat. The general way of making them is thus: Take what quantity of Gum-tragacanth you please, the like quantity of Rose-water, or any other suitable to the distemper you aim at; put it in a Gally pot, and cover it, in six or seven hours the Gum will be turned into Mummage, with which you may make any fine powder into Paste; with the Paste you may make troches, or little cakes, and print what you please upon them. Then dry them in the shadow, and keep them for your use.

*Trochisci de absinthio*, Troches of Wormwood are thus made.

Take of the leaves of red-Roses, Wormwood and Annis-seed, of each two drams : Juice of Maudlin made thick, the roots of Asarabacca, Rhubarb, Spicknard, Smallage seeds, bitter-Almonds, Mastic, Mace, of each one dram, Juice of Succory as much as is sufficient to make Troches. They strengthen the stomach, and provoke an appetite, open Obstructions of the Liver and Bowels, and carry away Watry and Chollerick humors. The frequent use of these Troches will be beneficial to such as are inclinable to the Jaundice or Dropsie. The Dose is from half a dram to a dram and an half.

*Agaricus Trochiscatus*, Agarick Trochiscated.

They purge phlegm and choller mixed, and free the Head and Brain thereof : purge gross and viscous Humors from the stomach. They are seldome or never used alone, therefore I forbear the Dose.

*Trochisci Albi*, the white Troches.

They are cooling and drying, and of great virtue, if a dram of them be finely powdered, and mixed with an Injection for the Yard ulcerated.

*Trochisci Alexiterii*, Troches against Poyson.

They are good against all pestilential and epidemical diseases, & and a good preservative in pestilential times; and they strengthen the Heart. Take a little now and then.

*Trochisci Albandal*.

They powerfully purge gross humors from the exterior parts : it is good in the palse, sleepey disease, Apoplexy and Convulsion, coming from a cold cause. The dose from two grains to four : It is violent, and best mixed with other milder Medicines, or given in a Clyster.

*Trochisci Aliptæ Moschatæ*.

They are compounded for Children that cannot swallow their milk well. The dose is from two grains to six, given in breast-Milk. Others say it is very good for barren Women, taken inwardly and outwardly, mixed with a plaister for the Womb. It is very dear, and good for Ladies.

*Trochisci*



*Trochisci Alkekengi, Troches of Winter-Cherries.*

They are a good Medicine to allay the heat of urine, and give ease in ulcers of the Reins, Bladder, and passage of the urine, and are good against the Stone : the dose is from half a dram to two drams.

*Trochisci Berhici, Albi & Nigri, Pectoral Rouls,*  
white and black.

They are very good for a Cough and Hoarseness : the dose is from half a dram to a dram.

*Trochisci de Barberis, Troches of Barberies.*

They are very good in any flux, cooling in Feavers, and allay unnatural heat in any part : the dose is from half a dram to two.

*Trochisci de Camphora, Troches of Camphire.*

They are good in burning feavers, against the heat of blood and Choler, and against the hot distemper of the stomach and Liver, or any other part, against the Jaundice, Hectick feavers, &c. The best way is to take a little often.

*Trochisci de Capparibus, Troches of Capers.*

They are very profitable against Schirrhus tumors in the Spleen, and open Obstructions of the Liver, and are good against the Hypochondriack-melancholy : the dose is from half a dram to a dram.

*Trochisci de Carabe, Or, Troches of Amber.*

They are good to stop fluxes of the blood in any part of the body : the dose is from one scruple to four.

*Trochisci Cytheas.*

It is used in Treacle and Mechridate. It is good against ulcers in the Lungs, and other parts of the body.

*Trochisci de Eupatorio, Troches of Maudlin.*

These Troches are good against the Jaundice, and the Dropsie, and are good in any tumor in the Liver or Spleen.

*Trochisci Gallie Moschatæ.*

They strengthen the Womb, the Brain, Heart, Animal and Vital Spirit

*Trochisci*

*Trochisci Gordonii.*

They are good against any inward Ulcers, or ulcers of the Yard, and to cool the body in fevers. Take half a dram with Syrup of Marsh-Mallows.

*Trochisci Hedichroi.*

They strengthen the heart and brain, they are of a healing quality, therefore good for such as have cold Stomachs: they are seldom used alone.

*Trochisci Hysterici: Troches against the Mother:*

They serve principally against fits of the Mother, expel the Birth, and After-birth, cleanse a Woman after her Labour: the dose is from half a dram to a dram.

*Trochisci de Ligno Aloes, Troches of Wood of Aloes.*

They cheer the heart and Vital Spirits; are good against heart-qualms and faintings, and against the Dropic, and are a pretty Medicine for a stinking-breath. The dose is half a dram.

*Trochisci a Myrrha, Troches of Myrrh.*

They powerfully provoke the dead Child, after-birth, and Womens monthly purgations. The dose is from half a dram to a dram.

*Trochisci de Plumbo, Troches of Lead.*

They are good to cure ulcers in the Eyes.

*Trochisci Polyidæ.*

They are good in green Wounds and ulcers.

*Trochisci de Rhabarbaro, Troches of Rhubarb.*

They have a cutting, attenuating, strengthening, and Choleric-purging quality, by urine and otherwise: they are profitably used in the Dropic, Jaundice, and inveterate Obstructions following a Fever: take from half a dram, to a dram and an half.

*Trochisci de Santalis & Spodio, Troches of Sanders and Spodium.*

Both these are cooling and binding, allay the heat in Fevers, quench

Quench thirst, stop a flux, and strengthen the retentive faculty : the dose is half a dram.

*Trochisci de Scilla ad Theriacam*, Troches of Squills for Treacle.

They serve principally for other Compositions ; as for *Venice-Treacle* etc. For their particular vertue, see the nature of Squills.

*Trochisci de terra Lemnia*, Troches of Earth of Lemnos.

They are very good to stanch bleeding at Nose, or any flux of blood in any part of the body. Half a dram is a sufficient dose.

*Sief de Tourne*, Sief of Frankincense.

It dries up Rheum in the Eyes.

*Trochisci de Violis Solutivi*, Troches of Violets Solutive.

They purge Water, tough flegm and Choler ; they are violent ; take but half a dram, and that with good advice, that they may be with some proper Corrigents.

*Trochisci de Agno Casto*, Troches of Agnus Castus ; See the vertues of the Syrup of *Agnus Castus*.

*Trochisci de Anniso*, Troches of Annis-seeds.

They open the Obstructions of the Liver, and help all Infirmities thereof : they are good in *Quartan Agues* : the dose is from one dram to two.

*Trochisci de Diarrhœoi*.

They are good against Feavers coming of flegm, all Quotidian feavers and Agues, ease pain in the belly, and cleanse the bowels : the dose is from half a dram to a dram.

*Trochisci de Lacta*, Troches of Lacca.

They open Obstructions of the Liver, and help feavers arising from that cause, purge by urine, and are good in *Ascites*, or any Dropsie ; take from half a dram to a dram.

*Pastilli Adron. & Musc.*

They heal Wounds, and cleanse Ulcers, Fistulas, and such like. Cleanse the Ears that are mattery, repress excrescency of flesh, and cleanse the filth of the bones : they are good against the inflammation of the Fundament, and Cholerick eating Pustules.



*Croco=Magma of Damocrates.*

It strengthens the stomach, warms the Heart, and is expulsive.

*Trochisci Ramich.*

They strengthen the stomach, Heart, Liver, and other parts, give ease in the Cholick, and help fluxes of Blood, and cleanse the body of salt, sharp, and cholerick Humours. You cannot err in taking of them.

*Trochisci de Rosis, Troches of Roses.*

They strengthen the digestive faculty of the stomach, and ease pains there; they are good against the Hectick fever, and the beginning of a Dropick; they restore Colour lost. Take it at any time.

*Trochisci Diacorrhion.*

They stop the immoderate flux of the Terms, and other fluxes of blood. Take half a dram; take them with care and discretion. *Trochisci Hemoptoici*, are like them in operation: And *Trochisci Diaspermatia* help the Pleuritic, ease pain, and differ little from the former.

## CHAP. VII.

### Of Pills.

THE Greeks call them *Katastricia* the Latines *Pilule*, or little Balls; we commonly call them Pills: they were invented to purge the head principally; as also, the remote parts of the body, which they best perform, by reason they are long digesting, and better able to draw the peccant humors to them. Pills are made of any powder, with Syrup, Sapa, or Jellies, by the help of a Mortar and Pestle: As for Example.

*Pilula de Agarico: Or, Pills of Agarick.*

Take of Agarick three drachms, Blew Orris Roots, Mastich and Hore-hound, of each one dram; Turbith five drams, *Hiera Picra* half an ounce, Colocynths, Sarcocol, of each two drachms: Myrrh one dram: Sapa, as much as is sufficient to make it into a mass for Pills. It purgeth Choler and Flegm from the Head, Breast and Lungs: the dose is from two scruples to a dram in the morning.

*Pilula*

*Pilule Aggregativæ.*

Purge flegm, Cholet, and Melancholy Humours : they help Diseases of the Stomach and Liver, &c are good against Quotidian Agues. The Dose is from half a dram to four scruples : take them in the morning.

*Pilule Alapbanginæ.*

They cleanse the Stomach, Brain, and the sensitive Organs, from gross and putrid Humors, which hinder the exercise of their Functions : they strengthen also and help the Concoction of the Stomach, the dose is from a dram to four.

*Pilula de Aloe Rosata.*

Purge Choler, and free the Stomach of such humors, open Obstructions caused thereby, as the Yellow Jaundice, and are good against Worms, &c : the dose is from a scruple to a dram: take them at night going to bed.

*Pilula de Aloe Lota.*

Purge the Brain, stomach and bowels of putrid humours : and strengthen them : take them as the former.

*Pilula Aureæ.*

Are good in Ophthalmia, or inflammation of the Eyes, help the Megrim coming from a cold cause, and free the Bowels of Wind : the dose is from two scruples to four.

*Pilula Cochis, the greater.*

Purge the head of flegmatick humours, and are good against the inveterate Head-ach, Megrim, palse, Falling-sickness, &c. The dose is from two scruples to four.

*Pilula Cochis, the less.*

Take them not alone.

*Pilula ex duobus : Or, Pills of two things.*

They purge Choler and Flegm ; but with such violence, that they ought not to be given alone.

*Pilula de Eupatorio, Pills of Eupatorium.*

Purge Choler gently, and are good in Tertian Agues, Yellow Jaundice, Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen : the dose is from half a dram to a dram, taken at night.

*Pilula*

*Pilula Fœtide, Stinking Pills.*

They purge gross, rough, melancholy, and flegmatick humours; from the remotest parts of the body. Are good against the Gout, and cold afflictions of the Joynts, Leprosies, and diseases of the Skin. The dose is from half a dram to four scruples.

*Pilule de Hermodactylis.*

Pills of Hermodactyls are of the same nature with the former. The dose is from one dram to two.

*Pilula de Hiera cum Agarico, Pills of Hiera*

with Agarick.

Some will have this Pill an Universal Medicine: It purgeth Cholera, Flegm, and Melancholy: it opens Obstruction of the Liver and spleen, is good against the Jaundice, the Dropsie and scurvy, against Vertigoes and dizziness of the head, provokes the Terms, easeth the Mother-fits, and strengthens the Womb, helps shortness of Breath: all which I have found by Experience. Authors say, it resists Epidemical Diseases, and poysons, helps the Gout, and cures all sorts of Agues. The dose is from one scruple to four.

*Pilule Imperiales, Imperial Pills.*

Strengthen the Stomach, Liver, Bowels, and Natural spirit, and purge mixt Humors. The Dose is from a scruple to a dram: take them at night.

*Pilula de Lapide Lazuli: Or, Pills of Lapis Lazuli.*

Purge Melancholy and Aduſt Choler: they work violently. The dose is from two scruples to a dram.

*Pilula Macri.*

They strengthen the Stomach, Brain and the Nerves, and purge the humors that afflict them, and hinder the motion of the Body: they open Obstructions of the Liver and spleen, and are good for people who have been hurt by falls and bruises. The dose is from half a dram to a dram: take them at night, and continue taking them a Week together.

*Pilule Mastichine, Mastich Pills.*

They strengthen and purge the Stomach, Brain, Belly and Reins. Take them as the former.

*Pilula*



*Pilule Mechoacane*: Pills of Mechoacan.

They purge Slegm with violence. The dose is from a scruple to half a dram.

*Pilule de Opopanace*, Pills of Opopanax.

Purge cold humours from the Joints and Nerves, are good against the Gout and Palsie. Take a scruple or half a dram in the morning.

*Pilule Rudii*.

Purge Choler, slegm and melancholy from the head and other parts of the body: they are quick in operation, safe and the best of purges. The dose is from one scruple to half a dram.

*Pilule Russi*.

They are preservatives in pestilential Times, and evacuate malignant humours, and such as are gotten by sursets, and strengthen the Vitals. The dose is from one scruple to a dram: take them to bedward.

*Pilule sine quibus*, Pills without Which.

Purge Choler and slegm from the brain: are good for Ophthalmia caused by Choler, and good in the bastard Tertian. The dose is from half a dram to a dram.

*Pilule Stomachice*, Stomach pills.

Strengthen the retentive and digestive faculties of the Stomach, and cleanse it of offensive humours. The dose is from one dram to two.

*Pilule Stomachice cum Gummi*, Stomach pills with Gums.

They are of the same nature with the former; they are stronger in operation. The dose is a dram: take them in the morning early, and sleep after them.

*Pilule de Succino*, Pills of Amber.

Are friendly to the Womb, and take away the causes of sterility, and help Conception; purging Choler and slegm, and leave a binding and strengthening quality behind them. The dose is from a scruple to a dram: take them at night.

*Pilule ex Tribus*, Pills of three things.

They strengthen the stomach and Livers, open Obstructions, help the Yellow Jaundice, and free the body of Cholerick humours, which cause the itch and scabs. The dose is from one scruple to a dram: take them at night.

*Pilule*

*Pilula Turpeti aureæ.*

They purge Cholér and Flegm, strengthen the Stomach and Liver: Take them as the former.

*Pilula Azoiereb.*

Strengthen the Body, evacuate Cholér from the Veins; and Cholérick, Flegmatick and putrid humors from the Stomach, and are a good preservation in pestilential times: the dose and manner of taking them is the same.

*Pilula ex Bdellio, Pills of Bdellium.*

They are good in the immoderate flux of the Terms and Hemorrhoids: the dose is half a dram.

*Pilula de Rhabarbaro, Pills of Rubarb.*

They evacuate Cholérick Humours, help the Jaundice, open Obstructions of the Liver, and strengthen the Stomach: take them at night, from a scruple to a dram.

*Pilula Arabice.*

They remove the diseases of the head; as the Vertigo and Megrim; make a man merry, preserve his Mind in vigour, clear the Sight, repair Hearing lost, and free the stomach of vicious humors: take it in the morning, from one scruple to four.

*Pilula Arthritica.*

Helps the Gout, and other Joynt-Grievs, or whatsoever Disease hath its original from flegm: take from one dram to four scruples, in the morning.

*Pilula Fumaria, Pills of Fumitory.*

This Pill is good for such as are troubled with Scabs, Itch, and such like; for it purgeth Cholérick and Aduft Humours, and salt Flegm: the dose is from two scruples to a dram: take it in the morning.

*Pilula Indæ.*

They generally purge Melancholy, therefore necessary in all melancholy Diseases; as Cancers, Leprosies, Quartan Agues, Pains and Tumors of the Spleen, Sadness, Fear, &c. The dose is from half a dram to four scruples: take them in the morning.

*Pilula Luis Majores.*

They are given with happy success, in diseases of the Eyes: they purge flegmatick and mixed humors from the head, and strengthen the visive vertue: take them as the former.

*Pilule*

*Pilule de Euphorbio : Pills of Euphorbium.*

They are good against pains in the Loins, Dropsies, and Gouts; coming of a moist cause : half a dram is a sufficient Dose.

*Pilule Scribonii.*

They are good against spitting of Blood, Pusicks, and the like; Take a scruple going to bed.

*Pilule de Cynoglossa, & de Syrace ; Pills of Hounds-**Tongue, and Syrax.*

They are both good against a Defluxion of hot Rheums upon the Lungs or other parts, against Cold caused by Defluxion, and provoke sleep. Take one scruple or two, if you find your body strong.

*Laudanum & Nepenthes Opiatum.*

It mitigateth violent pains, allayeth the Fumes that trouble the Brain in fevers, and provoke sleep. Beware how you give Medicines in the beginning of Fevers. The dose is from one grain to four.

## C H A P. VIII.

## Of Powders.

Powders may be made of any Herb, Flower, Root, Mineral, Stone, &c. and they are variously compounded, as followeth :

*Aromaticum Caryophyllatum.*

Take of Cloves 7 drams ; Mace, Zedoary, Galanga the less, Yellow Sanders, Troches Diarrhodon, Cinnamon, Wood of Aloes, Indian Spicknard, Long-Pepper, Cardamoms the less, of each one dram ; Red-Roses four drams ; Gallia Moschata and Liquoris, of each two drams ; Indian-Leaf, and Cubebs, of each two scruples : beat them all into Powder. It strengtheneth the Stomach, and clears the Vital parts, stayes Vomiting, breaks Wind, and helps Digestion : Take a dram or two.

*Aromaticum Rosatum.*

It strengtheneth the Stomach, Heart and Brain, and is good against Swooning, Palpitation, Convulsion, Epilepsie and such like : it dissueth Wind and strengtheneth the Natural parts, and is profitably given in Consumptions. The dose is from half a dram to two drams.



*Pulvis ex Chelis Cancrorum compositus* : Or, the Powder of Crabs-Claws compound : Otherwise called *Gascoins Powder*.

It is very good in Feavers, either intermitting, putrid or malignant: it is of known vertue in the small Pox and Meazles: it is very cordial, cheers the Heart and Vital Spirits: the usual dose is from one grain to twelve.

*Species Cordiales Temperatae.*

It is a great Cordial, strengtheneth both Vital and Animal parts, and is often prescribed among other Cordials: the dose commonly is from a scruple to half a dram.

*Diacalaminth, Simple and Compound.*

It heats the body, and cuts gross humours: it expels Wind, and opens Obstructions, provokes Urine and the Terms, and cleanseth Women in Child-bed: the dose is half a dram.

*Dianisum.*

It powerfully discusseth Wind from the Stomach and raw humors, and removes Plegmatick Humors, which causeth a Cough: take half a dram or a dram, being made into an Electuary.

*Pulvis Radicum Ari compositus* : Powder of Aaron Roots compound.

It provokes Urine and the Terms, expels the dead Child and After-birth, and cleanseth the Womb, and easeth Fits of the Mother; cleanseth the Stomach of tough humors, and is a good Antidote (say some) against poyson. Give a scruple, or half a dram.

*Diaireos Simplex* : Or the Powder of the Root of Flowerdeluce.

It is good against Coughs: make it into an Electuary with Honey, or some Pectoral Syrup, and take it with a Liquoris stick.

*Dialacca.*

It strengtheneth the Stomach and Liver, and opens Obstructions; mollifieth Scirrhusous Tumors, and is of great vertue to remove the effects thereof, viz. Cachexia, and the Dropsie: it provokes Urine, and breaks the Stone in the Reins and Bladder: the dose is from half a dram to four scruples.

*Pulvis Cardiacus Magistralis.*

This Powder hath not its name for nothing; it is a very great Cordial, and strengtheneth the Heart and Vitals: the dose is from one grain to ten: the Gentry may use it often.

*Diamargarito*

*Diamargariton Frigidum.*

It is a great Cordial, good against Syncope, Asthmahs, Coughs, and Distillations of sharp humors, Consumptions and Hectick Feavers. Half a dram is an indifferent Dose, if it be not too dear.

*Diambra.*

It effectually strengtheneth all the Bowels and inward parts weakened by Cold; it cheareth the Spirits, and gives the Patient a good colour; it profiteth the Womb, and is friendly to ancient men and women. The dose is from half a dram to two drams.

*Diamoschi dulce & Amarum.*

It is good against cold afflictions of the Brain, and all Diseases thence arising; against Melancholy and all melancholy Diseases. The last, besides the former, hath a purging Faculty, and cleanseth the Stomach. The dose is from half a dram to a dram.

*Species Dianthus.*

It maketh a light heart, a chearful Mind, a good Stomach, and a sound body: the dose is the same with the former.

*Diapenidion.*

It prevaieth against all Diseases of the Breast, Cough, Hoarseness, loss of Voice: take half a dram, or mix it with some Pectoral Syrup.

*Diarrhadon Abbatii.*

It strengtheneth the Liver, Heart, Stomach, &c. and quencheth unnatural heat in any of those parts: the dose is from half a dram to a dram.

*Diapolicicum.*

It is good to discuss Wind in the Stomach, and removes the Diseases of the part, and helps digestion: the dose is from one dram to two.

*Diatrageanthum Frigidum.*

It cures all Diseases of the Breast and Lungs, which proceed from a hot and dry cause, or putrification in the parts; for the most part, it is mixed with other Medicines: Or it may be made into an Electuary with the Syrup of Violets, and you may take a dram.

*Diatrion Piperion.*

This Powder discuteth Wind from the Stomach and Bowels: it heats the Stomach, helps Digestion, and frees it of Flegm: the dose is from a scruple to half a dram.

*Diatrion Santelion.*

It is a very good Medicine to correct the hot distemper of the Liver, and is good against a *Diarrhea* caused by Cholerick humours: it helps Obstructions of the Liver also. The dose is from four scruples to two drams.

*Pulvis Haly.*

It is a good Medicine against *Peripneumonia*, or inflammation of the Lungs, Phtisicks, and pleurifies. Take half a dram of the powder.

*Pulvis Lætificans.*

It revives the Heart, and cheers the Spirit, helps Digestion, and preserves a good Colour. The Dose is from one scruple to four. Or, of it you may make a *Sacculus* to be applied to the Region of the Heart, Stomach and Head, against palpitation and cold diseases of the Head and Stomach.

*Pulvis Bezoarticus Magistralis.* A Bezoartick powder  
Magistral.

It is a great Cordial, and very good in Feavers, and in all Diseases where the Vitals suffers. The dose is from a grain to twelve. If you take too much, your purse will soon complain.

*Species Confessionis Liberantis.*

It is a good preservative in pestilential times, and a good Medicine in pestilential Feavers. The Dose is from half a dram to two drams: it is a good Cordial for the Gentry.

*Pulvis Saxonicus.*

It is a great preservative against poyson and the pestilence, and powerfully expels all poyson and malignant humors out of the body. Take half a dram or a dram.

*Pulvis Antilyssus.*

This powder is good against the biting of a Mad-Dog, or any other venomous Creature; for it fortifieth the heart against poyson. The Dose is from half a dram to a dram.



*Rosata Novella.*

It helpeth hot and dry Stomachs, and is good against distempers of the Heart, Liver, &c. or of any other part, caused by heat and dryth: it strengtheneth the Vital Spirits, and provokes Sweat. The Dose is the same with the former.

*Pulvis Thurales.*

It is good to stanch blood in any Wound: if you mix it with the white of an Egg, and with the Wool of an Hare dipped in it; apply it to the bleeding part.

*Species Electuarii de gemmis frigidis.*

It strengtheneth the Heart and Vital Spirits, and relieveth languishing Nature. Half a dram is the utmost Dose; and that too much for a poor man.

*Pulvis contra casum:* A powder for those that are bruised by a Fall.

It is good to strengthen the internal parts of one bruised by a fall, or otherwise. The Dose is from two drams to three. Sweat after it.

*Diacymini.*

It is good to discuss Wind, warms the Stomach, and easeth the pains of the Cholick, and helps digestion. The Dose is from half a dram to a dram.

*Diagalanga.*

It discusseth Wind and cold humours in the Stomach; it corrects the cold and moist distemper of the Liver and Brain, and doth somewhat provoke urine. The Dose is from half a dram to two.

*Species Electuarii Diamargariton calidi.*

It is a great Cordial, heats the Stomach and the Womb, and removeth cold Distempers thereof. The dose is half a dram.

*Lithontribon.*

It heats the Stomach, and helpeth want of Digestion: it is good against the Iliack passion and Cholick; breaks the stone in the Reins and Bladder, Strangury and Disury. The Dose is from half a dram to a dram.

*Plexes Aranticon.*

It is good in Syncopes and palpitations, and cherisheth those who have been weakened by Sickneses: it strengtheneth Memory, and quickeneth the Senses; good against the Falling-Sickness, and cold afflictions of the Lungs, and is exceeding good for sad and melancholy people. The Dose is the same.

*Pulvis contra Pestem* : A Powder against the Pestilence.  
The Title tells you the vertue of it : besides, it chears the Heart  
and Vital Spirits : the dose is the same.

*Pulvis contra Vermes* : A Powder against  
the Worms.  
And is a good one for the purpose : the dose is from half a dram  
to a dram.

### Purging Powders.

*Pulvis Hermodactylorum compositus* : Powder of  
Hermodactyls compound,

**I**T purgeth Choler, Flegm, and Melancholy ; but with such vio-  
lence, that it is the safest course not to meddle with it : Or let it  
be first corrected by an able Brain.

*Pulvis Sennæ compositus major* : The Powder of Senna  
the greater Composition.

Some call it *Holland powder* ; or *Ralf Holland's powder* : it dis-  
cusseth Wind, it helps the Cholick ; opens the Obstructions of the  
Reins and Bowels : the Dose is from one dram to two.

*Pulvis Sennæ compositus minor* : Or, the powder of  
Senna, the lesser Composition.

It purgeth Melancholy from the head and other parts. The dose  
is a dram.

*Diasenna* ; Or, *Pulvis Sanctus* : The Holy  
powder.

It purgeth the same humour, but is very violent. The dose is the  
same for strong bodies.

*Diatribith cum & sine Rhabarbato* : Diatribith with  
or without Rhubarb.

The first purgeth flegm and Choler : the other flegm only ; but  
ought neither of them to be taken, unless corrected by an able Brain,  
and administred by a skilful and careful hand.

## C H A P. IX.

## Of Eleſtuaries.

**E**leſtuaries are eaſily made of any of the aforegoing Powders; or, having your Ingredients ready, beat them and ſift them into fine power, and with three times the weight of Honey or Syrup, ſutable to your Ingredients, make an Eleſtuary. As for Example:

*Antidotus Analeptica.*

Take of red-Roſes and Liquoris, of each two drams and 5 grains; Gum-Arabick and Tragacanth, of each two drams and two ſcruples; Sanders, White and Red, of each four ſcruples: the Juyce of Liquoris, white Starch, the Seeds of white Poppies, Purſlane, Lettuce and Endive, of each three drams: the four greater cold ſeeds huſked; the ſeeds of Quinces, Mallows, Cotton, Violets, Pine-Nuts, Fiſtick-Nuts, ſweet Almonds, pulp of Sebeſtens, of each two drams; Cloves Spodium, Cinnamon of each one dram: Saffron five grains, Penids half an ounce: Make them into fine powder, and with three times their weight of Syrup of Violets make an Eleſtuary. It is good in Conſumptions and Heſtick Feavers; it quencth thiſt, and reſtoreth radical moiſture. You may take a dram as often as you pleaſe.

*Conſectio Alchermes.*

This is uſed in Palpitations, Syncopes, and Diſeaſes of the Heart: it reſiſteth the peſtilence and poyſon, and relieveth languiſhing Nature. The doſe is from one dram to two.

*Eleſtuarium e Saxaphras*: Or, Eleſtuary of Saxaphras.

It opens Obſtructions of the Liver, Spleen, and Kidney, and is good againſt cold Rheums and Deſluxions from the Head to the Lungs, Teeth, Eyes; and helps Diſeaſes in thoſe parts, occaſioned by ſuch Deſluxions: it provoketh the Terms, dries up the ſuperfluous moiſture of the Womb, and ail raw thin Humours, and breaks Wind. This doſe is half a dram in the morning.

*Eleſtuarium de baccis Lauri*, Eleſtuary of Bay-berries.

It is good againſt the Cholick and all Diſeaſes cauſed by Wind or Cold; and it cuts and attenuates glaſſic Flegm. The Doſe is from one dram to three.



*Diacapparis* : Or, a Confection of Capers.

It is good against Diseases of the Spleen. The Dose is the same with the former.

*Diacinnamomum*, A Composition of Cinnamon.

It strengthneth the inward parts, and heats the Stomach, helps Concoction, provokes the Terms, and strengthneth the Womb, and is good for people that are subject to flegm and Wind. The Dose is from one ounce to two.

*Diacorallion*, A Composition of Coral.

It is cordial and binding, and cooling; it strengthneth such as are in Consumptions, cools in Feavers, and stops fluxes; and is good for those that are in a Consumption with a Loosness: it stops the Terms, and white flux. The dose is a dram in the morning. If you have a Loosness, the dose is from 1 to three, and it may be taken often.

*Diacorum*.

This Electuary heats the Brain, strengthneth the Nerves, & quickneth the Senses, is good against the Head-ach, Convulsions, Falling-Sickness, Catarrhs, and provokes Lust. The dose is half a dram.

*Diacydonium simplex & Compositum* : A Confection of Quinces, Simple or Compound.

They comfort the Stomach, and are good for those that are subject to Vomiting; for it strengthneth the Stomach, and moderates Womens fluxes. The dose is from half a dram to a dram, before and after meat.

*Confectio de Hyacintho*.

It is a great Cordial, and cooling, and is of great vertue in all feavers, putrid, malignant and pestilential. The dose is from two scruples to half a dram.

*Antidotum Hemagogum*.

It provokes urine, the Terms, and After-Birth; helps the Strangury, and breaks the Stone, opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen. The dose is from one dram to two.

*Disatyrium*.

This was composed to provoke Lusts, and to whet on those who are impotent in the acts of *Venus*, and is good against weakness of the Reins and Bladder: the dose is from two drams to three.

*Electuarium Diaspermaton.*

It provokes Urine, and breaks the Stone. The Dose is from half an ounce to an ounce.

*Micleta.*

It is profitable in long lasting Diarrhæas and bloody Fluxes. The dose is from one scruple to four.

*Electuarium Pectorale.*

It strengtheneth the Stomach and Lungs, and removes the Vices thereof. Take it with a Liguorish stick.

*Theriaca Diatesarion.*

It frees the Stomach of pain, Wind and want of digesture, resisteth the Pestilence and Poyson: it helps stopping of the Liver, Drop-sie, Jaundice, &c. and cold infirmities of the Brain; as Convulsions, Falling-sickness, Palsies, &c. The dose is from half a dram to two.

*Diascordium.*

It strengtheneth the Heart, provoketh Sweat, procures sleep, expels the malignity of the pestilence, hasteneth Womens Labour, provoketh the Terms; is good for women lying-in, and stops Fluxes. The Dose is from one dram to three: To Children give less.

*Metbridatum, Or, Methridate.*

It is good against poyson, and cold Humors in the Body, and Diseases thence coming; loss of Senses by cold, helps the Chollick, and expels Wind, provokes an Appetite: it helps Ulcers in the bladder (saith Galen) provokes Urine, expels the dead Child, and helps such Women as cannot conceive, by reason of the coldness and slipperiness of their Wombs. The dose is from half a dram to two.

*Phylonium Persicum Magistrale & Romanum.*

The first stops any flux, Diarrhæa, Dysentery, or Womens Monethly Terms, when other means fail; which the second doth likewise, easeth pain, and procures rest in Fevers: Romanum easeth the vehemency of the pain of the Chollick, Stone, Strangury, and such like, and provokes sleep. The dose is from a scruple to four: Take it not without advice from an able Brain.

*Electuarium de Ovo: An Electuary of Eggs.*

It is a good Remedy in Pestilential Fevers, and a good preservative. The dose is from half a dram to a dram.

*Theriaca*

*Theriaca Andromachi, Venice Treacle.*

It resisteth poyson, and preserveth the heart from venome of such as have been bitten by any venomous Creatures; It is good against inveterate Head-aches Vertigoes, &c. Deafness, dulness of sight, loss of voice, Asthmas, old Coughs, spitting of Blood, difficulty of breathing, coldness of the Stomach and Wind, Chollick and Illiac Passion, hardness of the Spleen, Jaundies, Stone in the Reins and Bladder; provokes Urine, the Terms, Birth and after-birth: It is good against Ulcers in the bladder, Dropies, Leprosies, Feavers of all sorts, pains in the Joynts: it helps both Body and Mind, and is good against Melancholy thoughts and vain Fears. The dose is from half a dram to a dram; sweat upon it.

*Theriaca Londinensis, London Treacle.*

It strengtheneth the heart, is good against the pestilence, and resisteth poyson and infection; strengthens cold Stomachs, and helps digestion. You may take two drams in the morning.

*Diacrocuma.*

It is excellent against cold distempers of the Liver, Stomach, Reins, Spleen, Bladder and Matrix, and the symptoms arising from those Distempers, viz. The Dropie and Cachexia. The dose is from half a dram to 4 scruples.

*Athanasia Methridatis.*

It prevails against poyson, and biting of venomous Creatures, helps cold stomachs, and such whose meat putrifies therein: stays vomiting of Blood and old Coughs, and is good against all cold Diseases of the Liver, Spleen, Bladder, Reins and Matrix. The dose is from half a dram to a dram.

*Electuarium e Scorja ferri.*

It strengtheneth, openeth, and gently purgeth the stomach and Spleen, easeth the body of Melancholy and Splenetick diseases. The dose is from three drams to half an ounce.

*Confectio Humana.*

It strengtheneth the Heart and Brain, quickneth the senses, and is a good preservative against the Pestilence. The dose is from half a dram to a dram.

*Diaireos Salomonis.*

It helps all cold infirmities of the Lungs. Take it with a Liqueur.  
*Magnum*



*Magnum Antidotum Martholi, &c.* Martholus his great Antidote  
against Poyson and the Pestilence.

It is very good for that purpose: See this Bezoar Water for particular virtues. The dose is from a scruple to four.

*Requies*, Mitigates the heat in Feavers, and gives rest. Give not above half a scruple at first; it is scarcely safe inwardly to be given; apply it outwardly to the Temples and Wrists.

*Electuarium Regina Colonien.*

It is good against the Stone and Wind-chollick. The dose is a dram.

*Tripbera* the Greater stops the immoderate Flux of the Terms and Hemorrhoids, frees the Body of crude humors, strengtheneth the Bladder, rectifies Distempers of the Spleen, expels Melancholy, and makes a good colour. The dose is from a dram to half an ounce.

### Purgine Electuaries.

*Benedicta Laxativa.*

It powerfully purgeth Flegmatick Humors from the Joynts, it purgeth the Reins and Bladder. The dose is from one dram to a dram and an half.

*Cayo-Costinum.*

It is a good Purge for wounded persons, whose Wounds are inflamed: it also purgeth hot Rhumes; correct it, or let it alone, Three drams or four may be given in a Clyster.

*Cassia extracta pro Clysteribus*; Cassia extracted for Clysters.

The Dose is an ounce; two or three given in Clysters, it purgeth the Reins, and cools them; it caseth the pains caused by the Stone, and is good to prevent the growing thereof.

*Electuarium amarum majus & minus*; the Greater and Lesser bitter Electuary.

They both purge Choller: the first, Flegm; and the second, Melancholy. The dose of the first is from half an ounce to an ounce: Of the other, from one ounce to two.

*Diacassia with Manna.*

This is a gallant Purge for hot Bodies; for it gently looseneth and cooleth

cooleth much, and therefore is good in Feavers, and in all diſeaſes wherein Choller abound. The doſe is an ounce, or more, as you find occaſion.

*Caffia extracta ſine & cum ſoliis Senæ*: Caffia extracted without and with the leaves of Sena.

They are both gentle purges; they cleanſe and cool the Reins: they cleanſe the Bowels of choller and melancholy, and are good in Feavers. The doſe of the firſt is an ounce and an half: Of the other one ounce.

*Diagarthamum.*

It purgeth Flegm and yellow choller effectually. The doſe is from one dram to ſix.

*Diaphenicon.*

It purgeth both flegm and choller; it is good in Feavers, and eaſeth the Cholick and pains of the Stone, and freeth the Bowels of raw humors. The doſe is from two drams to five.

*Diaprunum Lenitive.*

It cools and looſeneth the body gently; it is good in all kind of Feavers & hot Agues, and is much commended in the Feaver hectick. The doſe is an ounce to bedward.

*Diaprunum Solutive.*

Is the beſt purger of choller, and amendeth the hot diſtemper of the Liver. The doſe is from three drams to ſix.

*Catholicon.*

It purgeth every humor abounding, eſpecially choller: it profizeth in Feavers: it molliſieth and altereth the Humors, and ſtrengtheneth the body: it helps infirmities of the Liver and Spleen, Gouts of all ſorts, Head-aches, Tertian, Quartane and Quotidian Agues. The doſe is from half an ounce to an ounce: take it going to bed, or in Clyſters.

*Eleſtuarium de Citro Solutivum*, the Solutive Eleſtuary of Citrons.

It purgeth Choller, Flegm and Melancholy, and carrieth away the rotten humors in the declination of a Feaver. The doſe is half an ounce.

*Eleſtuarium Eleſcoph.*

It purgeth choller, flegm and wind, from all parts of the body: helps pains of the joynts and ſides, the chollick; in cleanſeth the Reins and Bladder.

*Conſe ſilio*

*Confectio Hamech.*

It purgeth Melancholy and yellow Choller : it is good against Melancholy and Madnels, Scabs, Itch, &c. The dose is from three drams to an ounce.

*Electuarium Lenitivum*; the Lenitive Electuary.

It is a fine purge fit for Feaverish persons, and such as have Pleurisies : it gently openeth and mollifieth the Bowels, and purgeth (without trouble or hurt) Melancholy, Flegm and choller. The dose is from one ounce to two.

*Electuarium passulatum.*

It cleanseth the Reins and bladder, and is a good purge for those that are troubled with Gravel, or the Stone ; it purgeth Choller and Melancholy. The dose is the same with the former.

*Electuarium à succo Rosarum*, an Electuary of the Juyce of Roses.

It purgeth Choller ; and the dose is from two drams to an ounce and an half.

*Hiera picra Simplex.*

It is the most excellent Medicine to purge vitious Humors which stick to the Tunicles of the Stomach. The dose is from half an ounce to an ounce : in Clysters, from six drams to an ounce and an half.

*Hiera cum Agarico*; Hiera with Agarick.

The Vertues are the same with the former, purgeth Flegm more effectually. The dose is the same : For the further knowledg of the Vertues, see the Pill of Hiera with Agarick.

*Hiera Logadii.*

It purgeth effectually those Humors which cause the Palsie, Apoplexy, and such like Diseases. The dose is the same : give it only to strong Bodies.

*Hiera Diacolocynthidos.*

It easeth inveterate Head-aches, Falling-sickneses, and such like Evils : for it purgeth gross Humors from the farthest parts of the Body : The dose is from three drams to six.

*Triphera Solutive.*

It purgeth Choller and Flegm : Some account it profitable in the declination of Feavers, and in hot distempers of the Stomach and Liver. The dose is from two drams to half an ounce.



## CHAP. X.

## Of Oyls.

**A**S there are of other Medicines, so there are of Oyls both simple and compound: Simple Oyls are either by expression, or infusion and concoction: Oyls by expression, are drawn out of Fruits or Seeds: as out of sweet and bitter Almonds, the seed of Rape and Flax: by first beating them in a stone-mortar, and pressing out the Oyl in a Press.

Simple Oyls by infusion and decoction, are thus made: Take the Herbs or Flowers, of which you would make your Oyls; beat them to 2 or three handfuls, pour on a pint of Oyl, put them in a Earthen pot, and cover it with a paper tyed about the top, and set it in the Sun a fortnight: then heat it by the fire, and press out the herbs: then put in as many herbs as you did at first; do as before, as often as you see good, to make your Oyl strong enough: then boil it gently, till the virtue come forth of the herbs, and then strain it, and reserve it for your use. In this manner is made the Oyls of Roses, Dill, Camomil, Melilot, Lillies, Violets, &c. All which for the most part are used externally: some of them in Clysters, they retain the virtues of the simples whereof they are made, which I hope is enough for the Ingenious Searcher.

Compound Oyls are made in the same manner; Take this following for an Example.

*Oleum benedictum, Or, Blessed Oyl.*

Take the roots of Carduus and Valerian, of each one ounce; the Flowers of St. John's-wort two ounces, Wheat one ounce and an half; old Oyl four ounces; Cypress Turpentine eight ounces; Frankincense in powder two ounces: Bruise the roots & flowers, & infuse them in White-wine sufficient to cover them: After two days infusion, put in the Oyl, with the Wheat bruised, boil them together till the Wine be consumed: then press it out, and add the Frankincense and Turpentine: then boil them a little, and keep it for your use. It is good to cleanse all manner of Wounds, especially those of the Nerves and Wounds in the head.

*Oleum*

*Oleum de Capparibus*, Oyl of Capars.

It openeth obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and mollifies the hardness of the Spleen, and is good against the Rickets: Anoint the part by the fire.

*Oleum Castorei compositum*, The Oyl of Castor compound.

It hath a cutting and attenuating Faculty of gross humors in the Joynts, and in cold Diseases.

*Oleum Catellorum*, Oyl of Whelps.

It is good to anoint the Limbs and Muscles, that are weakned by Wounds and Bruises.

*Oleum Costinum*, Oyl of Costus.

It prevaieth against affects of the Nerves; for it strengtheneth, warmeth, attenuates, and opens obstructions of those parts.

*Oleum Crocinum*, Oyl of Saffron.

It hath a faculty of strengthening the Nerves and the Womb, dissipates swelling and hardness, and easeth pains in those parts.

*Oleum de Euphorbio*, Oyl of Euphorbium.

It hath the same virtue as the oyl of Castor: both which dropped into the Ear, helps the Noise there, and cures Deafness.

*Oleum Excestrese*, Oyl of Exeter.

It is good to anoint the Limbs of such as are Lame, by reason of some old bruise, cold or sprain.

*Oleum Hirundinum*, Oyl of Swallows.

The Vertues are the same with the former.

*Oleum Hyperici compositum*, Oyl of St. Johns-wort compound.

It hath the Vertues of the two former, and is very good in green Wounds.

*Oleum Iriium*, Oyl of Orris.

It doth resolve, maturate, and ease pain in all kind of Tumors.

*Oleum Majoranae*, Oyl of Marjorome.

It helps all cold Diseases of the Brain and Nerves: anoint the Backbone with it for the dead Palsie: anoint the Forehead for the Head-ach. Drop it into the Ears for the noise and pain therein.

*Oleum*

*Oleum Mandragoræ*, Oyl of Mandrakes.

It is good to anoint the Temples of those that want sleep in a Frenzy. It is extream cold : be careful in the use of it.

*Oleum Moschaleum*, Oyl of Musk.

It helps Deafness, and all cold diseases of the Head, Stomach, Sides, Nerves and Reins, and is good in the Strangury and Cholick.

*Oleum Nardinum*, Oyl of Nard.

It hath a warming, digesting and binding quality, and is used with good success in all cold Diseases of the Head, Liver and Womb : and being snuffed up in the Nose, prevails against the Coryza, which is a Distillation of Humors from the Head to the Nose.

*Oleum Nicodemi*.

It is good to cleanse and heal Sores, Ulcers, Scabs, Itch, small Pox, &c.

*Oleum Vulpinum*, Oyl of Foxes.

In pains of the Joynts, Podagra and Chiragra : This Oyl is of great use, saith Sydenham.

*Oleum de Piperibus*, Oyl of Pepper.

It heats, attenuates, cleanseth and openeth Obstructions : therefore Physicians do use this Oyl in the Palsie, Convulsion, and in all cold Diseases of the Womb, Neck, Reins and Bladder : it easeth the Gout also.

*Oleum Populeon*.

It is a fine cool Oyl : see the Oynment. I should here set down Chymical Oyls, but that I fear my Book is already swelled into too large a Volume. They also retain the vertue of the Simples, whereof they are made ; but are far more prevalent and full of Spirit, and are not safely used alone.



## CHAP. XI.

## Of Oyntments.

I Have in the former Books shewed you the manner of making of Oyntments and Plaisters; and in regard that the way of making them is divers, according to the diversity of Ingredients, I shall here only declare the Virtues and Operations of the Oyntments and Plaisters now in use and sold by the Apothecary.

*unguentum Album*; The white Oyntment hath a refrigerating and drying faculty: Chyrurgeons use it to allay the heat and itching in ulcers.

*unguentum Egyptiacum*, This is used in filthy ulcers to cleanse them, and to eat off dead flesh.

*unguentum Anodynum*, An Oyntment to ease pain: it easeth pain and inflammation in Wounds and Tumors.

*unguentum x Apio*, An Oyntment of Smallage: it is also a cleansing unguent.

*Linimentum Gummi Elemi*, it gently cleanseth and filleth with flesh ulcers, not only in the head, but in any other part.

*unguentum Aurum* is accounted the best in curing Wounds, cleansing the filth, and drying the moisture.

*Basilicon* the Greater and less; They heat, moisten and digest, bring wounds to suppuration, and cleanse them.

*unguentum ex Bdellio*, Oyntment of Bdellium: it helps the Epilepsie, Palsie, Cramp, and all cold Diseases of the Nerves.

*Unguentum de Calce*, Oyntment of Chalk is good against Burning and scalding.

*Unguentum de Althea simplex & compositum*; The Oyntment of Marsh-mallows, Simple and Compound. It hath a notable digesting quality, and resolving the humors in any swelling and softning thereof.

*unguentum Diapompholigos*, it cools, binds, dries and stays Fluxes, either of blood, or humors in wounds, and fills hollow ulcers with flesh.

*unguentum Elunatum sine & cum Mercurio*, The Oyntments of Elcampant without or with Quick-silver, was invented to kill the Itch.

*unguentum Laurus commune*; Common Oyntment of Bays: it heats and expels wind, good in Aches and Sprains; and kills the itch.

*unguentum de Minio*, The Oyntment of Red-lead : it is a norable dryer, and very cool ; it is used in ulcers, when all other Medicines fail.

*unguentum e Nicotiana*, The Oyntment of Tobacco : it is good to kill the Lich, Lice and Worms ; it cleanseth ulcers and Fistulae, and is good against the biting of any venomous Creature.

*Unguentum Nutritum*, It is good against the Itch, Tettors and Ring-Worms ; it allayeth the itching of Wounds ; for it is of a cooling and drying nature.

*Unguentum Ophthalmicum*, It is good in an Ophthalmia, or inflammation of the Eye : anoint the Eye-lids.

*Unguentum ex Oxylapatho*, An Oyntment of sharp-pointed Docks : it is good against Scabs and Itch.

*Unguentum e Plumbo*, Or Oyntment of Lead. It drieth much.

*Unguentum Pomatum*, commonly called Pomatum : it is good to anoint the Nose and Lips being chopped by the Wind.

*Unguentum R. seuum*, Is as good a Sear-Cloth for a Sprain as most are.

*Unguentum Rosatum*, Oyntment of Roses : Is good to allay the heat of Phlegmon and Erysipelous Tumours : it is good against gauling of the skin, and tempers the heat of the Head, Stomach and Liver.

*unguentum Desiccativum Rubrum* : it is a very drying Oyntment, restrains a Flux in a Wound, and skins the sore.

*Unguentum e Solano*, An unguent of Nightshade : it allays the heat and itching of Wounds.

*unguentum Tutia*, An Oyntment of Tutty, anoint the Eye-lids with it, to dry hot and salt humors flowing thither.

*Valentia Scabiosa*, Tapsivalentia and Tapsimel : See the simples, and you may easily know the vertues of them.

*Unguentum Agrippa*, It is good to anoint the Bellies of such as have the Dropsies.

*Unguentum Apostolorum*, It cleanseth Wounds, ulcers and Fistulas, consumes dead flesh, and softneth the hard Lips of ulcers, and is a good incarnative.

*Unguentum Aragon*, it is good in all cold Diseases, and such as have their Original from glassy Flegm, and is good in the Cholick.

*Unguentum de Artanita*, The Oyntment of Sow-bread : it hath been used with good success in the Ascites, when all other means have failed ; for it powerfully freeth the Abdomen of ferous and watry humors.

*Unguentum Cataplasmas*, it is used to kill the Itch.

*Unguentum Citrinum*, it is good to take away the Redness, Pimples, and Freckles of the Face; it makes the Skin smooth.

*Unguentum Comitissæ*, This Oyntment strengtheneth and bindeth, and is good against all fluxes of the Womb and Belly.

*Unguentum Martiatum*, it easeth pain, and strengtheneth the Head, Nerves and Muscles.

*Unguentum Mastichinum*, It hath the vertues of the former; the Stomach being anointed with it, it restores Appetite, and helps Digestion.

*Unguentum Neapolitanum*, it is used in the French Pox.

*Unguentum Nervinum*, it is good in old Bruises, and for Diseases of the Nerves coming from a cold Cause; as dead palsy, &c.

*Unguentum Pectorale*, it strengtheneth and easeth pains of the Stomach: it is good in a pleurisie, and consumption of the Lungs.

*Unguentum Populeum*, An unguent of Poplar: it is good in Burnings, Scaldings, and inflammations in any part.

*Unguentum Resumptivum*, it is good to correct the hot and dry distemper of any part; it easeth pains which come by inflammations, and Convulsions which come in burning fevers.

*Unguentum Splanchnicum*, it easeth pains of the spleen.

*Unguentum e succis*, An Oyntment of Juices: it opens Obstructions of the Stomach and spleen; Anoint the Breast and sides for the Rickets.

*Unguentum Sumach*, it is a binding Oyntment, and drying; anoint the Stomach for Vomiting, the Belly for a looseness, and the Fundament for the falling out thereof.

*Unguentum Refrigerans*, it cures inflammation in Wounds and Tumors.

*Unguentum contra Vermes*; Anoint the Belly with it to kill Worms.

## CHAP. XII.

### Of Plaisters.

**E***mplastrum ex Ammoniaco*, A plaister of Ammoniacum: It mollieth hard swellings of the spleen, and easeth the pains thereof.

*Emplastrum e Baccis Lauri*, A plaister of Bay-berries: is good against the Cholick, and easeth pain coming of Cold and Wind in any part of the Body.



*Emplastrum Barbarum Mognum*; it allayeth the inflammation of Wounds, and is good in the beginning of Gouts, and cureth the biting of any Creature.

*Emplastrum de Beonica*, A Plaister of Betony, unites a broken Skull, or other Bones, draws out pieces of the Skull, and cleanseth wounds to the bottom.

*Emplastrum Cesaris*, it is cooling, strengthening and binding; it repels hot Rheums and Vapours ascending to the Head or flowing to any other part.

*Emplastrum Catagmaticum*, There are two of this name, both are binding and drying.

*Emplastrum Cephalicum*, A Head-plaister: this strengtheneth the head, and repels vapours, dries up the moisture, and hot scalding Vapours which fall into the Eyes.

*Emplastrum de Cerussa*, a Plaister of Ceruss.

It is profitable in burns and hot ulcers: it cools and dries up the moisture.

*Emplastrum ex Cicuta cum Ammoniaco*, a Plaister of Hemlock with Ammoniacum.

It mitigates pains, and allayes inflammations in the remote parts.

*Emplastrum e Cinnabari*, Eats off dead flesh.

*Emplastrum e crusta panis*, A plaister of a Crust of bread strengtheneth the head and stomach.

*Emplastrum e Cymino*, A plaister of Cummin.

It is good against the Wind-Cholick, swellings and Aches.

*Diaphalma* is of a cleansing faculty, and drying up of the excrementitious moisture which is in Wounds and Ulcers, and is most in use in old ulcers.

*Diachylum simplex, iracutum, magnum & cum Gummi*: All of these dissolve hard swellings, and ease pain and inflammation, and dry up Womens milk.

*Diachylon compositum*: Or, *Emplastrum e Mucilaginis*, Plaister of Mulsages.

It suppurates and breaks Tumors, and heals them likewise.

*Emplastrum Diaphæicon*, Both hot and cold strengtheneth the Stomach and Liver, stays vomiting and fluxes of the Belly: make use of either, according to the nature of the distemper.

*Emplastrum*

*Emplastrum Divinum*, A Divine Plaister.

It is cleansing in Wounds and ulcers, and is a good incarnative.

*Emplastrum Epispasticum*.

It is good to draw Blisters.

*Flos Unguentorum*. The Flower of Oynments.

It cleanseth, draweth out Bones, Thornes, and whatsoever is in the flesh, and healeth speedily.

*Emplastrum Gummi Elemi*, A plaister of Gum Elemi.

It is of special use in Wounds and ulcers in the head, or other parts, also in fractures of the skull.

*Emplastrum Lapidis Calaminaris*, it is of an exceeding drying nature.

*Emplastrum ad Herniam*, it is good against a Rupture; and being applied to the Reins and Womb, stays abortion.

*Emplastrum Hystericum* applied to the Navel, is good against Fits of the Mother.

*Emplastrum e Mastiche*, A plaister of Mastich strengtheneth the Stomach.

*Emplastrum e Meliloto simplex*, The Simple Melilot Plaister draws and heals green Wounds, ripens, breaks and heals swellings.

*Emplastrum e Meliloto compositum*, The compound Melilot Plaister asswageth pain and mollifieth any Tumor; is good against hardness of the Stomach, Liver or Spleen, and is good against the Rickets.

*Emplastrum de Minio Simplex & compositum*, A plaister of Red-Lead, Simple or Compound.

It is cooling, and drying, and healing.

*Emplastrum Metroproptaticon*.

It strengtheneth the Stomach, and stops a Loosness and Vomiting.

*Emplastrum Nervinum*, Strengtheneth the head and Nerves.

*Emplastrum Oxycrocutum*, It is much used in Fractures and Dislocations.

*Emplastrum e Ranis*, A plaister of Frogs.

It was invented for Sores attending the French Pox.

*Emplastrum Sicyonium*: See the Oynment of Sowbread.

*Spadarap seu tela Galteri*, it is drying, fit for ulcers.

*Emplastrum Stephaniaion*, and *Sticticum*, they both draw forth corruption, strengthen the Nerves, and other parts, and ease pain.

*Emplastrum Stomachicum Magistrale*, A Magisterial Stomach-Plaister: it strengtheneth the Stomach, helps digestion, and stays vomiting.

*Emplastrum Dei Gratia*, it is good in ulcers and wounds; it cleanseth, cooleth, healeth and incarnateth.

*Ceratum de Galbano*, A Cere-cloth of Galbanum, helps the Fits of the Mother, and cleanseth a Woman after her lying in.

*Ceratum Oesophatum*, Mollifieth hard swellings of the Liver, spleen, Womb, or any other part.

*Ceratum Salinum*, A Cerate of Sanders; it helps hot infirmities of the Liver, Stomach, and other parts.

---

F I N I S.

---



A

# T A B L E

## E X P L A I N I N G

*The Terms of Art, and other Words which are not in  
the reach of Vulgar Capacities.*

A

- A** *Edomen*, the Belly or Paunch.
- Absurdity*, unreasonableness.
- Abstergent*, Cleansing.
- Actual heat*, is a heat that can be felt with the hand, as in the fire, or things heated by it, or in the Body of one in a Feaver.
- Actual cold*, understand it as the former.
- Acciden'tally*, by hap or chance.
- Acrimony*, sharpness.
- Accident*, is, a symptome, or something happening in a Disease.
- Access*, addition, joyning to.
- Acute*, sharp, violent; a Disease that soon ends.
- Adventitious*, Not natural, springing from external Causes.
- Adstriction*, binding together, shutting up.
- Aduſt*, burned.
- Adjacent*, Lying near.
- Adverse*, Contrary.
- Adjunct causes of Diseases*, Are such qualities as are joyned with it,
- Adjuvant causes*, are such as assist the principal cause.
- Adnata*, The outward panicle of the Eye.
- Affected*, Diseased, troubled, disordered.
- Afflux*, flowing to.
- Agglutinative*, Joyning, gluing, soldering together.
- Aliment*, All kind of Nourishment.
- Alexipharmical Medicines*, are such as resist the Plague, and all venemous Diseases.
- Albugo*, the White of the Eye.
- Alteratives*, Are such Medicines as alter the quality of the Body and the humors by heating or cooling, moistning or drying.

[The second Table.

*Animal Faculties*, Are Imagination, Judgement, Memory; the Senses, Hearing, Seeing, Smelling, Tasting, Feeling, Going, Standing, and all voluntary Motion.

*Antecedent Cause*, Is the cause afore-going of any Disease. The antecedent cause of an Erysipelas or Cholerick Tumor is Choler a-bounding in the Body: the Conjunct cause is Choler gathered in the part.

*At dines*, Medicines which assuage pain.

*Aneurism*, is when the internal coat of an Artery is broken, and the external coat swelled.

*Antepileptical Medicines*, Are such as are good against the Falling-Sickness.

*Axis*, The Fundament.

*Analogically*, Proportionably, conveniently, equally.

*Apophlegmatisms*, Medicines which draw Fleam from the Head.

*Apozeme*, A Medicine made of the decoction of divers Herbs, altering and purging; sometimes Syrups mixed therewith, to prepare, and gently to purge the Humors.

*Apoplectick Medicines*, Are such as are to be administered in the Apoplexy.

*Apply*, Lay on.

*Aque Acidulae*, The Spaw-waters; they are of the nature of Tunbridge, Epsome, and Bawley.

*Aranea Tunica*, The sixth Tunicle of the Eye, which is like a Cob-web.

*Articulate Voice*, is Humane Voice or Speech.

*Aromatized*, Spiced, perfumed, scented.

*Artery*, is a Sinew or Vein, wherein passeth the spirit of Life with the Blood, or Vital blood.

*Arteria Vinosae*, is an Artery, or rather a Vein; which from the right and left Region of the Lungs carries Blood and Air to the left Ventricle of the Heart.

*Arteriosa*, is a Vein from the right Ventricle of the Heart, which administers blood to the right and left part of the Lungs.

*Aspera Arteria*, The rough Artery or Wind-pipe.

*Ascent*, Going up.

*Astringents*, Medicines that bind together, and straiten the pores and passages of the Body.

*Asstriction*, Straistening, or binding together.

*Asthmatical*, Trouble for want of Breath.

*Attraction*, Drawing together.

*Attest*, Witness, declare.

*Atrophie*, When the Body pines away for want of nourishment.

*At tenuat in g,*

## The second Table.

**Attenuating**, making thin.

**Augment**, is when a Disease encreaseth, and is not at the height.

**Autumn**, harvest, or fall of the leaf.

**Axiome**, an undoubted truth.

### B.

**Baleum Mariae**, is when a still standeth in warm water.

**Bolus**, signifieth a morsel: it is a medicine to be taken upon the point of a Knife.

**Bellilucane Therme**, hot baths in France.

**Bituminous Bathes**, come from a fat Clay of the nature of Brimstone.

**Bronchia**, The Branches of the Wezand and Windpipe, which spread themselves through the Lungs.

### C.

**Caruncle**, is a piece of flesh growing upon any part.

**Catarrh**, is a defluxion or distillation of humors upon the Lungs, or other parts from the Brain.

**Cataphora**, dead Sleep.

**Catalepsis**, Congelation or stiffness of the body.

**Cauticks**, are Medicines which burn the skin and flesh to make issues.

**Cautery Steel**, is burning with a red-hot Iron.

**Cataplasma**, a Pultis.

**Cavity**, Hollowness.

**Carus**, foulness, corruption, rottenness.

**Calcin**, to burn to ashes in a Crucible.

**Cacochymical**, abounding with evil humors.

**Cardialgia**, pain at Heart, Heart-griefs.

**Cardiomos**, Heart-burning.

**Carmitative**, are such medicines as break Wind.

**Catheter**, a hollow instrument to open the passage of the Urine, to draw Urine from the Bladder, or remove the Stone.

**Cartilages**, are Gristles.

**Cataract**, is a Disease of the Eye. See Chap. 11. Book 2.

**Callous**, the skin or flesh grown hard, or unsensible.

**Cerates**, are medicines made of Wax, softer than a Plaister, and stiffer than an Oynment.

**Cephalick**, Capital, of or belonging to the head.

**Calybatd**, water, milk or wine; as when the red-hot Steel is quenched



## *The second Table.*

ched therein: also when a tincture of Steel is drawn by Wine, &c.  
*Chylus*, a certain white substance wrought by the digestive faculty of  
 the stomach, and is carried to the Liver.

*Chyrurgeon*, Surgeon.

*Cicatrize*, to bring to a scar, to skin a Wound or Ulcer.

*Circumvolution*, turned round.

*Condense*, to make thick.

*Congelation*, Freezing, or joyned with cold.

*Chorion*, the skin that covers the Child in the Womb.

*Consipation*, Stopping up.

*Collyries*, Eye-salves.

*Contraction*, Drawing together.

*Cornea*, a coat of the Eye like a horn.

*Compressio*, thrusting together.

*Contusio*, bruising, bruise.

*Cold seeds*, the greater are the Seeds of Citrul, Cucumbers, Gourd,  
 Melone. The other are the seeds of Endive, Succory, Lettuce,  
 Purslane.

*Confirmed*, is when a Disease is perfect.

*Conched*, is when any film is passed down, or taken out of the Eye  
 with a Needle.

*Continuity*, Joyning together.

*Compact*, firmly united.

*Concoct*, is when the blood is separate and made pure; or when Flegm  
 or other humors, are separated from the blood, or other mixtures.

*Connatural infirmity*, is that which is Born with a man: as to be born  
 without an hand, is a connatural disease.

*Convex*, bunching out.

*Conjunct cause*. See *Antecedent cause*.

*Constriction*, a drawing together.

*Congestio*, a gathering together.

*Conjoyned matter*, see *Conjunct cause*.

*Corroding*, eating, gnawing, biting.

*Consolidation*, closing of a wound.

*Commissura*, the mold of the head, where the skull is united.

*Consistence*, a body or substance.

*Complication of diseases*, is a mixture of divers Diseases in the body.

*Coalition*, healing up of a wound.

*Coincider*, that happeneth together.

*Co-indicants*, are divers considerations in a sick body, which call for  
 one and the same Remedy.

*Contra-indicants*, are such as dissuade a Remedy.

*Cotion of humours*, See *Concoct*.

*Cim-*

## The second Table.

**Commemorative**, Remembring what is past.

**Contumacy**, Rebellious, Stubborn.

**Corroborate**, To strengthen.

**Costiveness**, is when the Body is hard bound, and seldome goeth to stool.

**Columella**, is a loose spongy piece of flesh; it sticks to the roof of the mouth just at the swallow.

**Coagulate**, is to thicken any thing by heat.

**Coronal Suture**, is the Seam where the two sides of the Skull close, running through the Crown.

**Crude Humours**, are such as are not well digested in the stomach.

**Critical Evacuation**, is, when by bleeding at the Nose, Mouth, by Vomit, &c. the humours offending are sent forth by the strength of Nature.

**Cryalline Humour**, is that part of Eye which is like Crysal.

**Chronical Diseases**, are such as last long.

**Critical day**, in Feavers, is that day as the Moon comes to the square of her place of the decumbiture, or first falling sick, which for the most part happeneth on the 7th day.

**Cupping-Glasses**, are Glasses fastened with lighted Tow or Flax; to draw forth blood, by scarrifying of the place.

**Cumulation**. See Congestion.

## D.

**Decoction**, the Liquor wherein herbs and other ingredients are boyled.

**Defluxion**, a flowing of humours from the Brain to other parts: also humours gathering into any part causing a Tumor.

**Delirium**, Dotage, talking idly, raving in sickness.

**Declination of a Disease**, is, when the Symptomes decay, and the Patient begins to recover.

**Derived**, turned away from.

**Demonstrated**, proved by Argument.

**Depravations**, marrings, hurting, spoiling.

**Depressed**, made flat, hallow, or dented.

**Debility**, Weakness.

**Derivation**, is to draw the humour that offends from the grieved part to another near it.

**Diureticks**, are medicines that provoke Urine.

**Distillation of Humours**. See Defluxion.

*Diagnosis.*

## *The second Table.*

**Diagnosis**, the knowledge of a Disease by the signs thereof.

**Diminished**, Lessened.

**Discuss**, is to dispel invisibly, when a swelling is wasted without breaking.

**Diverting medicines**, are such as hinder the deflection of humours to any part.

**Dislocation**, is putting out of its place.

**Diffuse**, Spread abroad.

**Dissipate**, Scatter abroad.

**Dilated**, made wider.

**Distorted**, crooked, writhed, wrested.

**Digestive medicines**, are such as prepare humours for Evacuation.

**Dissolved**, melted, or consumed.

**Distension**, Stretching.

**Diaphragma**, the Midriff.

**Diagrydiates**, such medicines that have Scammony in them.

**Dissolution of natural heat**, is a decay of Nature.

**Diaphoreticks**, are such medicines as provoke Sweat.

**Dura mater**, is the hard membrane which covers the Brain, and lyeth next to the Skull.

**Dung-gate**, is the Fundament, or Arse-hole.

**Dyspnea**, is shortness of Breath.

## E.

**Ebullition**, Boiling of the blood or humours.

**Egression**, coming forth.

**Empyema**, a corrupt matter between the Breast and the Lungs, following a Pleurisie.

**Excurrentaries**, the wayes and passages Nature finds to drive ill humours into.

**Emollients**, such things as soften.

**Embroached**, bathed, moistned, bedewed.

**Emplastick diet**, such meats as are of a clammy substance: as Jellies, Tripes, Feet of Beasts, and such like.

**Emulgent Veins**, which bring the wheyish Excrements to the Kidneys.

**Emulsions**, are milks made of Almonds, or the cold seeds.

**Epispastick**, a Payster to draw a blister.

**Epithemes**, are certain Powders put in bags, wet in wine, and applyed to the Region of the Heart, Liver, spleen, &c.

*Epidemical,*



## *The second Table.*

*idemical*, are diseases which arise over a whole Nation; as the  
*Erague*, Small Pox, &c.

*rhines*, are Liquors to be snuffed up to purge the Brain.

*ruption*, breaking forth.

*oded*, Eaten, or eaten asunder.

*adicate*, to pluck up by the roots.

*Charoticks*. See *Potential cauteries*.

*Char*, is the Coar that falls from the place where a Caustick hath  
 been applied.

*vacuation*, is purging, emptying or voiding.

*vaporation*, a steaming forth by Vapours, as boiling water  
 doth.

*ventilated*, the body purgeth by exercise, which opens the pores of  
 the body, and purgeth the body: as Corn is purged by Fanning.

*excrement*, is the Dregs of Digestion, voided by Dung, Urine and  
 Sweat.

*expulsion*, driving forth.

*extinguished*, put out, or quenched.

*extension*, Stretching out.

*extenuating*, making thin.

*excrementitious*, of or belonging to Excrements.

*expressed*, Squeezed out.

*extraction*, Pulling out.

*exquisite*, Perfect.

*exasperated*, vexed, pained, molested.

*excreescencie*, is any supernatural growing of flesh.

*exuberation* is the same with an Ulcer.

*expectorating*, Spitting any thing from the Breast, Stomach, or  
 Lungs.

### P.

*Frabrick*, Composition, making up, or frame.

*Fæcis*, are the Dregs, or such things which settle in the bottome,

*fermentation*, is the working of the humors.

*Fistula*, a hollow, deep, and narrow ulcer.

*Filtration*, straining any liquid thing thorough a brown Paper, or by  
 a piece of Cloth hanging out of one vessel into another.

*Fluid*, that runs like Water.

*Flatuous*, is windy.

*Fluxive*, the same with Fluid.

*Fomentation*

## The second Table.

**Fomentation**, is when Linnen Clothes dipped in some warm Decoction or Liquor, are applied to the diseased part, and often renewed.

**Five opening Roots**, are the Roots of Smallage, Sparagus, Fennel, Parsley, and Knee-Holly.

**Fortified**, Strengthened.

**Fracture**, is a breaking of the Skull, Arm, Leg, &c.

**Frictions**, Rubbings.

**Frontal vein**, is the vein of the Fore-head.

**Fumigations**, Perfumes; or things burnt to sweeten a Chamber.

**Fuliginous**, Smoaky, or sooty.

## G.

**Gargaisms**, Medicines to wash the mouth and throat.

**Gangrene**, is a corruption of the part, tending to mortification.

**Generating**, Breeding, begetting.

**Glandules**, Kernels, such as are about the throat, and are called the Almonds of the Ears.

**Glutinous**, Clammy, or glewy.

## H.

**Habit of the body**, is the whole substance thereof.

**Hemiplegia**, the Palsie on one side.

**Hereditary**, from Father or Mother.

**Hemorrhoids**, are the veins in the Fundament.

**Hemorrhagies**, is bleeding from any part.

**Hermetical Doctrine**, is that which is delivered by Physicians, who have made up their Medicines by Chymistry, or Distillation.

**Horrors**, Shiverings.

**Hypocras Bag**, a Bag that is made of Woollen-cloth, in form of a Funnel, to strain Medicines.

**Hypochondria**, the parts beneath the Ribs.

**Hypogastrium**, that part of the Belly which reacheth from the Navel, to the Hair of the Privy-parts.

**Hydromel**, Honey and Water.

**Hysterical sickness**, is Womb-sickness, or Fits of the mother.

## The second Table.

**I**nitiation, Emptiness. Inflammation, Great heat.  
 Irritation, Provoking. Infusion, Steeping.  
 Impulsive Cause, is the moving cause.  
 Intervene, Come between.  
 Inversion, turning the inside out.  
 Intermission, by fits, ceasing, leaving off.  
 Internate, to breed flesh.  
 Incision, to cut, or lay open.  
 Impact, thrust, settled, wedged in.  
 Indication, is a hint to the Physician, what he ought to do; as ex-  
 cream thinness of blood, gives indication of blood-letting.  
 Inherent, seated, sticking, and abiding within.  
 Inordinate, disorderly, unnatural.  
 Intercepted, Stopped.  
 Incrassate, to thicken.  
 Incontinent, old, of long continuance.  
 Inferm, Weak.  
 Inspid, Tasteless.  
 Intestines, the Guts.  
 Intension, increase, and decrease.  
 Injection, is a medicine cast into the Womb, Bladder, or Fundi-  
 ment.  
 Inspissate Juice, is the Juice of an Herb boyled to the thickness of  
 Honey.  
 Invasions of the Ague, Gout, &c. are Fits of the same intense, strong,  
 vehement.  
 Irrigations, Waterings, Sprinklings, and moistnings.  
 Intermitting Pulse, is that which beats sometimes, and then holds still  
 again.  
 Incohabitability, an unaptness to be conceived, or digested.

### L.

**L**ax, Loose, slack.  
 Laxative, which makes the Belly loose.  
 Linctive, is the same with Loboche; a medicine to be licked.  
 Lenitive, Gentle.  
 Ligatures, are strings, by which the Joints of Bones and Gristles are  
 bound together: the same is used for an artificial binding of any  
 part, to draw the blood and humors from the diseased part, to the  
 part that is bound.

Liquid



## The Second Table.

**Livid**, black and blew.

**Loosness of continuity**, is the dividing of skin and flesh which were formerly united; as in a Wound.

### M.

**Masticatories**, chewing medicines to bring away Rheum.

**Malignity**, a venomous and poysonful quality.

**Matrix**, the Womb.

**Mamillares**, Nerves like Teats, which serve for Smelling.

**Malax**, to soften.

**Macerate**, to steep or infuse.

**Maturate**, to ripen.

**Menings**, films or coats that cover the Brain.

**Meferack Veins**, that charge Chyle from the Stomach to the Liver.

**Membranes**, Skins or coats of the Arteries and Veins.

**Mercurial medicines**, are such as are made of Quick-silver.

**Mesentery**, is that which holds the guts together.

**Morbifick**, or **Morbifick matter**, is that which is the cause of the disease.

**Mortification**, is a deadening; or losing of sense in any part.

**Mollifie**, is to soften.

**Mundifie**, is to cleanse.

**Musilage**, is made of Gum Tragacanth dissolved in water; or by beating of any Seeds or Roots that have a slimy faculty.

**Muscle**, is a part which serves for voluntary motion of the Body: it is harder and less sensible than a Sinew; and softer and more sensible than a Ligature.

### N.

**Narcotick medicines**, are such as cause sleep by dulling and stupifying the Brain and Senses.

**Nauseousness**, inclination to vomit.

**Nerves**, Sinews.

**Nitre**, Salt-peter: the true Nitre is rarely found.

**Nidorous**, smelling of Burnt-fat, Oyl, &c.

**Nocturnal Pollutions**, is when a man sheds his Sperm in his sleep.

**Noxious**, Hurtful.

**Nutrition**, Nourishment.

Obstruction

## The second Table.

O.

**O**bstruction, stopping.

**Oblique**, crooked, athwart.

**Obnoxious**, subject, apt, liable.

**Obscure**, dark, hid, secret, &c.

**Occult**, hidden, unknown.

**Oedema**, a flegmatick swelling, white, and without pain, or but little pained.

**Omentum**, the Caul that covereth the Guts.

**Opiate**, signifieth any medicine, which hath Opium in it; sometimes any soft Electuary like Treacle.

**Optick Nerves**, are the Nerves which bring nourishment from the brain to the Eyes.

**Ophthalmia**, inflammation of the Eyes.

**Organs**, are peculiar parts fitted for some notable service: as the eye, to see; the ear, to hear, &c.

**Orifice**, the Mouth or passage into any thing; the hole that is made in the vein, by letting of blood, or in a wound.

**Original**, foundation, or beginning.

**Os Sacrum**, the great hip-bone, on which the Ridg-bone resteth.

**Os Cribrum**, is the bone full of holes about the Nose, through which the Snot issueth.

**Oval**, is the shape of an Egg.

**Oxycrate**, is Vinegar and Water mingled.

**Oxyrrhodine**, Vinegar of Roses, and medicines made therewith.

P.

**P**aralysis, Paraplegia, the Palsie.

**Paroxysm**, is the fit of an Ague, or any other disease.

**Palliative Cure**, is the mitigating the Symptom of a Disease.

**Pneumonia**, inflammation of the Lungs.

**Pericranium**, the skin which covereth the Skull.

**Pellicles**, little thin skins.

**Perspicuous**, clear to be seen, as in a Glass.

**Peritoneum**, the inner coat of the belly.

**Peccant Humours**, are the humours that offend or cause the Disease.

**Perforated**, bored through.

**Pistillick motion of the Guts**, is when the Guts contract themselves, & thrust forth the Excrements.

Z

Pen-

## The second Table.

- Perineum**, is the Ridge like space between the privities and fundament.
- Preposterous**, unnatural, unsuited.
- Perturbation**, is trouble.
- Perpirable**, to be breathed thorough, when the Pores of the Body are open.
- Pernicious**, deadly, destructive.
- Penetrate**, to enter.
- Pbrensie**, is raging and madness, joyned with a Fever.
- Phlebotomy**, Bloodletting.
- Phlegmon**, a Swelling caused by blood.
- Pharmacopœia**, a Dispensatory, a description of the making of all Medicines.
- Pia Mater**, the inner Caules & Films, which cover the brain.
- P tuitous**, Flegmatick.
- Periodical**, by course or fits.
- Pessaries**, a kind of Suppositories made of Wool, to be put into the Matrix.
- Plethorick**, too full of blood.
- Plenitudo**, Fulness.
- Pleura**, the ; membrane which clotheeth the Ribs on the inner side.
- Pores**, little holes in the skin, through which vapours and sweat issue forth.
- Potential heat or coldness**, is contrary to actual ; which is so in operation, not to sense.
- Ponderous**, Weighty.
- Potent**, Powerful.
- Pomander**, a thing formed like an Apple to smell to.
- Prognostick signes**, are fore-telling what will become of the Disease and the Patient.
- Privation**, loss.
- Preternaturally**, otherwise than the course of nature ; requireth.
- Preceed**, go before.
- Preparing of the Humours**, is seperating them from the good blood, making them thin, if they be too thick ; thickning them if they be too thin, to the intent they may be better evacuated.
- Probable**, likely.
- Profound**, Deep.
- Producing**, causing or breeding.
- Proca artick causes**, the primary and first working causes.
- Precipitated**, thrown down, cast down.
- Protraction**, is lengthening out.



## The Second Table.

**Pugil**, is as much of Herbs as can be taken up between the thumb and fore-finger.

**Pulsation**, is beating of the Arteries.

**Pupilla**, is the middlemost round circle of the Eye, which we call the Sight.

**Putrid**, Rotten, filthy, stinking.

**Pustula**, a pustle, push, or Whelk.

**Pubes**, the hairy part about the privities of men and women.

**Pus**, matter, corruption, filthyness which runs from a Boil, Impostume, or such like: **Quitter** is the same.

### R.

**R**adical Moisture, is the fundamental Juyce of the body, which preserves natural heat.

**Raucedo**, Hoarseness.

**Rarifying**, making thin.

**Repletion**, overmuch fulness of blood and humours.

**Resolution**, Weakening, or dissolving the strength of any part.

**Revulsion**, drawing back blood or humours from the part affected.

**Repelling**, driving back the humours to the affected part.

**Relaxing**, Slacking.

**Remitted**, abated, lessened.

**Restriction**, limitation, exception.

**Reliques**, the remainders of an humour.

**Retraction**, drawing back.

**Retentive faculty**, the power of nature to hold or keep its nourishment.

**Reduced**, brought back again.

**Refractions**, breaking of the presentation of visible objects.

**Recruited**, made up, repaired, restored.

**Resolving Medicines**, are such as loosen and scatter humours gathered into any part.

**Repercussives**, such as drive back the humours.

**Relaxation**, Looseness.

**Refrigerating**, Cooling.

**Respiration**, Breathing.

**Reflex**, flowing back again.

**Recipient part**, is the part which receiveth the humour offending.

**Regression**, is going back.

**Reiterate**, to repeat.

**Raption**, Breaking.

## The second Table

### S.

- Sanguineous, Bloody.** *Saries, Matter.*  
**Saphena,** the Vein which passeth by the Ankle, on the in-side of the Foot.  
**Scarrification,** lightly cutting the skin, to draw blood by a Cupping-glass.  
**Scorbutick persons,** who are troubled with the Scurvey.  
**Scituation,** place or posture.  
**Scirrhus,** a hard swelling without pain.  
**Serous,** like Whey.  
**Sediment,** the settling or Dregs of any thing.  
**Sealing a Glass,** is to make the Neck red-hot and soft, and work it with a pair of Tongues till it be firm, and cannot receive, or let out the Air.  
**Seton,** is an issue kept open with a Skein of silk.  
**Sincere,** pure, and unmixed.  
**Sinews or Nerves,** are small strings, which carry the faculty of Sense and Motion from the Brain all over the body.  
**Spurious,** bastard, counterfeit, not perfect.  
**Spinal,** belonging to the back-bone.  
**Sphacelus,** is when the flesh and bone in any part is dead.  
**Spasmus,** Cramp.  
**Speculum Oris,** is an Instrument to hold open the Mouth or Throat.  
**Sphincture,** the muscle of the Arse.  
**Spadarap,** a cere-cloath.  
**Specifick,** peculiar and hidden.  
**Struphs,** Hot-houses, stows to sweat in.  
**Strangulation, Strangling,** Choaking.  
**Sternon,** the breast-bone.  
**Stupor, Dulness,**  
**Sternutations,** Medicines to provoke Sneezing.  
**Stupifying,** benumbing, taking away the sense of Feeling.  
**State of the Disease,** is when the disease is at the height.  
**Suppository,** is to put up into the Fundament, to loosen the Body.  
**Sudorifick,** that causeth Sweat.  
**Subeth,** a Dead sleep.  
**Superficies,** it the sur-side of any thing.  
**Sutures,** the seams of the head, where the skull is joyned.  
**Superfluous,** too much, unnecessary.

## The second Table.

**Suppuration**, is when the matter in an Imposthume is inclinable to break.

**Suppressions Stoppage.**

**Suffocation, Choaking.**

**Suffusion**, is a shedding abroad of Humours:

**Sulphureous**, pertaining to Brimstone.

**Sympathy**, is fellow-feeling: a Disease is said to come by sympathy, from the disease of another; as the Stomach being foul, causeth pains in the Head; this comes by sympathy.

**Symptomes**, are evil dispositions, which accompany a disease: as heat, thirst, want of sleep, &c. are symptomes of a Fever.

**Systole**, and **Diastole**, are the double motions of the pulse; when the pulse falls, contracts and sinks under the finger, it is called **Systole**:

The **Diastole** is, when the Artery riseth, and stretcheth it self out.

## T.

**Tartarous**, is a matter hard and congealed, like Tartar.

**Tablets**, are the same with Lozenges.

**Testicles**, the stones of a Man, or any male creature.

**Tendons and Cords**, are made of Ligaments and Nerves, that so the Ligaments being insensible, may the better support the sensible Nerves.

**Terminated**, Ended.

**Treble weight**, thrice the Weight.

**Thorax**, the Chest.

**Tincture**, is the vertue of any thing drawn by spirit of wine, or any other piercing Liquor.

**Torpor**, Numness.

**Topical Medicines**, are such as are applied outwardly.

**Torrified**, roasted or toasted.

**Transpiration**, the passage of the Humours through the pores of the Body.

**Translating**, carrying a Humour from one part to another.

**Transparency**, Clearness.

**Transverse**, Cross.

**Tumor**, Swelling.

**Turgent**, swelling, working, and full of motion.

**Tunicles**, little Coats or Skins.



*The Second Table,*

V.

- V** Apours, Steems which arise from the Stomach and other parts to the Head.  
**Vertigo**, a swimming in the Head.  
**Vesicatories**, Medicines to draw Blisters.  
**Vertebrae**, the turning bones of the Back.  
**Ventricles of the Brain**, are the hollow places there.  
**Venenosity**, Poysonfulness.  
**Vehicle**, that which serves to carry.  
**Venery**, is Lechery.  
**Vital Functions**, are the Faculties of the Heart.  
**Visive Spirits**, are the Spirits which nourish the sense of Seeing.  
**Vitreous Humor**, Serves to the making up of the Eye, and is like Mol-  
ten Glas.  
**Viscous Humors**, are such as cleave and rope like Bird-lime.  
**Vicissitude**, the following of one thing upon the neck of the other.  
**ulcerated**, having an ulcer or soar.  
**uveal Tunica**, a tunicle of the Eye, resembling the skin of a Grape.  
**ureters**, are the pipes which bring the Urine from the Kidneys to the Bladder.  
**Utricle**: See *Columella*.  
**Unguent**, Oynments.

W.

- W**ater-gate, the privities in Women.

*The End of the Second Table.*

---

A

# T A B L E

## E X P L A I N I N G

*The Names of such Simples as  
are unknown to the Vulgar.*

**A** *cacia* is a Liquor drawn out of the Fruit of a Tree, called by that name, growing in *Egypt*, and another in *Pontus*; but more commonly it is taken for the pulp of *Sloes*.

*Agarick*, is a kind of Mush-room that groweth upon the Larch-tree in many places of *Italy*, *Asia*, *Silesia*, &c.

*Althæa*, are Mallows which grow upon the Salt-Marshes in this Nation.

*Album Græcum*, is a Dogs-turd that is white.

*Aloes*, is the Juyce of Sea-Houfleeck; it groweth in *Arabia*, *Asia*, *Syria*, and in the *Indies*.

*Ammoniacum*, is is a Gum which comes from a Plant called Fennel-Gyant growing in *Africa*, and many other places, and in *Europe*, also.

*Anmeos*, is the Herb called Bishops-weed, growing in many places of this Nation.

*Amber* and *Ambergreese*, is taken from the Sea.

*Antimony*, is a Mineral.

*Asnick*, is a kind of Oker.

*Assa Fetida*, is a Gum that issueth out of a Plant called Laser-wort, growing in *Media*, *Syria*, &c.

*Asarum*, is an herb vulgarly called *Asarabacca*.

## The Third Table.

*Dalauslines*, The Flowers of Wild-Pomegranates.

*Bd. llium*, is a Gum of a Tree called by the same name ; it grows in *Arabia*.

*Benjamin* or *Benzoin*, is a Gum.

*Bezay*, is a Precious Stone.

*Cassia Fistula*, is the Fruit of a large Tree, called the Cassia-Tree ; it groweth in long black Pods : it groweth in *Arabia*, *Aegypt*, *Syria*, *Armenia*, and in great abundance in *Hispaniola*.

*Caper-Roots*, is the Root of the Shrub that bears the Capers, we here eat for Sawce : It grows in *Arabia*, *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, and many other places.

*Castor*, is the Beast called a Beaver ; but most commonly taken for his Stones used in Medicine.

*Calamus Aromaticus*, is a sweet-smelling Flag : There are many sorts, and they grow in many places ; as *Turkey*, *Russia*, *Egypt*, *Judaea*, &c.

*Camphire*, is the Gum of a great Tree which groweth in *India* ; that is the best that is white and brittle.

*Calcitis*, A precious stone of the colour of brass.

*Cardamomes*, is that which is commonly called Grains of Paradise ; and it groweth upon a low herby Shrub in the East-Indies.

*Carthamus*, is a Bastard-Saffron.

*Cambugia*, is a Gum, as some say, I know not.

*Carabi*, is Amber.

*Cantharides*, are Flies which will draw Blisters.

*Ceruse*, is made of White-lead.

*Cicers*, are a kind of Pease sown in Gardens.

*China*, is the Root of a Tree which grows not onely in *China*, but also in many places of the East and West-Indies.

*Coloquintida-Apple*, is the fruit of the bitter Gourd ; its natural Soil is *Barbary*, but it groweth in most of the Eastern Countries.

*Colephonia*, A kind of Scammony : See Scammony.

*Crocus Metallorum*, is made of Antimony and Salt-Peter, calcined in a crucible.

*Crocus Martis*, and *Crocus Venetis* are made, the first of Steel, the other of Copper, by the Art of Alchimy: Read *Paracelsus de rerum naturis*, and many other Authors.

*Cracmor Tartari*, Or Salt of Tartar : The operation thereof, see *Pharm. Dogm. Restit.* Quere Pag. 385.

*Citrons*, are the Fruit of the Pome-Citron, or Citron-tree ; they grow in *Spain*, &c.

*Cypress*,



### *The third Table.*

*Oppest*, it is a Tree now frequently in our Gardens; its Natural Soil is the Eastern Countries, and the Northern parts of *America*.

*Diagrydium* : See Scammony.

*Elaterium*, is the Juyce of Wild-Cucumers dried.

*Euphorbium*, A Tree found by King *Juba*, and named by the name of his Physician.

*Emblicks*, are one sort of the Mirabolans, which are six square: They grow in the East-Indies Wild.

*Epithymum*, is Dodder growing upon Time.

*Flos Sulphuris*, is a Chymical preparation of Sulphur.

*Elegm of Vitriol*, is also made by Chymists.

*Frankincense*, is a Rozin.

*Galanga* groweth in the East-Indies.

*Galbanum*, is the Gum of Fennel-Gyant, which groweth in *Syria*.

*Gum Tragacanth*, Or Gum Dragant, issueth from the Root of a small bushy-plant, called Goats-beard. They grow in *Canay*, *Mabfelles*, and *Mompelier* in *France*.

*Guaiaacum*, is a Tree as big as an Oak; it grows plentifully in the West-Indies. You may buy the Bark, or the Wood ground at the Druggists.

*Hellebore*, Black and White, are Herbs growing as well in this Nation, as in many places beyond the Sea.

*Hermadactyls*, some think are the Roots of a Wild-Saffron.

*Hypocistis*, is a Shrub growing in *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, and most hot Countries.

*Hydromel*, is Water and Honey mixed together.

*Jallap*, is a root like our Briony: it is a sort of Mechoacan, it is called black Mechoacan. It grows in the West-Indies.

*Ireas*, The Flower=de-luce.

*Jujubes*, are the Fruit of a Tree growing in *Africa*, *Egypt*, *Arabia*, *Syria*, and the most Eastern Countries.

### The Third Table

**Kermes**, are the Berries of the Holm-Oak, which groweth in *Italy, Spain, France*, and many places of *Europe*: Also in *Asia, Africa* and *America*.

**Laudanum**, is the Gum of one sort of Hypocistis, called Gum Cl-  
tis.

**Lac Sulphuris**, is a Chymical preparation of Sulphur: See page 58  
of *Querequetanus's Dispensatory*.

**Lapis Lazuli**, is a Stone of a green and blew colour.

**Lapis Calaminaris**, They use it in making of Brasse; it is astringent,  
and is used in Eye-waters.

**Lapis Hematidis**, is a Blood-stone, and is like blood congealed.

**Lentils**, is a sort of Pulse growing in many places of this Nation  
some call them *French Wheat*.

**Lignum Vitæ**: See Guajacum.

**Lignum Aloës**, is a very odoriferous wood, and groweth in the East-  
Indies.

**Linseds**, is the seeds of Flax.

**Litharge**, is the Scum of Gold, Silver or Lead.

**Lupines**, There are several sorts and colours of them grow in *England*:  
it is a kind of a Bean.

**Manna**, is a kind of Dew which falls upon Trees in hot Countries, like  
our Honey-Dews.

**Marsh-Mallows**: See *Althæa*.

**Mastick**, is the Gum of the Mastick-Tree: it groweth in hot Coun-  
tries, as well in Europe, as elsewhere, most plentifully, and the best  
Gum groweth in *Chio*.

**Mexicoacan**, is whiter than Jalap, of the same nature.

**Mercury Precipitate**, is a Chymical preparation of Quick-silver.

**Mirabolans**, are a kind of Plumbs growing in the East-Indies: There  
are five sorts; the Citrine or Yellow, Indies or Black, Chebules  
or Purple, Bellericks or round, Emblick or six squared Mirabo-  
lans.

**Myrrh**, is a Gum.

**Myrtles**, Grow in *Spain, Portugal* and *Italy*, and are a Shrub or small  
Tree.

**Myrrory**, is mans flesh prepared with Balsoms.

**Nigella**, is an Herb which is common in Gardens with us.

**Olibanum**, is Rozin like Frankincense.

**Opopanax**, the Juyce of Hercules-all-heal.

*Opium*,

### The Third Table.

**Opium**, is the Juyce of Poppies, or a Liquor dropping from them;  
Oxycerate, Vinegar and Water.

**Pistachios**, are the Pistick Nuts : they grow in the Indies, and most  
hot Countries.

**Polypody**, is the Fearn of an Oak.

**Pomegranates**, are a Fruit growing upon a Tree, seven or eight Cu-  
bits high, in *Granado, Spain, Portugal, Italy, &c.*

**Rubarb** is now planted in *England*, but its natural Soil *China* and the  
*Indies* : there are many sorts,

**Sarsaperilla**, is a prickly bind-weed : that which grows at *Pernu* is most  
useful.

**Saxaphras**, is a large Tree : it groweth in *Florida*, and most of the  
Western Indies.

**Sanders** is a great Tree : it grows in the East-Indies, *Brazil*, the  
Island *Tymor, &c.* There are three sorts, Red, White, Yel-  
low.

**Sanguis Draconis**, Or Dragons blood, is the Gum of the Dragon-  
Tree, which groweth in the Canary Islands to a goodly stature.

**Satyrimon**, is a common Herb in Meadows, and is called Dogs-  
Stones.

**Sagapenum**, is the Gum of Fennel-Gyant, when it groweth in *Me-  
dia*.

**Sandarach**, some call it red-Arsenick : it is found in Gold and Silver  
Mines.

**Sarcocolla**, is the Gum of a Tree growing in *Persia*.

**Scena**, is the Leaves of a Tree of small stature : it groweth in *Arabia  
Felix*, and in *Syrin*.

**Scammony**, is the Juyce of an Herb : it is a very violent purger, and  
an Out-landish Plant.

**Spodium**, The Soot which riseth in the trying of Brass.

**Spicknard**, is a low Herb ; it groweth in the *Indies, Italy, France*, and  
many other places.

**Stachis**, is the Flower of Cud-weed.

**Sumach**, is a Forein Tree, much in use in Physick ; in dying and  
dressing of Leather.

**Taca-mahacca**, is a Gum.

**Tartar**, is a Rony substance, growing to the sides of Wine-Vessels.



*The third Table.*

*Tamarinds* grow upon a Tree as big as a Plum-Tree, and are  
Kidney Bean-cod, full of a black substance or pulp: it groweth in  
*Arabia.*

*Terra Sigillata*, is a sealed Earth, brought out of the Straits in little  
Cakes.

*Thapsia*, is a kind of Fenne.

*Turbit*, is a Root that purgeth Flegm.

*Tutty*, is the heavier Soil of Brasse, that sticketh to the top of melting  
Furnaces.

*Verdegrease*, is the Flower of Brasse.

---

F I N I S.

---

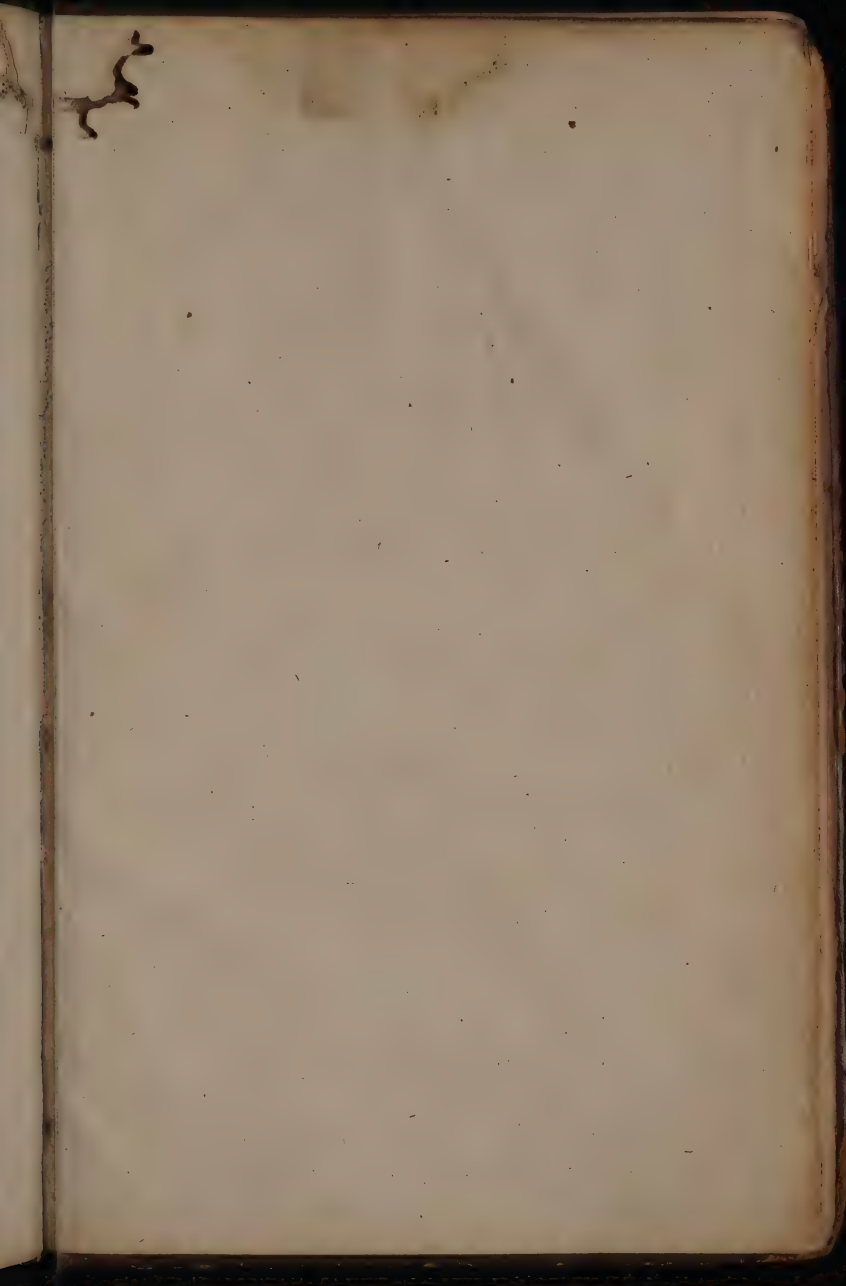
with a

little

nothing





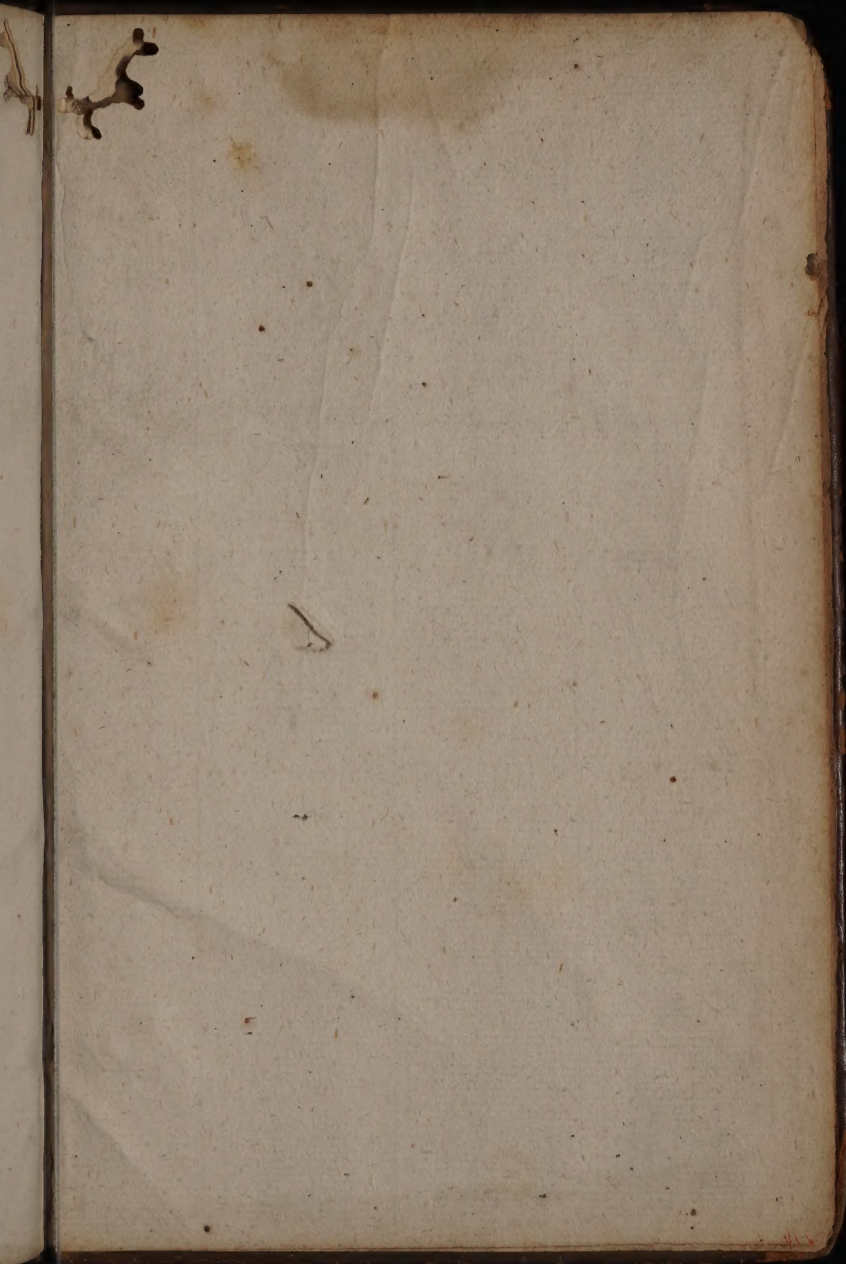














4.



50

